UNIT 1

Am/is/are

A

LISA

B

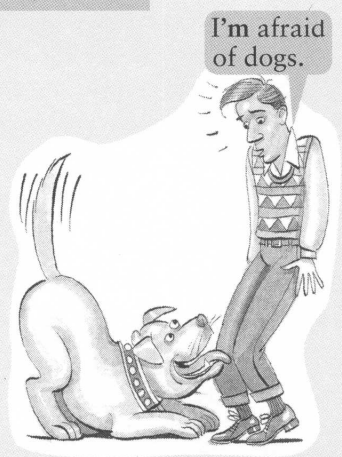
Positive

I	**am**	(I'**m**)
he she it	**is**	(he'**s**) (she'**s**) (it'**s**)
we you they	**are**	(we'**re**) (you'**re**) (they'**re**)

Negative

I	**am not**	(I'**m not**)		
he she it	**is not**	(he'**s not** (she'**s not** (it'**s not**	*or* *or* *or*	he **isn't**) she **isn't**) it **isn't**)
we you they	**are not**	(we'**re not** (you'**re not** (they'**re not**	*or* *or* *or*	we **aren't**) you **aren't**) they **aren't**)

- I'**m** cold. Can you close the window, please?
- I'**m** 32 years old. My sister **is** 29.
- My brother **is** very tall. He'**s** a policeman.
- John **is** afraid of dogs.
- It'**s** ten o'clock. You'**re** late again.
- Mei Lan and I **are** good friends.
- Your keys **are** on the table.



- I'**m** tired, but I'**m not** hungry.
- Tom **isn't** interested in politics. He'**s** interested in music.
- Jessica **isn't** at home right now. She'**s** at work.
- Those people **aren't** Canadian. They'**re** Australian.
- It'**s** sunny today, but it **isn't** warm.

C

that's = that **is** there's = there **is** here's = here **is**

- Thank you. That'**s** very kind of you.
- Look! There'**s** Chris.
- "Here'**s** your key." "Thank you."

***Am/is/are* (Questions) Unit 2** **_There is/are_ Unit 38**

Exercises

1.1 Write the short form (*she's / we aren't*, etc.).

1. she is *she's*
2. they are _____
3. it is not _____
4. that is _____
5. I am not _____
6. you are not _____

1.2 Write *am, is,* or *are.*

1. The weather *is* nice today.
2. I *am* not tired.
3. This bag _____ heavy.
4. These bags _____ heavy.
5. Look! There _____ Carol.
6. My brother and I _____ good tennis players.
7. Amy _____ at home. Her children _____ at school.
8. I _____ a taxi driver. My sister _____ a nurse.

1.3 Write complete sentences. Use *is / isn't / are / aren't.*

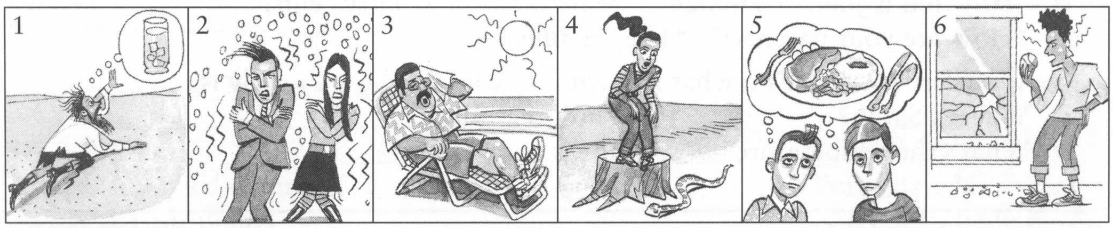
1. (your shoes very dirty) *Your shoes are very dirty.*
2. (my brother a teacher) My _____.
3. (this house not very big) _____
4. (the stores not open today) _____
5. (my keys in my bag) _____
6. (Jenny 18 years old) _____

1.4 Look at Lisa's sentences (Section A). Write sentences about yourself.

1. (name?) My _____.
2. (from?) I _____.
3. (age?) I _____.
4. (job?) I _____.
5. (married?) I _____.
6. (favorite color or colors?) My _____.
7. (interested in?) I _____.

1.5 Write sentences for the pictures. Use these words:

afraid angry cold hot hungry ~~thirsty~~



1. *He's thirsty.*
2. They _____.
3. He _____.
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____

1.6 Write true sentences, positive or negative. Use *am / am not / is / isn't / are / aren't.*

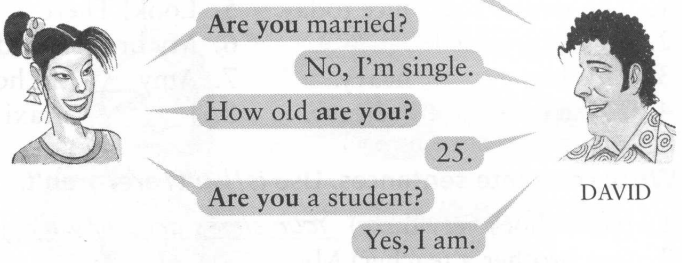
1. (I / interested in politics) *I'm interested in politics.* OR *I'm not interested in politics.*
2. (I / hungry) I _____.
3. (it / warm today) It _____.
4. (I / afraid of dogs) _____
5. (my hands / cold) _____
6. (Canada / a very big country) _____
7. (I / interested in soccer) _____
8. (Tokyo / in China) _____

UNIT 2

Am/is/are (Questions)

A

Positive		*Question*	
I	**am**	**am**	I?
he she it	**is**	**is**	he? she? it?
we you they	**are**	**are**	we? you? they?



- "**Am I** late?" "No, **you're** on time."
- "**Is your mother** at home?" "No, **she's** out."
- "**Are your parents** at home?" "No, **they're** out."
- "**Is it** cold in your room?" "Yes, a little."
- **Your shoes are** nice. **Are they** new?

We say:

- **Is she** at home? / **Is your mother** at home? (*not* Is at home your mother?)
- **Are they** new? / **Are your shoes** new? (*not* Are new your shoes?)

B

Where . . . ? / What . . . ? / Who . . . ? / How . . . ? / Why . . . ?

- **Where is** your mother? Is she at home?
- "**Where are** you from?" "Canada."
- "**What color is** your car?" "It's red."
- "**How old is** Joe?" "He's 24."
- "**How are** your parents?" "They're fine."
- "**Why are** you angry?" "Because you're late."
- "**How much are** these postcards?" "Fifty cents."

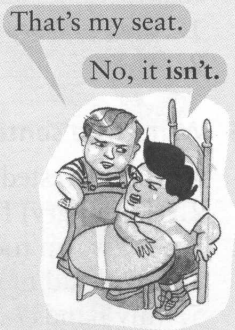
where's = where **is** what's = what **is** who's = who **is** how's = how **is**

- **Where's** Sarah?
- **What's** the temperature?
- **Who's** that man?
- **How's** your father?

C

Short answers

Yes,	I	**am.**	No,	I'm	**not.**	*or*	No,	he she it	**isn't.**
	he she it	**is.**		he's she's it's					
	we you they	**are.**		we're you're they're				we you they	**aren't.**



- "**Are you** tired?" "Yes, **I am.**"
- "**Are you** hungry?" "No, **I'm not,** but I'm thirsty."
- "**Is your friend** Japanese?" "Yes, **he is.**"
- "**Are these your keys?**" "Yes, **they are.**"
- "**That's** my seat." "No, **it isn't.**"

Am/is/are **Unit 1** **Questions** **Unit 45**

Exercises

2.1 Find the right answers for the questions.

1.	Where's the camera?	a) Toronto.	1. *g*
2.	Is your car blue?	b) No, I'm not.	2. _____
3.	Is Nicole from Boston?	c) Yes, you are.	3. _____
4.	Am I late?	d) My sister.	4. _____
5.	Where's Anne from?	e) Black.	5. _____
6.	What color is your bag?	f) No, it's black.	6. _____
7.	Are you hungry?	g) In your bag.	7. _____
8.	Who's that woman?	h) No, she's Canadian.	8. _____

2.2 Write questions. Use *is* or *are*.

1. (at home / your mother?) *Is your mother at home?*
2. (interesting / your job?) _____
3. (the stores / open today?) _____
4. (interested in sports / you?) _____
5. (near here / the post office?) _____
6. (at school / your children?) _____
7. (why / you / late?) _____

2.3 Write questions. Use *What/Who/Where/How . . . ?*. Read the answers first.

1.	*How are* _____ your parents?	They're fine.
2.	_____ the bus stop?	At the end of the block.
3.	_____ your children?	Five, six, and ten.
4.	_____ these oranges?	Seventy-nine cents a pound.
5.	_____ your favorite sport?	Skiing.
6.	_____ the man in this photograph?	That's my father.
7.	_____ your new shoes?	Black.

2.4 Write questions. Read the answers first.

1.	(name?) *What's your name?*	Paul.
2.	(married or single?) _____	I'm married.
3.	(Australian?) _____	No, I'm Canadian.
4.	(how old?) _____	I'm 30.
5.	(a lawyer?) _____	No, I'm a teacher.
6.	(wife a teacher?) _____	No, she's a lawyer.
7.	(from?) _____	She's Mexican.
8.	(her name?) _____	Ana.
9.	(how old?) _____	She's 27.

2.5 Write true short answers (*Yes, I am.* / *No, he isn't.*, etc.).

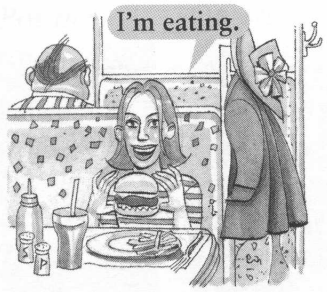
1. Are you married? *No, I'm not.*
2. Are you thirsty? _____
3. Is it cold today? _____
4. Are your hands cold? _____
5. Is it dark now? _____
6. Are you a teacher? _____

Additional Exercises 1–2 (pages 243–244)

UNIT 3

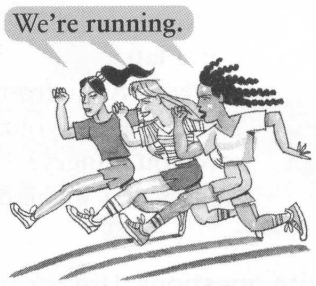
I am doing (Present Continuous)

A



She's **eating.**
She **isn't reading.**

It's **raining.**
The sun **isn't shining.**



They're **running.**
They **aren't walking.**

The *present continuous* is **am/is/are + doing/eating/running/writing,** etc.

I	**am (not)**	**-ing**
he she it	**is (not)**	
we you they	**are (not)**	

- **I'm working. I'm not watching** TV.
- Chris **is taking** a bath.
- She **isn't eating.** (*or* She's **not eating.**)
- The phone **is ringing.**
- We're **having** dinner.
- You're **not listening** to me. (*or* You **aren't listening** to me.)
- The children **are doing** their homework.

B

am/is/are + -ing = something is happening *now*

I'm working
she's **wearing** a hat
they're **playing** football
I'm not watching television

past — *now* — *future*

- Please be quiet. **I'm working.** (= I'm working now)
- Look at Michiko! She's **wearing** her new hat. (= she is wearing it now)
- The weather is nice. **It's not raining.**
- "Where are the children?" "They're **playing** in the park."
- *(on the phone)* We're **having** dinner now. Can you call back later?
- You can turn off the television. **I'm not watching** it.

Spelling (see Appendix 5)

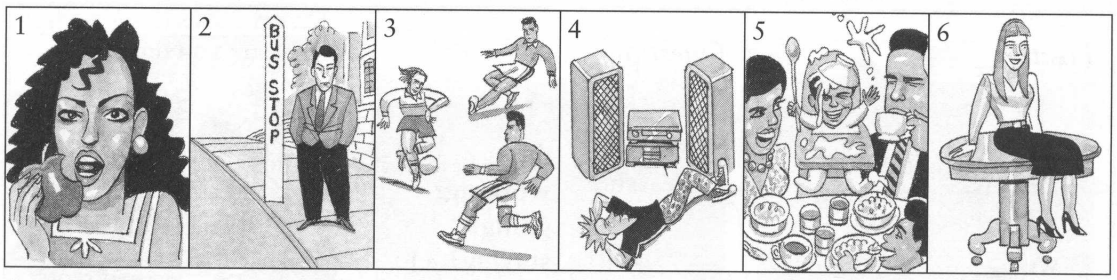
come → coming write → writing dance → dancing
run → running sit → sitting swim → swimming
lie → lying

Am/is/are **Unit 1** ***Are you doing . . . ?*** **(Questions) Unit 4** ***I am doing*** **and** ***I do*** **Unit 8**
What are you doing tomorrow? **Unit 26**

Exercises

3.1 What are these people doing? Use these verbs to complete the sentences:

~~eat~~ have lie play sit wait



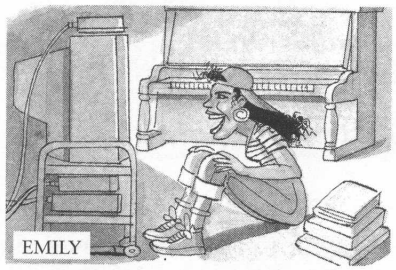
1. *She's eating* an apple.
2. He _____ for a bus.
3. They _____ soccer.
4. _____ on the floor.
5. _____ breakfast.
6. _____ on the table.

3.2 Complete the sentences. Use one of these verbs:

build cook leave stand stay swim take ~~work~~

1. Please be quiet. I *'m working* .
2. "Where's John?" "He's in the kitchen. He _____ ."
3. "You _____ on my foot." "Oh, I'm sorry."
4. Look! Somebody _____ in the river.
5. We're here on vacation. We _____ at the Far West Motel.
6. "Where's Erin?" "She _____ a shower."
7. They _____ a new hotel downtown.
8. I _____ now. Goodbye.

3.3 Look at the picture. Write sentences about Emily. Use *She's -ing* or *She isn't -ing*.



1. (have dinner) *She isn't having dinner.*
2. (watch television) *She's watching television.*
3. (sit on the floor) She _____ .
4. (read a book) _____
5. (play the piano) _____
6. (laugh) _____
7. (wear a hat) _____
8. (write a letter) _____

3.4 What's happening now? Write true sentences.

1. (I / wash / my hair) *I'm not washing my hair.*
2. (it / snow) *It's snowing.* OR *It isn't snowing.*
3. (I / sit / on a chair) _____
4. (I / eat) _____
5. (it / rain) _____
6. (I / study / English) _____
7. (I / listen / to music) _____
8. (the sun / shine) _____
9. (I / wear / shoes) _____
10. (I / read / a newspaper) _____

UNIT 4

Are you doing . . . ? (Present Continuous Questions)

A

Positive

I	am	doing working going staying, etc.
he she it	is	
we you they	are	

Question

am	I	doing? working? going? staying?, etc.
is	he she it	
are	we you they	

- "Are you feeling OK?" "Yes, I'm fine, thanks."
- "Is it raining?" "Yes, take an umbrella."
- Why are you wearing a coat? It's not cold.
- "What's Luis doing?" "He's reading the newspaper."
- "What are the children doing?" "They're watching television."
- Look, there's Hannah! Where's she going?
- Who are you waiting for? Are you waiting for Sue?

B

Study the word order.

	is/are + *subject*		+ -ing
	Is	he	working today?
	Is	Luis	working today? (*not* Is working Luis today?)
Where	are	they	going?
Where	are	those people	going? (*not* Where are going those people?)

C

Short answers

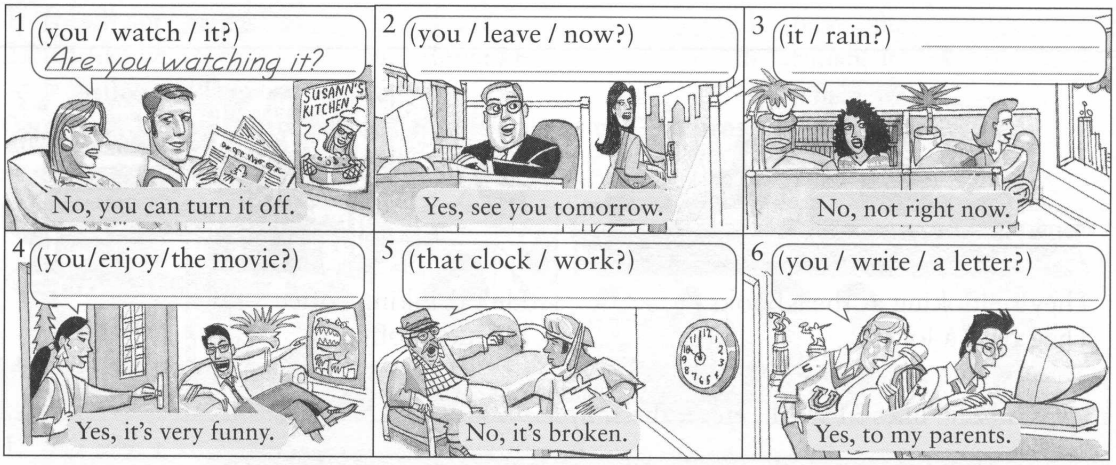
Yes,	I	am.	No,	I'm	not.	*or*	No,	he she it	isn't.
	he she it	is.		he's she's it's					
	we you they	are.		we're you're they're				we you they	aren't.

- "Are you going now?" "Yes, I am."
- "Is Luis working today?" "Yes, he is."
- "Is it raining?" "No, it isn't."
- "Are your friends staying at a hotel?" "No, they aren't. They're staying with me."

I am doing Unit 3 *What are you doing tomorrow?* Unit 26 Questions Units 45–48

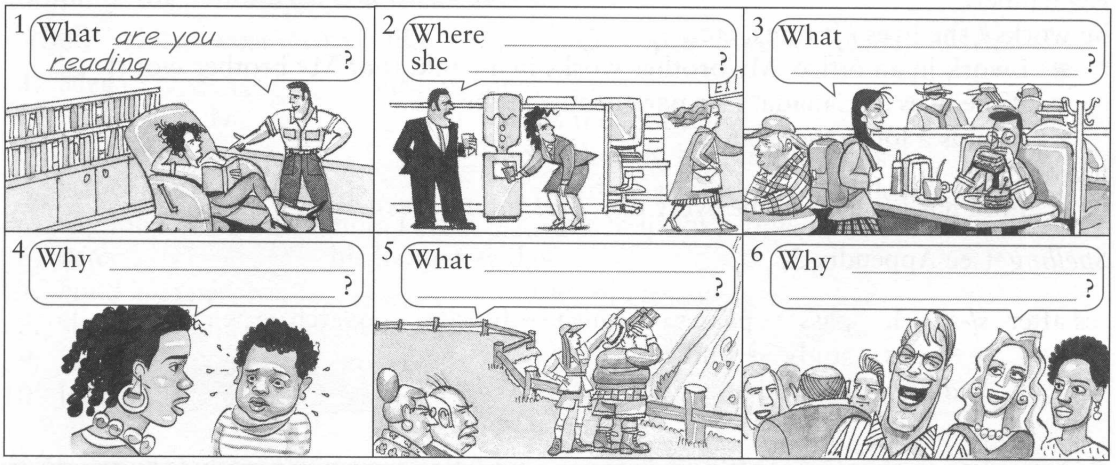
Exercises

4.1 Look at the pictures and write the questions.



4.2 Look at the pictures and complete the questions. Use these words:

cry eat go laugh look at ~~read~~



4.3 Write questions with these words. Use *is* or *are* and put the words in order.

1. (working / Luis / today?) *Is Luis working today?*
2. (what / doing / the children?) *What are the children doing?*
3. (you / listening / to me?) _____
4. (where / going / your friends?) _____
5. (your parents / television / watching?) _____
6. (what / cooking / Jessica?) _____
7. (why / you / looking / at me?) _____
8. (coming / the bus?) _____

4.4 Write true short answers (*Yes, I am.* / *No, he isn't.*, etc.).

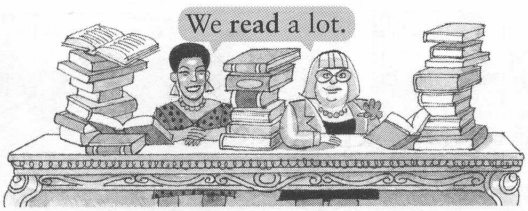
1. Are you watching TV? *No, I'm not.*
2. Are you wearing a watch? _____
3. Are you eating something? _____
4. Is it raining? _____
5. Are you sitting on the floor? _____
6. Are you feeling all right? _____

Additional Exercise 3 (page 244)

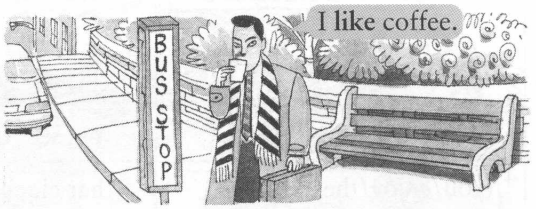
UNIT 5

I do, I work, I like, etc. (Simple Present)

A



They're looking at their books.
They **read** a lot.



He's drinking coffee.
He **likes** coffee.

they **read** / he **likes** / I **work,** etc. = the *simple present*

I/we/you/they	**read**	**like**	**work**	**live**	**watch**	**do**	**have**
he/she/it	**reads**	**likes**	**works**	**lives**	**watches**	**does**	**has**

Remember:
he works / she lives / it rains, etc.

- **I work** in an office. **My brother works** in a bank. (*not* My brother work)
- **Anne lives** in Canada. **Her parents live** in the U.S.
- **It rains** a lot in the winter.

he/she/it **has**

- **John has** lunch at home every day. (*not* John haves)

Spelling (see Appendix 5)

-es after -s/-sh/-ch	pass → passes	finish → finishes	watch → watches
-y → -ies	study → studies	try → tries	
and also	do → does	go → goes	

B

We use the simple present for things that are true in general, or for things that happen sometimes or all the time.

- I **like** big cities.
- The stores **open** at 9 o'clock and **close** at 5:30.
- Mario **works** very hard. He **starts** at 7:30 and **finishes** at 8 o'clock at night.
- The earth **goes** around the sun.
- We **do** a lot of different things in our free time.
- It **costs** a lot of money to stay at luxury hotels.

C

always/never/often/sometimes/usually + simple present

- Sue **always gets** to work early. (*not* Sue gets always)
- We **often sleep** late on weekends. (*not* We sleep often)
- I **usually drive** to work, but I **sometimes walk.**
- Julia **never eats** breakfast.

***I don't* . . . Unit 6** ***Do you* . . . ?** **(Questions) Unit 7** ***I am doing* and *I do* Unit 8**
***Always/usually/often,* etc. Unit 95**

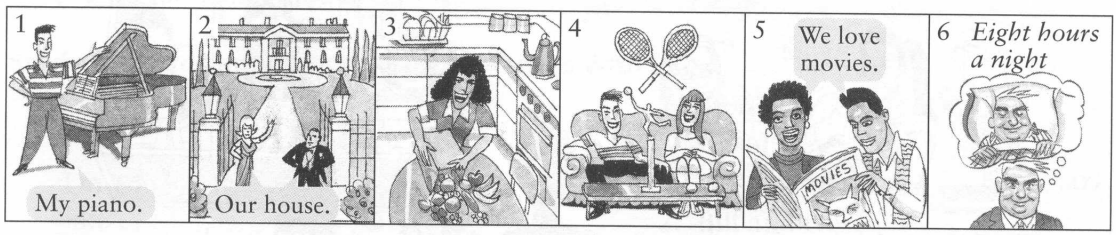
Exercises

5.1 Write these verbs + *-s* or *-es*.

1. (read) she *reads*
2. (think) he _____
3. (fly) it _____
4. (dance) he _____
5. (have) she _____
6. (finish) it _____

5.2 Complete the sentences about the people in the pictures. Use these verbs:

eat go live ~~play~~ play sleep



1. *He plays* the piano.
2. They _____ in a very big house.
3. _____ a lot of fruit.
4. _____ tennis.
5. _____ to the movies a lot.
6. _____ eight hours a night.

5.3 Complete the sentences. Use these verbs:

boil close cost cost like like meet open ~~speak~~ teach wash

1. Megan *speaks* four languages.
2. Banks usually _____ at 9:00 in the morning.
3. The Art Museum _____ at 5 o'clock in the afternoon.
4. Isabel is a teacher. She _____ mathematics to young children.
5. My job is very interesting. I _____ a lot of people.
6. Peter _____ his hair every day.
7. Food is expensive. It _____ a lot of money.
8. Shoes are expensive. They _____ a lot of money.
9. Water _____ at 100 degrees Celsius.
10. Julia and I are good friends. I _____ her and she _____ me.

5.4 Write sentences from these words. Put the verb in the right form (*arrive* or *arrives*, etc.).

1. (always / early / Sue / arrive) *Sue always arrives early.*
2. (Julia / parties / enjoy / always) Julia _____.
3. (work / Megan / hard / usually) _____
4. (Jenny / always / nice clothes / wear) _____
5. (dinner / we / have / always / at 6:30) _____
6. (television / Mario / watch / never) _____
7. (like / chocolate / children / usually) _____
8. (basketball / I / play / often / after work) _____

5.5 Write sentences about yourself. Use *always/never/often/sometimes/usually*.

1. (watch television) *I usually watch television at night.*
2. (read in bed) I _____.
3. (get up before 7 o'clock) _____
4. (go to work/school by bus) _____
5. (drink coffee) _____

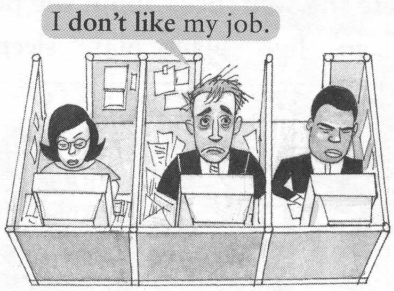
UNIT 6

I don't . . . (Simple Present Negative)

A

The *simple present negative* is **don't/doesn't** + *verb*.

She **doesn't drink** coffee.



He **doesn't like** his job.

Positive

I we you they	**work** **like** **do** **have**
he she it	**works** **likes** **does** **has**

Negative

I we you they	**don't** **(do not)**	**work** **like** **do** **have**
he she it	**doesn't** **(does not)**	

- I **drink** coffee, but I **don't drink** tea.
- Sue **drinks tea,** but she **doesn't drink** coffee.
- You **don't work** very hard.
- We **don't watch** television very often.
- The weather is usually nice. It **doesn't rain** very often.
- Jerry and Nicole **don't know** many people.

B

Remember:

I/we/you/they **don't . . .**
he/she/it **doesn't . . .**

- **I don't** like football.
- **He doesn't** like football.

- **I don't** like Fred, and **Fred doesn't** like me. (*not* Fred don't like)
- **My car doesn't** use much gas. (*not* My car don't use)
- Sometimes he's late, but **it doesn't** happen very often.

C

We use **don't/doesn't** + *base form* (don't **like** / doesn't **speak** / doesn't **do**, etc.).

- I **don't like** washing the car. I **don't do** it very often.
- Sandra speaks Spanish, but she **doesn't speak** Italian. (*not* doesn't speaks)
- Bill **doesn't do** his job very well. (*not* Bill doesn't his job)
- Paula **doesn't** usually **have** breakfast. (*not* doesn't . . . has)

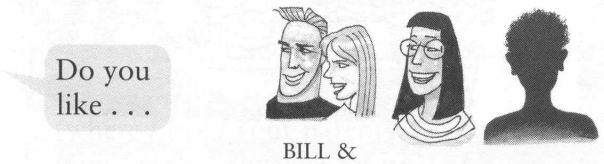
***I do/work/like,* etc. Unit 5** **Do you . . . ? (Questions) Unit 7**

Exercises

6.1 Write negative sentences.

1. I play the piano very well. *I don't play the piano very well.*
2. Yuki plays the piano very well. Yuki _____.
3. They know my phone number. _____
4. We work very hard. _____
5. He has a car. _____
6. You do the same thing every day. _____

6.2 Study the information and write sentences with *like*.



	BILL & ROSE	CAROL	YOU
1. jazz?	yes	no	?
2. boxing?	no	yes	?
3. horror movies?	yes	no	?

1. *Bill and Rose like jazz.*
   Carol _____.
   I _____ jazz.
2. Bill and Rose _____.
   Carol _____.
   I _____.
3. _____
   _____
   _____

6.3 Write about yourself. Use *I never . . .* or *I . . . a lot* or *I don't . . . very often*.

1. (watch TV) *I never watch TV.* OR *I watch TV a lot.* OR *I don't . . . very often.*
2. (go to the theater) _____
3. (ride a bicycle) _____
4. (eat in restaurants) _____
5. (travel by train) _____

6.4 Complete the sentences. All of them are negative. Use *don't/doesn't* + one of these verbs: cost go know ~~read~~ see use wear

1. I buy a newspaper every day, but sometimes I *don't read* it.
2. Fu Chen has a car, but he _____ it very often.
3. They like films, but they _____ to the movies very often.
4. Amanda is married, but she _____ a ring.
5. I _____ much about science. I'm not interested in it.
6. It's not an expensive hotel. It _____ much to stay there.
7. Brian lives near us, but we _____ him very often.

6.5 Put the verb in the correct form, positive or negative.

1. Megan *speaks* four languages – English, Japanese, Arabic, and Spanish. (speak)
2. I *don't like* my job. It's very boring. (like)
3. "Where's Mark?" "I'm sorry. I _____." (know)
4. Sue is a very quiet person. She _____ very much. (talk)
5. Jim _____ a lot of coffee. It's his favorite drink. (drink)
6. It's not true! I _____ it! (believe)
7. That's a very beautiful picture. I _____ it very much. (like)
8. Mark is a vegetarian. He _____ meat. (eat)

UNIT 7

Do you . . . ? (Simple Present Questions)

A

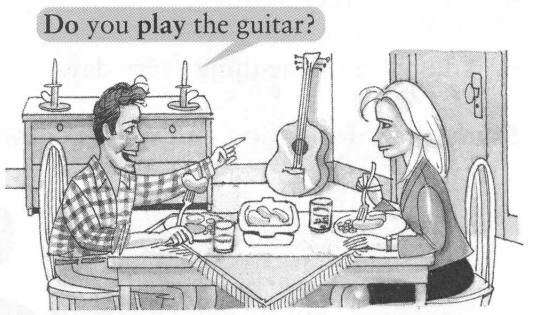
We use **do/does** in *simple present questions.*

Positive

I we you they	**work** **like** **do**
he she it	**works** **likes** **does**

Question

do	I we you they	**work?** **like?** **do?**
does	he she it	



B

Study the word order.

do/does + *subject* + *base form*

	Do	you	**work**	on Saturdays?
	Do	your friends	**live**	near here?
	Does	Chris	**play**	tennis?
Where	**do**	your parents	**live?**	
How often	**do**	you	**wash**	your hair?
What	**does**	this word	**mean?**	
How much	**does**	it	**cost**	to fly to Puerto Rico?

Questions with **always/usually/ever**

	Do	you	**always**	**have**	breakfast?
	Does	Chris	**ever**	**call**	you?
What	**do**	you	**usually**	**do**	on weekends?

What do you **do?** = What's your job?

- "**What do** you **do?**" "I work in a bank."

Remember:

do	I/we/you/they . . .
does	he/she/it . . .

- **Do they** like music?
- **Does he** like music?

C

Short answers

Yes,	I/we/you/they **do.** he/she/it **does.**	No,	I/we/you/they **don't.** he/she/it **doesn't.**

- "**Do you** play cards?" "No, **I don't.**"
- "**Do your parents** speak English?" "Yes, **they do.**"
- "**Does Chol Soo** work hard?" "Yes, **he does.**"
- "**Does your sister** live in Vancouver." "No, **she doesn't.**"

I do/work/like,* etc.** Unit 5 ***I don't . . . Unit 6 ***I have / I've got*** Unit 9 **Questions** Units 45–48

Exercises

7.1 Write questions with *Do . . . ?* and *Does . . . ?*

1. I like chocolate. How about you? *Do you like chocolate?*
2. I play tennis. How about you? _____ you _____?
3. Paulo plays tennis. How about Lucia? _____ Lucia _____?
4. You live near here. How about your friends? _____
5. You speak English. How about your brother? _____
6. I do yoga every morning. How about you? _____
7. Sue often travels on business. How about Paul? _____
8. I want to be famous. How about you? _____
9. You work hard. How about Nicole? _____

7.2 Write questions. Use the words in parentheses ( ) + *do / does*. Put the words in the right order.

1. (where / live / your parents?) *Where do your parents live?*
2. (you / early / always / get up?) *Do you always get up early?*
3. (how often / TV / you / watch?) _____
4. (you / want / what / for dinner?) _____
5. (like / you / football?) _____
6. (your brother / like / football?) _____
7. (what / you / do / in your free time?) _____
8. (your sister / work / where?) _____
9. (to the movies / ever / you / go?) _____
10. (what / mean / this word?) _____
11. (ever / snow / it / here?) _____
12. (go / usually / to bed / what time / you?) _____
13. (how much / to call Mexico / it / cost?) _____
14. (you / for breakfast / have / usually / what?) _____

7.3 Complete the questions. Use these verbs:

~~do~~ do enjoy get like start teach work

1. What *do you do* _____?
2. _____ it?
3. What time _____ in the morning?
4. _____ on Saturdays?
5. How _____ to work?
6. And your husband? What _____?
7. Where _____?
8. _____ his job?

I work in a bookstore.
It's OK.
At 9 o'clock.
Sometimes.
Usually by bus.
He's a teacher.
At Lincoln High School.
Yes, he loves it.

7.4 Write true short answers (*Yes, he does. / No, I don't.*, etc.).

1. Do you live in a big city? *No, I don't.* OR *Yes, I do.*
2. Does it rain a lot where you live? _____
3. Do your friends watch TV a lot? _____
4. Do you ever ride a bicycle? _____
5. Do you play the piano? _____

UNIT 8

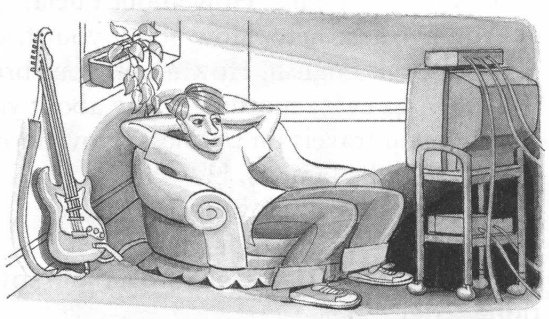
I am doing and *I do* (Present Continuous and Simple Present)

A

Jim is watching television.
He is not playing the guitar.

But Jim has a guitar.
He plays it often, and he plays very well.

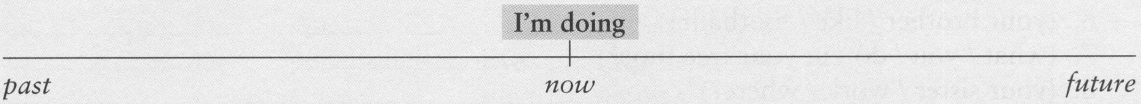
Jim **plays** the guitar, but
he's **not playing** the guitar now.



Is he playing the guitar?	**No, he isn't.**	*(present continuous)*
Does he play the guitar?	**Yes, he does.**	*(simple present)*

B

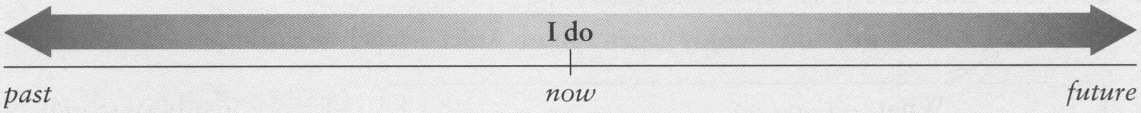
Present continuous (**I am doing**) = now, at the time of speaking



- Please be quiet. **I'm working.** (*not* I work)
- Tom **is taking** a shower right now. (*not* Tom takes)
- Take an umbrella with you. **It's raining.**
- You can turn off the television. **I'm** not **watching** it.
- Why are you under the table? What **are** you **doing?**

C

Simple present (**I do**) = in general, all the time or sometimes



- I **work** every day, from 9 o'clock to 5:30.
- Tom **takes** a shower every morning.
- It **rains** a lot in the winter.
- I **don't watch** television very often.
- What **do** you usually **do** on weekends?

D

We do not use these verbs in the present continuous (**I am -ing**):

like	**love**	**want**	**know**	**understand**	**remember**	**depend**
prefer	**hate**	**need**	**mean**	**believe**	**forget**	

Use only the simple present (**I want / do you like?**, etc.) with these verbs.

- I'm tired. I **want** to go home. (*not* I'm wanting)
- "**Do** you **know** that girl?" "Yes, but I **don't remember** her name."
- I **don't understand.** What **do** you **mean?**

Present Continuous Units 3–4 **Simple Present** Units 5–7 **Present for the Future** Unit 26

Exercises

8.1 Answer the questions about the pictures.

1. Does he take photographs? *Yes, he does.* Is he taking a photograph? *No, he isn't.*
   What's he doing? *He's cooking.*
2. Is she driving a bus? _____ Does she drive a bus? _____
   What's she doing? _____
3. Does he wash windows? _____ Is he washing a window? _____
   What's he doing? _____
4. Are they teaching? _____ Do they teach? _____
   What do they do? _____

8.2 Write *am/is/are* or *do/don't/does/doesn't.*

1. Excuse me, *do* _____ you speak English?
2. "Where's Marta?" "I _____ know."
3. What's so funny? Why _____ you laughing?
4. "What _____ your sister do?" "She's a dentist."
5. It _____ raining. I _____ want to go out in the rain.
6. "Where _____ you come from?" "Canada."
7. How much _____ it cost to send a letter to Canada?
8. Steve is a good tennis player, but he _____ play very often.

8.3 Put the verb in the present continuous (*I am doing*) or the simple present (*I do*).

1. Excuse me, *do you speak* _____ English? (you / speak)
2. "Where's Tom?" "*He's taking* _____ a shower." (he / take)
3. *I don't watch* _____ television very often. (I / not / watch)
4. Listen! Somebody _____ . (sing)
5. Sandra is tired. _____ to go home now. (she / want)
6. How often _____ a newspaper? (you / read)
7. "Excuse me, but _____ in my place." "Oh, I'm sorry." (you / sit)
8. I'm sorry, _____ . Can you speak more slowly? (I / not / understand)
9. It's late. _____ home now. (I / go)
   _____ with me? (you / come)
10. What time _____ work every day? (your father / finish)
11. You can turn off the radio. _____ to it. (I / not / listen)
12. "Where's Paul?" "In the kitchen. _____ something." (he / cook)
13. Tony _____ to work. (not / usually / drive)
    He _____ . (usually / walk)
14. Achara _____ coffee. (not / like) _____ tea. (she / prefer)

Additional Exercises 8–9 (page 246)

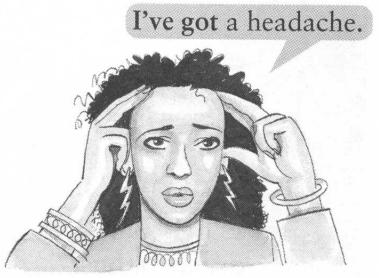
UNIT 9

I have . . . and *I've got . . .*

A

You can say **I have** or **I've got**, **he has** or **he's got.**

I we you they	**have**	*or*	I we you they	**have got**	(**I've got**) (**we've got**) (**you've got**) (**they've got**)
he she it	**has**	*or*	he she it	**has got**	(**he's got**) (**she's got**) (**it's got**)



- I **have** blue eyes. *or* I**'ve got** blue eyes.
- The house **has** six bedrooms. *or* The house **has got** six bedrooms.
- Li Jing isn't feeling well. She **has** a headache. *or* She**'s got** a headache.
- They **have** a horse, three dogs, and six cats. *or* They**'ve got** a horse . . .

B

I don't have / I haven't got, etc. *(negative)*

You can say:

I/we/you/they **don't** he/she/it **doesn't**	**have**	*or*	I/we/you/they **haven't** he/she/it **hasn't**	**got**

- I **have** a bike, but I **don't have** a car. *or* I**'ve got** a bike, but I **haven't got** a car.
- Mr. and Mrs. Harris **don't have** any children. *or* . . . **haven't got** any children.
- It's a nice house, but it **doesn't have** a garage. *or* . . . it **hasn't got** a garage.
- Mariko **doesn't have** a job. *or* Mariko **hasn't got** a job.

C

Do you have . . . ? / Have you got . . . ?, etc. *(questions)*

You can say:

do I/we/you/they **does** he/she/it	**have?**	*or*	**have** I/we/you/they **has** he/she/it	**got?**

- **Do** you **have** a camera? *or* **Have** you **got** a camera?
- **Does** Anne **have** a car? *or* **Has** Anne **got** a car?
- What kind of car **does** she **have?** *or* What kind of car **has** she **got?**
- What **do** you **have** in your bag? *or* What **have** you **got** in your bag?

D

Short answers

- "**Do** you have a camera?" "Yes, I **do.**" / "No, I **don't.**" *or*
  "**Have** you got a camera?" "Yes, I **have.**"/ "No, I **haven't.**"
- "**Does** Anne have a car?" "Yes, she **does.**" / "No, she **doesn't.**" *or*
  "**Has** Anne got a car?" "Yes, she **has.**" / "No, she **hasn't.**"

Had / didn't have **Units 11–12** ***Have*** **Unit 59** ***Some/any*** **Unit 77**

Exercises

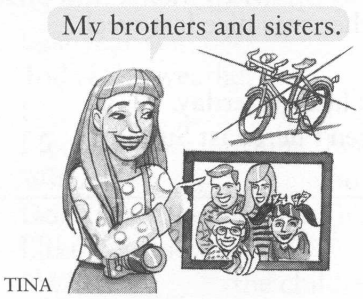
9.1 Rewrite these sentences with *got* (*have got / hasn't got / have . . . got?*, etc.).

1. They have a car. *They've got a car.*
2. Bill has a headache. _____
3. I don't have any free time. _____
4. Do you have a watch? _____
5. We have a lot of work at the office now. _____
6. My brother doesn't have a college degree. _____

Now rewrite these sentences without *got*. Use *have / doesn't have / do . . . have?*, etc.

7. Yoshi hasn't got time to go with us. *Yoshi doesn't have time to go with us.*
8. You've got a phone call from Japan. _____
9. Have you got any aspirin? _____
10. Sara hasn't got much money. _____
11. Have your parents got any friends in Hawaii? _____

9.2 Write about Tina and you. Use *has got / hasn't got / have got / haven't got.*



1. (a camera) *Tina has got a camera.*
   I've got a camera. OR *I haven't got . . .*
2. (a bicycle) Tina _____ .
   I _____ .
3. (long hair) _____
4. (brothers / sisters) _____

9.3 Complete the sentences. Use *have/has* or *don't have / doesn't have* + one of these:

~~a big yard~~	a key	a toothache	much time
~~a headache~~	a lot of friends	four wheels	

1. I'm not feeling very well. I *have a headache* .
2. It's a nice house, but it *doesn't have a big yard* .
3. Most cars _____ .
4. Everybody likes Tom. He _____ .
5. I'm going to the dentist this morning. I _____ .
6. He can't open the door. He _____ .
7. Hurry! We _____ .

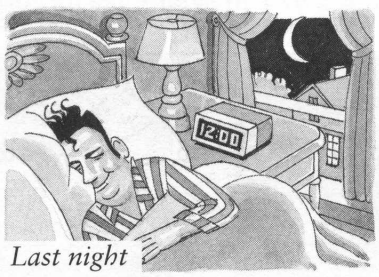
9.4 Complete the sentences with *do, doesn't, don't, got, has,* or *have.*

1. Sarah hasn't *got* a car. She goes everywhere by bicycle.
2. They like animals. They *have* three dogs and two cats.
3. Ryan isn't happy. He _____ got a lot of problems.
4. _____ you have change for a dollar?
5. They don't read much. They _____ have many books.
6. "What's wrong?" "I've _____ something in my eye."
7. "Where's my pen?" "I don't know. I don't _____ it."
8. Julia wants to go to the concert, but she _____ have a ticket.
9. _____ you got a minute to help me?

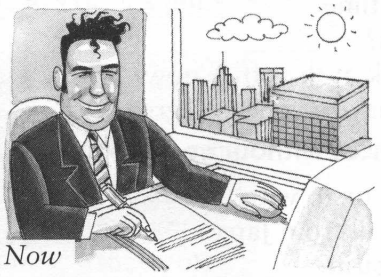
UNIT 10

Was/were

A



Last night



Now

Now Arturo **is** at work.

At midnight last night he **wasn't** at work.

He **was** in bed.
He **was** asleep.

am/is (present) → **was** (past)

- I **am** tired. (now)
- Where **is** Beth? (now)
- The weather **is** nice today.

- I **was** tired **last night.**
- Where **was** Beth **yesterday?**
- The weather **was** nice **last week.**

are (present) → **were** (past)

- You **are** late. (now)
- They **aren't** here. (now)

- You **were** late **yesterday.**
- They **weren't** here **last Sunday.**

B

Positive		*Negative*		*Question*	
I he she it	**was**	I he she it	**was not (wasn't)**	**was**	I? he? she? it?
we you they	**were**	we you they	**were not (weren't)**	**were**	we? you? they?

- Last year Amy **was** 22, so she's 23 now.
- When I **was** a child, I **was** afraid of dogs.
- We **were** hungry after the trip, but we **weren't** tired.
- The hotel **was** comfortable, but it **wasn't** expensive.
- **Was** the weather nice when you **were** on vacation?
- Those shoes are nice. **Were** they expensive?
- Why **were** you late this morning?

C

Short answers

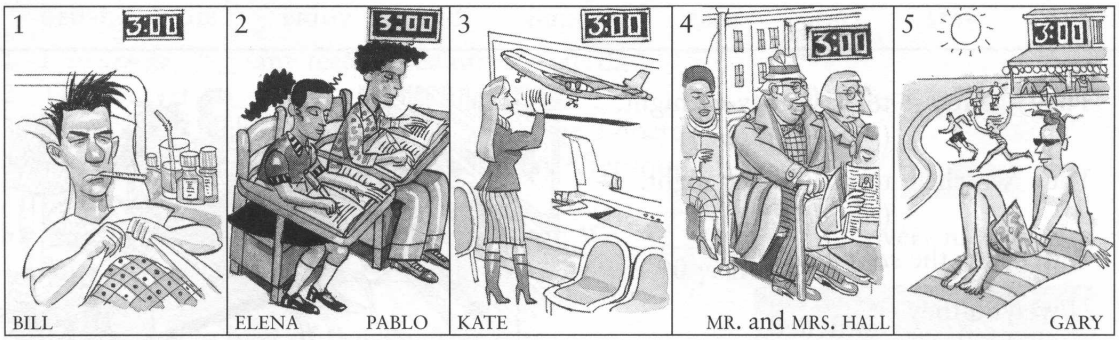
Yes,	I/he/she/it **was.** we/you/they **were.**	No,	I/he/she/it **wasn't.** we/you/they **weren't.**

- "**Were** you late?" "No, I **wasn't.**"
- "**Was** Scott at work yesterday?" "Yes, he **was.**"
- "**Were** Amy and Matt at the party?" "No, they **weren't.**"

Am/is/are **Units 1–2** ***I was doing*** **Unit 13**

Exercises

10.1 Where were these people at 3 o'clock yesterday afternoon? Where were you?



1. *Bill was* in *bed*.
2. Elena and Pablo _____ at _____.
3. Kate _____ at _____.
4. _____ on _____.
5. _____ at _____.
6. And you? I _____.

10.2 Write *am / is / are* (present) or *was / were* (past).

1. Last year she *was* 22, so she *is* 23 now.
2. Today the weather _____ nice, but yesterday it _____ very cold.
3. I _____ hungry. Can I have something to eat?
4. I feel fine this morning, but I _____ very tired last night.
5. Where _____ you at 11 o'clock last Friday morning?
6. Don't buy those shoes. They _____ very expensive.
7. I like your new jacket. _____ it expensive?
8. "Where _____ the children?" "I don't know. They _____ here ten minutes ago."

10.3 Write *was / wasn't* or *were / weren't*.

1. We weren't happy with the hotel. Our room *was* very small, and it *wasn't* very clean.
2. Bill _____ at work last week because he _____ sick. He's better now.
3. Yesterday _____ a holiday, so the banks _____ closed. They're open today.
4. "_____ Kate and John at the party?" "Kate _____ there, but John _____."
5. "Where are my keys?" "I don't know. They _____ on the table, but they're not there now."
6. You _____ at home last night. Where _____ you?

10.4 Write questions. Use the words in parentheses ( ) in the correct order + *was / were*.

1. (late / you / this morning / why?) *Why were you late this morning?*
2. (hard / your exam?) _____
3. (last week / where / Beth and Bill?) _____
4. (angry / you / yesterday / why?) _____
5. (nice / the weather / last week?) _____

The traffic was bad.

No, it was easy.

They were on vacation.

Because you were late.

Yes, it was beautiful.

UNIT 11

Worked, got, went, etc. (Simple Past)

A

They **watch** television every night. (*simple present*)

They **watched** television last night. (*simple past*)

Watched is the *simple past:*

I/we/you/they he/she/it	**watched**

B

The *simple past* is often **-ed** *(regular verbs)*. For example:

work → **worked** dance → **danced**
clean → **cleaned** stay → **stayed**
start → **started** need → **needed**

- I brush my teeth every morning. This morning I **brushed** my teeth.
- Terry **worked** in a bank from 1987 to 1998.
- Yesterday it **rained** all morning. It **stopped** at lunchtime.
- We **enjoyed** the party last night. We **danced** a lot and **talked** to a lot of people. The party **ended** at midnight.

Spelling (see Appendix 5)

try → tried study → studied copy → copied
stop → stopped plan → planned

C

Some verbs are *irregular* (= not regular). Their simple past is not **-ed**. Here are some important irregular verbs (see also Appendixes 2–3).

begin	**began**	fall	**fell**	leave	**left**	sell	**sold**
break	**broke**	find	**found**	lose	**lost**	sit	**sat**
bring	**brought**	fly	**flew**	make	**made**	sleep	**slept**
build	**built**	forget	**forgot**	meet	**met**	speak	**spoke**
buy	**bought**	get	**got**	pay	**paid**	stand	**stood**
catch	**caught**	give	**gave**	put	**put**	take	**took**
come	**came**	go	**went**	read	**read***	tell	**told**
do	**did**	have	**had**	ring	**rang**	think	**thought**
drink	**drank**	hear	**heard**	say	**said**	win	**won**
eat	**ate**	know	**knew**	see	**saw**	write	**wrote**

* *pronounced "red"*

- We **did** a lot of work yesterday.
- I usually get up early, but this morning I **got** up at 9:30.
- Caroline **went** to the movies three times last week.
- Ampol **came** into the room, **took** off his coat, and **sat** down.

Was/were **Unit 10** ***I didn't . . . and Did you . . . ?*** **(Negatives and Questions) Unit 12** ***Ago*** **Unit 18**

Exercises

11.1 Complete the sentences. Use one of these verbs in the simple past:

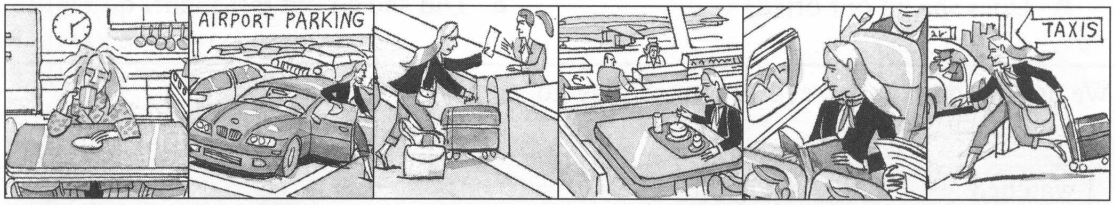
~~brush~~ die enjoy end happen rain start stay want

1. I *brushed* my teeth three times yesterday.
2. The concert _____ at 7:30 and _____ at 10 o'clock.
3. When I was a child, I _____ to be a doctor.
4. The accident _____ last Sunday afternoon.
5. It's a nice day today, but yesterday it _____ all day.
6. We _____ our vacation last year. We _____ at a very nice hotel.
7. Amy's grandfather _____ when he was 90 years old.

11.2 Write the simple past of these verbs:

1. get *got*	4. pay _____	7. go _____	10. know _____
2. see _____	5. visit _____	8. think _____	11. put _____
3. play _____	6. buy _____	9. copy _____	12. speak _____

11.3 Read about Anna's trip to Mexico City. Put the verbs in the correct form.



Last Tuesday Anna (1) *flew* from Los Angeles to Mexico	(fly)
City. She (2) _____ up at 6 o'clock in the morning and	(get)
(3) _____ a cup of coffee. At 7:15 she (4) _____	(have) (leave)
home and (5) _____ to the airport. When she	(drive)
(6) _____, she (7) _____ the car and then	(arrive) (park)
(8) _____ to the ticket counter, where she (9) _____	(go) (check)
in for her flight. Then she (10) _____ breakfast at an airport	(have)
cafe and (11) _____ for her flight. The plane	(wait)
(12) _____ on time and (13) _____ in Mexico City	(depart) (arrive)
four hours later. Finally, she (14) _____ a taxi to her hotel.	(take)

11.4 Write sentences about the past.

1. Jim always goes to work by car. Yesterday he *went to work by car*.
2. Mei Lan often loses her keys. She _____ last week.
3. Kate meets her friends every night. She _____ last night.
4. I usually buy two newspapers every day. Yesterday I _____.
5. We usually go to the movies on Sundays. Last Sunday we _____.
6. I eat an apple every day. Yesterday I _____.
7. Taro always takes a shower in the morning. This morning he _____.

11.5 Write sentences about what you did yesterday.

1. *I played volleyball yesterday.*
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____

UNIT 12

I didn't . . . Did you . . . ? (Simple Past Negative and Questions)

A

We use **did** in *simple past negatives* and *questions*.

Base form	*Positive*		*Negative*			*Question*		
play	I	**played**	I		play		I	play?
start	we	**started**	we		start		we	start?
watch	you	**watched**	you	**did not (didn't)**	watch	**did**	you	watch?
have	they	**had**	they		have		they	have?
see	he	**saw**	he		see		he	see?
do	she	**did**	she		do		she	do?
go	it	**went**	it		go		it	go?

B

do/does *(present)* → **did** *(past)*

- I **don't** watch television very often.
- **Does** she go out often?
- I **didn't** watch television **yesterday.**
- **Did** she go out **last night?**

C

We use **did/didn't** + *base form* (**watch/play/go,** etc.)

Positive → *Negative*

I **watched** → I **didn't watch** (*not* I didn't watched)
he **had** → he **didn't have**
they **went** → **did** they **go**? (*not* did they went?)
you **did** → **did** you **do**?

- I **played** tennis yesterday, but I **didn't win.**
- "**Did** you **do** your homework?" "No, I **didn't have** time."
- We **went** to the movies, but we **didn't enjoy** the film.

D

Study the word order in questions:

	did + *subject*		+ *base form*	
	Did	your sister	**call**	you?
What	**did**	you	**do**	last night?
How	**did**	the accident	**happen?**	
Where	**did**	your parents	**go**	for vacation?

E

Short answers

Yes,	I/we/you/they he/she/it	**did.**	No,	I/we/you/they he/she/it	**didn't.**

- "**Did you** see Joe yesterday?" "No, **I didn't.**"
- "**Did it** rain on Sunday?" "Yes, **it did.**"
- "**Did Helen** come to the party?" "No, **she didn't.**"
- "**Did your parents** have a good trip?" "Yes, **they did.**"

Exercises

12.1 Complete these sentences. Use *didn't.*

1. I saw Barbara, but I *didn't see* Mariana.
2. They worked on Monday, but they _____ on Tuesday.
3. We went to the post office, but we _____ to the bank.
4. She had a pen, but she _____ any paper.
5. Brian did some work in the yard, but he _____ any work in the house.

12.2 Write questions with *Did . . . ?*

1. I watched TV last night. How about you? *Did you watch TV last night?*
2. I enjoyed the party. How about you? _____
3. I had a nice vacation. How about you? _____
4. I finished work early. How about you? _____
5. I slept well last night. How about you? _____

12.3 What did you do yesterday? Write true sentences, positive or negative.

1. (watch TV) *I watched TV.* OR *I didn't watch TV.*
2. (get up before 7 o'clock) I _____.
3. (take a shower) _____
4. (buy a magazine) _____
5. (eat meat) _____
6. (go to bed before 10:30) _____

12.4 Write *B*'s questions. Use:

cost get to work go go to bed late happen have a nice time ~~stay~~ win

1. *A:* We went to Vancouver last month.
   B: Where *did you stay* ?
   A: With some friends.
2. *A:* I was late this morning.
   B: What time _____ ?
   A: Half past nine.
3. *A:* I played tennis this afternoon.
   B: _____
   A: No, I lost.
4. *A:* I had a nice vacation.
   B: Good. Where _____ ?
   A: To the mountains.
5. *A:* We came home by taxi.
   B: How much _____ ?
   A: Ten dollars.
6. *A:* I'm tired this morning.
   B: _____
   A: No, but I didn't sleep very well.
7. *A:* We went to the beach yesterday.
   B: _____
   A: Yes, it was great.
8. *A:* The window is broken.
   B: How _____ ?
   A: I don't know.

12.5 Put the verb in the correct form – positive, negative, or question.

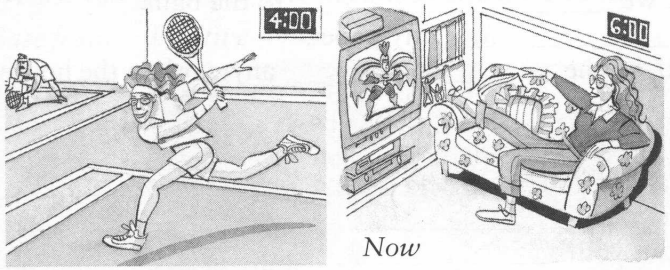
1. We went to the movies, but the film wasn't very good. We *didn't enjoy* it. (enjoy)
2. Tim _____ some new clothes yesterday – two shirts, a jacket, and a sweater. (buy)
3. "_____ yesterday?" "No, it was a nice day." (rain)
4. We were tired, so we_____ long at the party. (stay)
5. It was very warm in the room, so I _____ a window. (open)
6. "Did you go to the bank this morning?" "No, I _____ time."(have)
7. "I cut my hand this morning." "How _____ that?" (do)

Additional Exercises 10–13 (page 247)

UNIT 13

I was doing (Past Continuous)

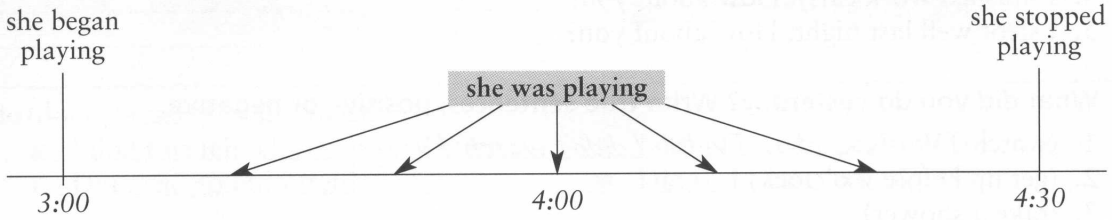
A



It's 6 o'clock now.
Kelly **is** at home.
She **is watching** television.

At 4 o'clock she **wasn't** at home.
She **was** at the tennis club.

She **was playing** tennis.
She **wasn't watching** television.



B

Was/were + -ing is the *past continuous*.

Positive

I he she it	**was**	**doing** **watching** **playing** **running** **living** (etc.)
we you they	**were**	

Negative

I he she it	**wasn't** **(was not)**	**doing** **watching** **playing** **running** **living** (etc.)
we you they	**weren't** **(were not)**	

Question

was	I he she it	**doing?** **watching?** **playing?** **running?** **living?** (etc.)
were	we you they	

- What **were** you **doing** at 11:30 yesterday? **Were** you **working?**
- "What did he say?" "I don't know. I **wasn't listening.**"
- It **was raining,** so we didn't go out.
- In 1994 we **were living** in Japan.
- Today she's wearing a skirt, but yesterday she **was wearing** pants.
- I woke up early yesterday. It was a beautiful morning. The sun **was shining,** and the birds **were singing.**

Spelling (see Appendix 5)

live → living run → running lie → lying

C

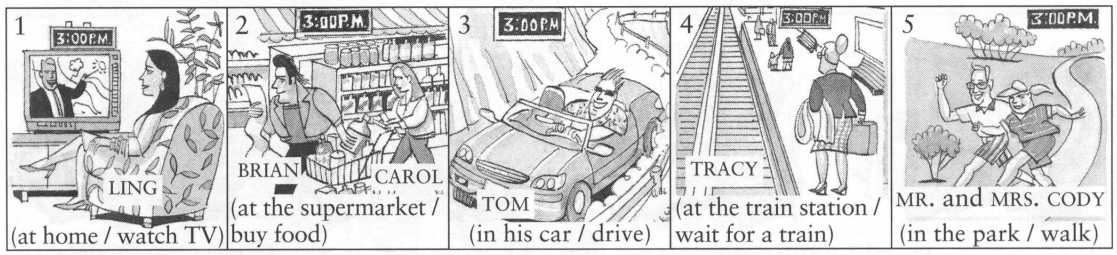
am/is/are + -ing *(present)* → **was/were + -ing** *(past)*

- **I'm working** (now).
- It **isn't raining** (now).
- What **are** you **doing** (now)?
- **I was working** at 10:30 last night.
- It **wasn't raining** when we went out.
- What **were** you **doing** at three o'clock?

Was/were **Unit 10** ***I was doing*** **and** ***I did*** **(Past Continuous and Simple Past) Unit 14**

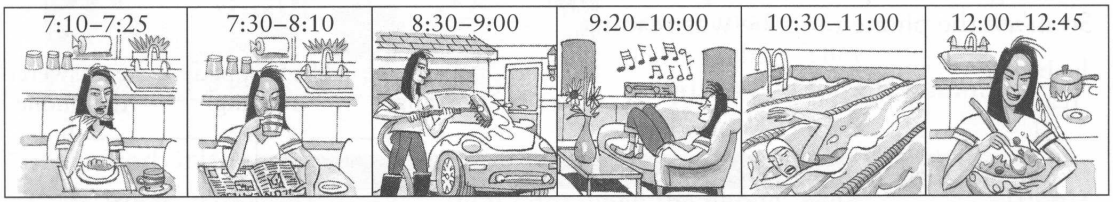
Exercises

13.1 Look at the pictures. Where were these people at 3 o'clock yesterday afternoon? What were they doing? Write two sentences for each picture.



1. *Ling was at home. She was watching TV.*
2. Carol and Brian _____ . They _____ .
3. Tom _____ . _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. And you? I _____ . _____

13.2 Sarah did a lot of things yesterday morning. Look at the pictures, and complete the sentences.



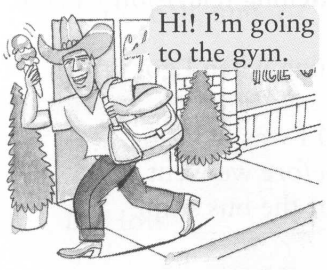
1. At 8:45 *she was washing her car* .
2. At 10:45 she _____ .
3. At 8 o'clock _____ .
4. At 12:10 _____ .
5. At 7:15 _____ .
6. At 9:30 _____ .

13.3 Complete the questions. Use *was/were -ing*. Use *what/where/why* if necessary.

1. (you / live) *Where were you living* in 1990?
2. (you / do) _____ at 2 o'clock?
3. (it / rain) _____ when you got up?
4. (Ann / drive) _____ so fast?
5. (Lee / wear) _____ a suit yesterday?

In Brazil.
I was asleep.
No, it was sunny.
Because she was late.
No, jeans.

13.4 Look at the picture. You saw Joe yesterday afternoon. What was he doing? Write positive or negative sentences.



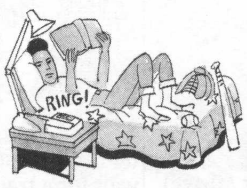
1. (wear / a jacket) *He wasn't wearing a jacket.*
2. (carry / a bag) _____
3. (go / to the dentist) _____
4. (eat / an ice cream cone) _____
5. (carry / an umbrella) _____
6. (go / home) _____
7. (wear / a hat) _____
8. (ride / a bicycle) _____

UNIT 14

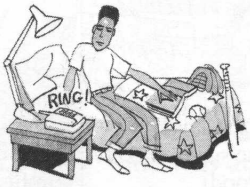
I was doing and *I did* (Past Continuous and Simple Past)

A

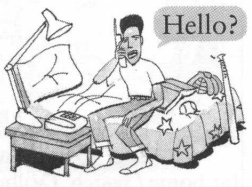
Eric **was reading** a book.



The phone **rang.**



He **stopped** reading.



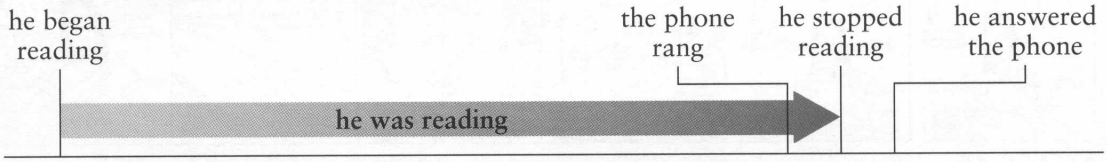
He **answered** the phone.

What **happened?** The phone **rang.** *(simple past)*

What **was** Eric **doing** when the phone rang?
He **was reading** a book. } *(past continuous)*

What **did** he **do** when the phone rang?
He **stopped** reading and **answered** the phone. } *(simple past)*

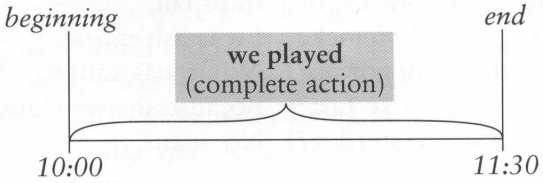
Eric began reading before the phone rang.
So *when* the phone rang, he **was reading.**



B

Simple past

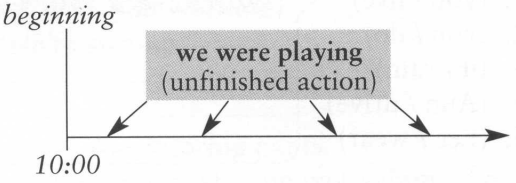
- *A:* What **did** you **do** yesterday morning?
  B: We **played** tennis. (from 10 to 11:30)



- Eric **read** a book yesterday. (= from beginning to end)
- **Did** you **watch** the movie on television last night?
- It **didn't rain** while we were on vacation.

Past continuous

- *A:* What **were** you **doing** at 10:30?
  B: We **were playing** tennis.



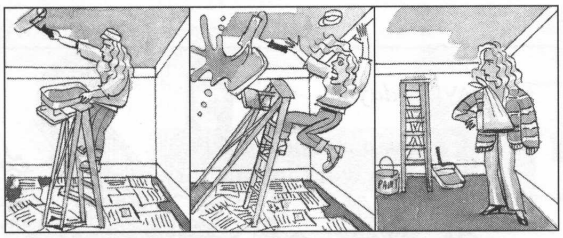
- Eric **was reading** a book when the phone rang.
- **Were** you **watching** television when I called you?
- It **wasn't raining** when I got up.

- I **started** work at 9 o'clock and **finished** at 4:30. At 2:30 I **was working.**
- It **was raining** when we **went** out. (= it started raining *before* we went out)
- I **saw** Lucy and Steve this morning. They **were waiting** at the bus stop.
- Mi Ja **fell** asleep while she **was reading.**

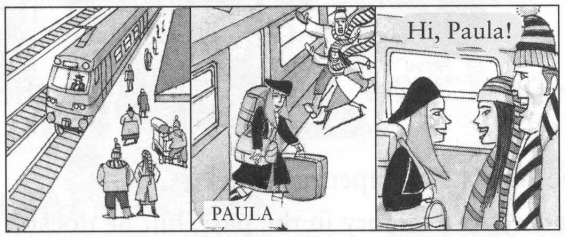
***I did* (Simple Past) Units 11–12 *I was doing* (Past Continuous) Unit 13 *While* Unit 100 *When* Unit 112**

Exercises

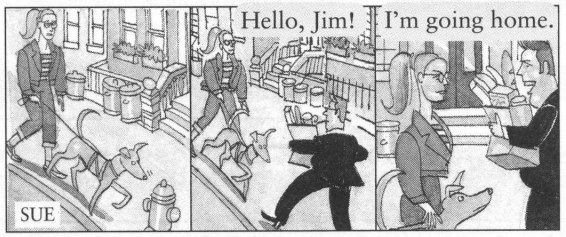
14.1 Look at the pictures. Put the verbs in the past continuous or simple past.

1. 

Linda *broke* (break) her arm last week. It _____ (happen) when she _____ (paint) her room. She _____ (fall) off the ladder.

2. 

The train _____ (arrive) at the station, and Paula _____ (get) off. Two friends of hers, John and Jenny, _____ (wait) to meet her.

3. 

Yesterday Sue _____ (walk) down the street when she _____ (meet) Jim. He _____ (go) home, and he _____ (carry) a bag. They _____ (stop) to talk for a few minutes.

14.2 Put the verb in the past continuous or simple past.

1. *A:* What *were you doing* (you / do) when the phone *rang* (ring)?
   B: I *was watching* (watch) television.
2. *A:* Was Tracy busy when you went to see her?
   B: Yes, she _____ (study).
3. *A:* What time _____ (the mail / come) this morning?
   B: It _____ (come) while I _____ (have) breakfast.
4. *A:* Was Megan at work today?
   B: No, she _____ (not / go) to work. She was sick.
5. *A:* How fast _____ (you / drive) when the police _____ (stop) you?
   B: I don't know exactly, but I _____ (not / drive) very fast.
6. *A:* _____ (your team / win) the baseball game yesterday?
   B: No, the weather was very bad, so we _____ (not / play).
7. *A:* How _____ (you / break) the window?
   B: We _____ (play) baseball. I _____ (hit) the ball, and it _____ (break) the window.
8. *A:* _____ (you / see) Judy last night?
   B: Yes, she _____ (wear) a long dress.
9. *A:* What _____ (you / do) at 2 o'clock this morning?
   B: I was asleep.
10. *A:* I _____ (lose) my key last night.
    B: How _____ (you / get) into your apartment?
    A: I _____ (climb) in through a window.

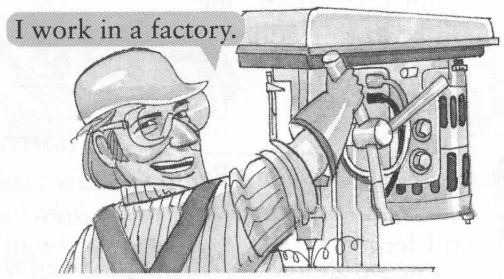
Additional Exercises 14–15 (pages 248–249)

UNIT 15

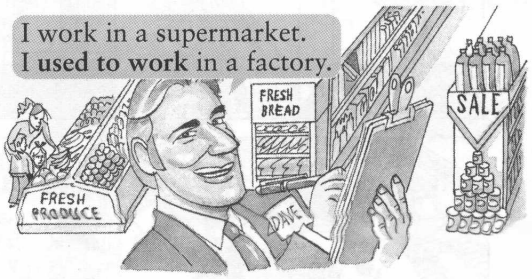
I used to . . .

A

DAVE *a few years ago*

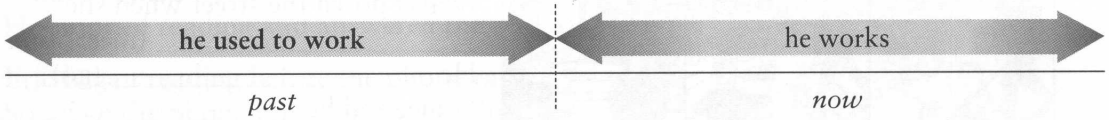


DAVE *today*



Dave **used to work** in a factory. Now he **works** in a supermarket.

Dave **used to work** in a factory = he worked in a factory in the past, but he doesn't work there now



B

You can say **I used to work . . . / she used to have . . . / they used to be . . .**, etc.

I/you/we/they he/she/it	**used to**	**be** **work** **have** **play** (etc.)

- When I was a child, I **used to like** chocolate.
- I **used to read** a lot of books, but I don't read much these days.
- Liz has short hair now, but it **used to be** very long.
- They **used to live** on the same block as us, so we **used to see** them often. But we don't see them very often these days.
- Amy **used to have** a piano, but she sold it when she moved.

The negative is **I didn't use to . . . .**

- When I was a child, I **didn't use to like** tomatoes.

The question is **did you use to . . . ?**

- Where **did** you **use to live** before you came here?

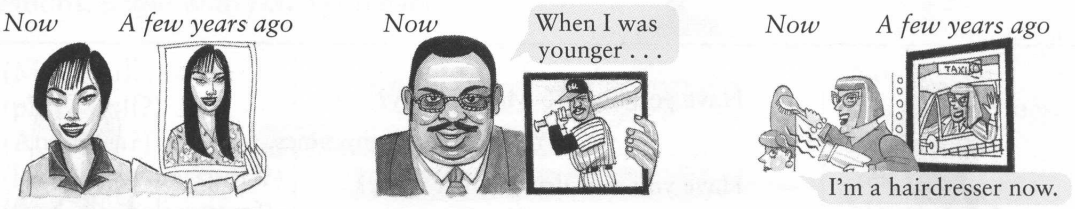
C

We use **used to . . .** only for the *past*. You cannot say "I use to . . ." *(present)*.

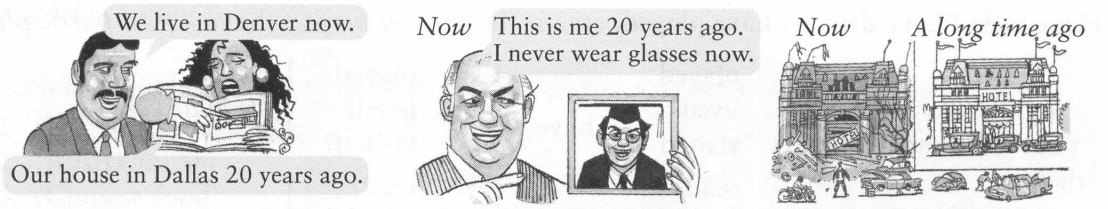
- I **used to play** tennis. These days I **play** golf. (*not* I use to play golf.)
- We **usually get up** early. (*not* We use to get up early.)

Exercises

15.1 Look at the pictures. Complete the sentences with *used to* . . . .



1. *She used to have long hair.*
2. He _____ _____ baseball.
3. _____ _____ a taxi driver.



4. _____ _____ in Dallas.
5. _____ _____
6. This building _____ _____ .

15.2 Karen works very hard and has very little free time. A few years ago, her life was different.

KAREN *a few years ago*

Do you play any sports?	Yes, I swim every day and I play volleyball.
Do you go out much?	Yes, three or four nights a week.
Do you play a musical instrument?	Yes, the guitar.
Do you like to read?	Yes, I read a lot.
Do you travel much?	Yes, I take two or three trips a year.

KAREN *now*

I work very hard at my job. I don't have any free time.

Write sentences about Karen with *used to* . . . .

1. *She used to swim every day.*
2. She _____ .
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____

15.3 Complete these sentences. Use *used to* or the simple present (*I play / he lives,* etc.).

1. I *used to play* _____ tennis. I stopped playing a few years ago.
2. "Do you play any sports?" "Yes, I *play* _____ basketball."
3. "Do you have a car?" "No, I _____ one, but I sold it."
4. Fu Chen _____ a waiter. Now he's the manager of a restaurant.
5. "Do you go to work by car?" "Sometimes, but usually I _____ by train."
6. When I was a child, I never _____ vegetables, but I eat them now.
7. Suree loves to watch TV. She _____ TV every night.
8. We _____ near the airport, but we moved to the city a few years ago.
9. Normally I start work at 7 o'clock, so I _____ up very early.
10. What games _____ you _____ when you were a child?

UNIT 16

Have you ever . . . ? (Present Perfect)

A

Have you been to Mexico City?

Yes, I have. Many times.

Have you ever driven a car there?

No, I've never driven in Mexico City.

Have been / have driven / have played, etc., is the *present perfect* (**have** + *past participle*).

I we you they	**have ('ve)** **have not (haven't)**	**played** **lived** **visited** **read**	**have**	I we you they	**played?** **lived?** **visited?** **read?**	*Regular verbs*
he she it	**has ('s)** **has not (hasn't)**	**lost** **been** **flown**	**has**	he she it	**lost?** **been?** **flown?**	*Irregular verbs*

Regular verbs: The past participle is **-ed** (the same as the simple past).

play → we **have played** live → I **have lived** visit → she **has visited**

Irregular verbs: The past participle is sometimes the same as the simple past.

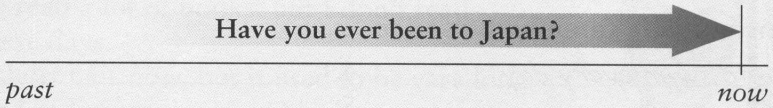
buy → I **bought** / I **have bought** have → he **had** / he **has had**

Sometimes it is different (see Appendixes 2–3).

break → I **broke** / I **have broken** see → you **saw** / you **have seen**

B

We use the present perfect when we talk about a time from the past until now, for example, a person's life.



- "**Have** you **been** to France?" (in your life) "No, I **haven't**."
- We've **been** to Canada, but we **haven't been** to Alaska.
- Mary **has had** many different jobs and **has lived** in many places.
- I've **seen** that woman before, but I can't remember where.
- How many times **has** Brazil **won** the World Cup?
- "**Have** you **read** this book?" "Yes, I've **read** it twice." (twice = two times)

C

Present perfect + **ever** (in *questions*) and **never**

- "**Has** Amy **ever been** to Australia?" "Yes, once." (once = one time)
- "**Have** you **ever played** golf?" "Yes, I play golf a lot."
- My mother **has never traveled** by plane.
- I've **never ridden** a horse.
- "Who is that man?" "I don't know. I've **never seen** him before."

Present Perfect and Simple Past Units 19–21 **Present Perfect** Units 17–18 **Irregular Verbs** Appendixes 2–3

Exercises

16.1 **You are asking Angela questions. Write the questions. Begin with *Have you ever . . . ?***

YOU

ANGELA

1. (Montreal?)	*Have you ever been to Montreal?*	No, never.
2. (play / golf?)	*Have you ever played golf?*	Yes, many times.
3. (Australia?)	Have _____ ?	No, never.
4. (lose / your passport?)	_____	Yes, once.
5. (fly / in a helicopter?)	_____	No, never.
6. (eat / Chinese food?)	_____	Yes, a few times.
7. (London?)	_____	Yes, twice.
8. (drive / a bus?)	_____	No, never.

16.2 **Look at Angela's answers in Exercise 16.1. Write sentences about Angela.**

1. (London) *Angela has been to London twice.*
2. (Australia) She _____ .
3. (Chinese food) _____
4. (drive / a bus) _____

Now write about yourself. How many times have you done these things?

5. (London) I _____ .
6. (play / tennis) _____
7. (fly / in a helicopter) _____

16.3 **Mary is 85 years old. She has had an interesting life. What has she done?**

MARY

be	meet
do	travel
~~have~~	write

all over the world	~~many different jobs~~
a lot of interesting people	married three times
a lot of interesting things	ten books

1. *She has had many different jobs.*
2. She _____ .
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____

16.4 **Put the verbs in the present perfect.**

1. *I've seen* (I / see) that woman before, but I can't remember where.
2. "*Have you ever played* (you / ever / play) golf?" "Yes, I play golf a lot."
3. "_____ (you / ever / write) a poem?" "Yes, in high school."
4. "Does Emma know Sam?" "No, _____ (she / never / meet) him."
5. Ann and Eli have lots of books, and _____ (they / read) all of them.
6. _____ (I / never / be) to Australia, but _____ (my brother / be) there twice.
7. Joy's favorite film is *Howard and Belinda.* _____ (she / see) it five times, but _____ (I / never / see) it.
8. _____ (I / travel) by plane, bus, and train. Someday, I want to take a trip by boat.

UNIT 17

How long have you . . . ?

A

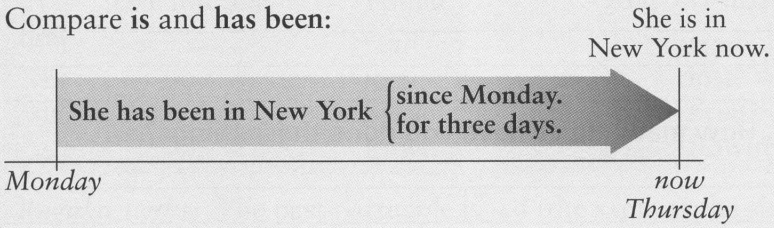
Susan is on vacation in New York.
She is there now.

She arrived in New York on Monday.
Today is Thursday.

How long **has she been** in New York?

She **has been** in New York { **since Monday.** / **for three days.**

Compare **is** and **has been:**



is = *present*

has been = *present perfect*

B

Compare:

Simple present	*Present perfect*
■ Dan and Kate **are** married.	■ They **have been** married **for** five years. (*not* They are married for five years.)
■ **Are** you married?	■ **How long have** you **been** married? (*not* How long are you married?)
■ **Do** you **know** Lynn?	■ **How long have** you **known** her? (*not* How long do you know her?)
■ I **know** Lynn.	■ **I've known** her **for** a long time. (*not* I know her for a long time.)
■ Vera **lives** in Brasilia.	■ **How long has** she **lived** in Brasilia? She **has lived** there **all her life.**
■ I **have** a car.	■ **How long have** you **had** your car? **I've had** it **since** April.

Present continuous	*Present perfect continuous*
■ **I'm studying** German.	■ **How long have** you **been studying** German? (*not* How long are you studying German?) **I've been studying** German **for** two years.
■ Bruce **is watching** TV.	■ **How long has** he **been watching** TV? **He's been watching** TV **since** 5 o'clock. (he's been = he has been)
■ It's **raining.**	■ **It's been raining all day.** (it's been = it has been)

For* and *since **Units 18, 99**

Exercises

17.1 Complete these sentences.

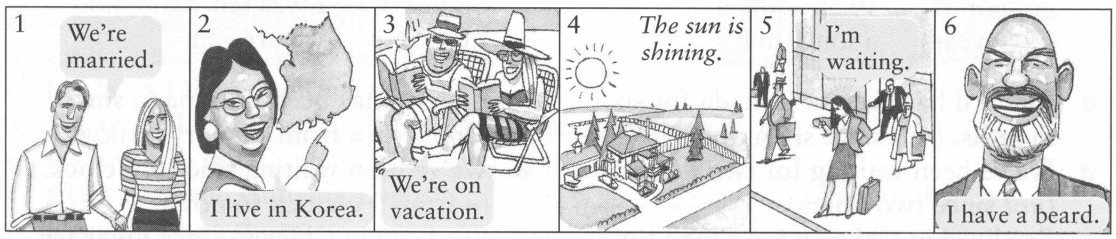
1. Susan is in New York. She *has been* there since Monday.
2. I know Isabel. I *have known* her for a long time.
3. Nancy and Seth are married. They _____ married since 1997.
4. Bill is sick. He _____ sick for the last few days.
5. We live on Main Street. We _____ there for ten years.
6. Chris works in a bank. She _____ in a bank for five years.
7. Andy has a headache. He _____ a headache since he got up this morning.
8. I'm studying English. I _____ English for six months.

17.2 Write questions with *How long . . . ?*

1. Susan is on vacation.
2. Seth and Nancy are in Canada.
3. I know Amy.
4. Diana is studying Italian.
5. My brother lives in Seattle.
6. I'm a teacher.
7. It is raining.

How long has she been on vacation?
How long _____ ?
How long _____ you _____ ?

17.3



Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with:

all day all her life for ten minutes ~~for ten years~~ since he was 20 since Sunday

1. *They have been married for ten years.*
2. She _____ .
3. They _____ .
4. The sun _____ .
5. She _____ .
6. He _____ .

17.4 Which is right?

1. Vinai ~~lives~~ / has lived in Canada since 1999. (*has lived* is right)
2. Ruth is a good friend of mine. I know / have known her very well.
3. Ruth is a good friend of mine. I know / have known her for a long time.
4. "Sorry I'm late. How long are you / have you been waiting?" "Only five minutes."
5. Ted works / has worked in a hotel now. He likes his job a lot.
6. Amy is reading the newspaper. She is / has been reading it for two hours.
7. "How long do you live / have you lived in this house?" "About ten years."
8. "Is that a new coat?" "No, I have / I've had this coat for a long time."
9. Ed is / has been in Seattle right now. He is / has been there for the last three days.

UNIT 18

For, since, and *ago*

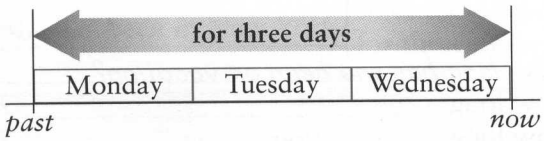
A

for and since

We use **for** and **since** to say *how long*.

- Rachel is in Brazil. She **has been** there { **for three days.** / **since Monday.**

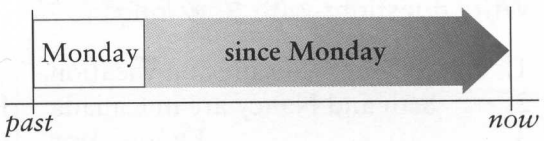
We use **for** + a period of time (**three days / two years,** etc.).



for	
three days	ten minutes
an hour	two hours
a week	four weeks
a month	six months
five years	a long time

- Richard has been in Canada **for six months.** (*not* since six months)
- We've been waiting **for two hours.** (*not* since two hours)
- I've lived in Chicago **for a long time.**

We use **since** + the start of the period (**Monday / 9 o'clock,** etc.).



since	
Monday	Wednesday
9 o'clock	12:30
July 4th	my birthday
January	I was ten years old
1995	we arrived

- Richard has been in Canada **since January.** (= from January to now)
- We've been waiting **since 9 o'clock.** (= from 9 o'clock to now)
- I've lived in Chicago **since I was ten years old.**

B

ago

ago = before now

- Ji Yoo started her new job **three weeks ago.** (= three weeks before now)
- "When did Tom go out?" "**Ten minutes ago.**" (= ten minutes before now)
- I had dinner **an hour ago.**
- Life was very different **a hundred years ago.**

We use **ago** with the *past* (**started/did/had/was,** etc.).

Compare **ago** and **for:**

- **When did** Rachel **arrive** in Brazil?
  She **arrived** in Brazil **three days ago.**
- **How long has** she **been** in Brazil?
  She **has been** in Brazil **for three days.**

Present Perfect + *for/since* Unit 17 ***From/until/since/for*** Unit 99 ***For* and *during*** Unit 100

Exercises

18.1 Write *for* or *since*.

1. Rachel has been in Brazil *since* Monday.
2. Rachel has been in Brazil *for* three days.
3. My aunt has lived in Australia _____ 15 years.
4. Jennifer is in her office. She has been there _____ 7 o'clock.
5. Mexico has been an independent country _____ 1821.
6. The bus is late. We've been waiting _____ 20 minutes.
7. Nobody lives in those houses. They have been empty _____ many years.
8. Luis has been sick _____ a long time. He has been in the hospital _____ October.

18.2 Answer these questions. Use *ago*.

1. When was your last meal? *Three hours ago.*
2. When was the last time you were sick? _____
3. When was the last time you went to the movies? _____
4. When was the last time you were in a car? _____
5. When was the last time you took a vacation? _____

18.3 Complete the sentences. Use the words in parentheses ( ) + *for* or *ago*.

1. Rachel arrived in Brazil *three days ago*. (three days)
2. Rachel has been in Brazil *for three days*. (three days)
3. Linda and Frank have been married _____. (20 years)
4. Linda and Frank got married _____. (20 years)
5. We arrived _____. (ten minutes)
6. It started to rain _____. (an hour)
7. Silvia has been studying English _____. (six months)
8. I bought these shoes _____. (a few days)

18.4 Complete the sentences with *for* or *since*.

1. Pam is in Cuba now. She arrived three days ago. *She has been there for three days.*
2. Carlos is here. He arrived here on Tuesday. He has _____.
3. It's raining. It started an hour ago. It's been _____.
4. I know Sue. I met her two years ago. I've _____.
5. I have a camera. I bought it in 1999. I've _____.
6. Liz is studying medicine at the university. She started three years ago. She has _____.
7. Toshi plays the piano. He started when he was seven years old. Toshi has _____.

18.5 Write sentences about yourself with *for* and *since*. Begin with the words in parentheses ( ).

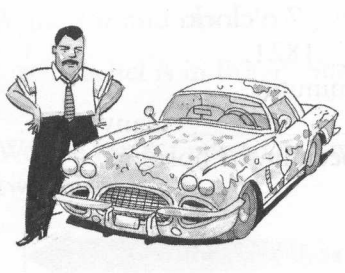
1. (I've lived) _____
2. (I've been) _____
3. (I've been studying) _____
4. (I've known) _____
5. (I've had) _____

Additional Exercise 17 (page 250)

UNIT 19

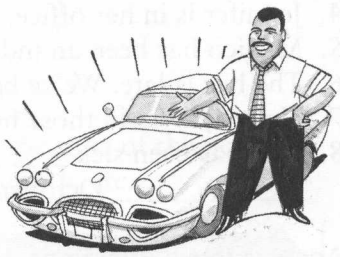
I have done and *I did* (Present Perfect and Simple Past 1)

A



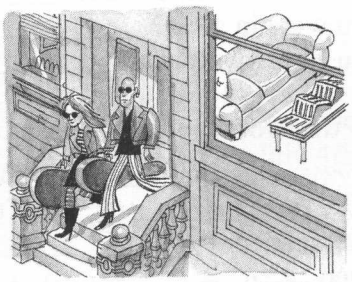
His car is dirty.

He is washing his car.

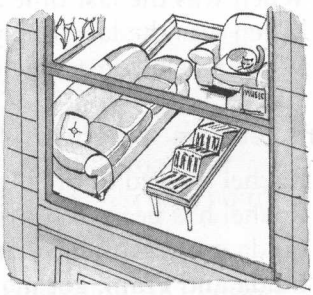


He **has washed** his car.
(= his car is clean *now*)

They are at home.



They are going out.



They **have gone** out.
(= they are not at home *now*)

B

We use the *present perfect* (he **has washed** / they **have gone**, etc.) for an action in the past with a result *now*.

- I**'ve lost** my passport. (= I can't find my passport *now*)
- "Where's Tiffany?" "She**'s gone** to bed." (= she is in bed *now*)
- We**'ve bought** a new car. (= we have a new car *now*)
- Rachel has a headache because she **hasn't taken** her medicine.
- "Bob is on vacation." "Oh, where **has** he **gone**?"
- **Have** you **met** my brother, or should I introduce you?
- I was a very slow typist in college, but I**'ve gotten** faster.

Usually you can also use the *simple past* (he **washed** / I **lost**, etc.) in these situations. So you can say:

- "Where's your key?" "I**'ve lost** it." *or* "I **lost** it."
- "Is Peter here?" "No, he**'s gone** home." *or* "He **went** home."
- We**'ve bought** a new car. *or* We **bought** a new car.

C

We use only the simple past (not the present perfect) with a *finished* time (**yesterday, last week,** etc.).

- I **lost** my key **yesterday**. (*not* I have lost)
- We **bought** a new car **last week**. (*not* we have bought)

Exercises

19.1 Look at the pictures. What has happened? Use the present perfect. Choose from:

close the door fall down go to bed stop raining take a shower ~~wash her car~~

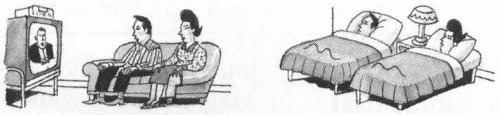
1. *before* → *now*

She has washed her car.

2. *before* → *now*

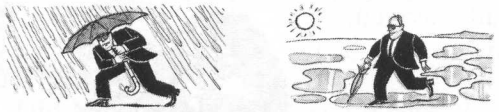
He _____.

3. *before* → *now*



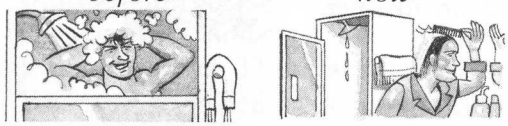
They _____.

4. *before* → *now*



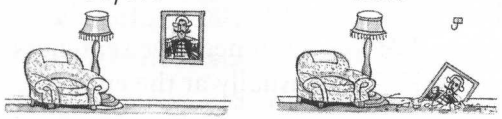
It _____.

5. *before* → *now*



He _____.

6. *before* → *now*



The _____.

19.2 Rewrite the sentences that have underlined verbs. Use the present perfect.

1. Lee Ming isn't here. He went home. *He has gone home.*
2. I don't need to call them. I wrote them a letter. _____
3. Karen's not coming to the party. She broke her arm. _____
4. My brother and his wife don't live here anymore. They moved to Seattle. _____
5. I made a big mistake. _____
6. I lost my wallet. _____
   Did you see it anywhere? _____
7. Did you hear? _____
   Mark got married! _____

Now rewrite these present perfect sentences in the simple past.

8. I've done the shopping. *I did the shopping.*
9. Brian has taken my bike again without asking. _____
10. Have you told your friends the good news? _____
11. We haven't paid the electric bill. _____

UNIT 20

Just, already, and *yet* (Present Perfect and Simple Past 2)

A

just (= a short time ago)

We use **just** with the *present perfect* or the *simple past.*

- *A:* Are Diane and Paul here?
  B: Yes, they'**ve just arrived.** *or* Yes, they **just arrived.**
- *A:* Are you hungry?
  B: No, I'**ve just had** dinner. *or* I **just had** dinner.
- *A:* Is Jiro here?
  B: Sorry, he'**s just left.** *or* Sorry, he **just left.**

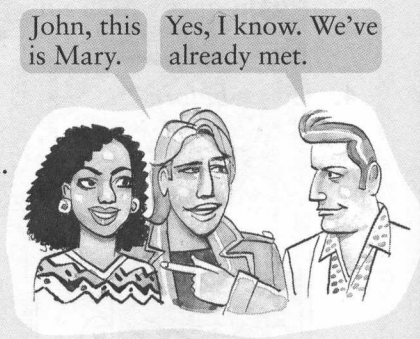
They **have just arrived.**

B

already (= before you expected / before I expected)

We use **already** with the present perfect or the simple past.

- *A:* What time are Diane and Paul coming?
  B: They'**ve already arrived.** *or* They **already arrived.**
- It's only nine o'clock, and Anne **has already gone** to bed. *or* . . . Anne **already went** to bed.
- *A:* John, this is Mary.
  B: Yes, I know. We'**ve already met.** *or* We **already met.**



C

yet (= until now)

We use **yet** with the present perfect or simple past. We use **yet** in negative sentences (I **haven't . . . yet**) and questions (**Have** you . . . **yet?**). **Yet** is usually at the end.

yet in *negative sentences*

- *A:* Are Diane and Paul here?
  B: No, they **haven't arrived yet.** *or* . . . they **didn't arrive yet.**
  (but *B* expects Diane and Paul to arrive soon)
- *A:* Does John know that you're going away?
  B: No, I **haven't told** him **yet.** *or* . . . I **didn't tell** him **yet.**
  (but *B* is going to tell him soon)
- Joy bought a new dress, but she **hasn't worn** it **yet.** *or* . . . she **didn't wear** it **yet.**

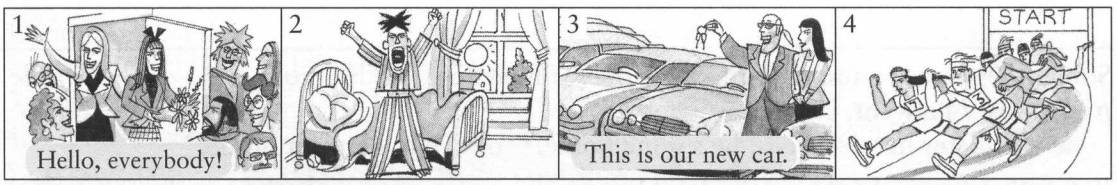
yet in *questions*

- *A:* **Have** Diane and Paul **arrived yet?** *or*
  Did Diane and Paul **arrive yet?**
  B: No, not yet. We're still waiting for them.
- *A:* **Has** Nicole **started** her new job **yet?** *or*
  Did Nicole **start** her new job **yet?**
  B: No, she's starting next week.
- *A:* This is my new dress.
  B: Oh, it's nice. **Have** you **worn** it **yet?** *or*
  Did you **wear** it **yet?**

Present Perfect Units 16–18 **Present Perfect and Simple Past** Units 19, 21

Exercises

20.1 Write a sentence for each picture. Use *just* and the present perfect.



1. *They've just arrived.*
2. He _____.
3. They _____.
4. The race _____.

20.2 Complete the sentences. Use *already* and the present perfect.

1. What time is Yong Jin arriving? *He's already arrived.*
2. Do Sue and Bill want to see the movie? No, they _____ it.
3. Don't forget to call Eric. I _____.
4. When is Mark going to work? He _____.
5. Do you want to read the newspaper? I _____.
6. When does Nicole start her new job? She _____.

20.3 Rewrite these sentences. Use the present perfect.

1. Did Nicole start her new job yet? *Has Nicole started her new job yet?*
2. Did you tell your father about the accident yet? _____
3. I just ate a big dinner, so I'm not hungry. _____
4. Jenny can watch TV because she already did her homework. _____
5. You can't go to bed – you didn't brush your teeth yet. _____
6. You can't talk to Pete because he just went home. _____
7. Sarah just got out of the hospital, so she can't go to work. _____

Now rewrite these sentences in the simple past.

8. Have you given the mailman our new address yet?
   Did you give the mailman our new address yet?
9. The mailman hasn't come yet. _____
10. I've just spoken to your sister. _____
11. Has Mario bought a new computer yet? _____
12. Ted and Alice haven't told anyone they're getting married yet.
    _____
13. We've already done our packing for our trip. _____
14. I've just been to the gym. I feel great! _____

20.4 Write questions with the present perfect and *yet*.

1. Your friend has gotten a new job. Perhaps she has started it. You ask her,
   Have you started your new job yet _____?
2. Your friend has some new neighbors. Maybe he has met them. You ask him,
   _____ you _____?
3. Your friend has to write a letter. Perhaps she has written it now. You ask her,
   _____?
4. Jiro was trying to sell his car. Maybe he has sold it now. You ask a friend about Jiro.
   _____?

UNIT 21

I've lost my key. I lost my key last week. (Present Perfect and Simple Past 3)

A

Sometimes you can use the *present perfect* (I **have lost** / he **has gone**, etc.) *or* the *simple past* (I **lost** / he **went**, etc.).

- "Is Peter here?" "No, he's **gone** home." *or* "No, he **went** home."

But with a finished time (**yesterday / last week,** etc.), we use only the simple past (not the present perfect).

Simple past + finished time

We **arrived**	yesterday. last week. at 3 o'clock. in 1991. six months ago.

Do not use the present perfect with a finished time.

- I **saw** Ratana **yesterday**. (*not* I have seen)
- Where **were** you **on Sunday afternoon**? (*not* Where have you been)
- We **didn't take** a vacation **last year**. (*not* We haven't taken)
- "What **did** you **do last night**?" "I **stayed** at home."
- William Shakespeare **lived from 1564 to 1616**. He **was** a writer. He **wrote** many plays and poems.

Use the simple past to ask **When . . . ?** or **What time . . . ?**.

- **When did** they **arrive**? (*not* When have they arrived?)

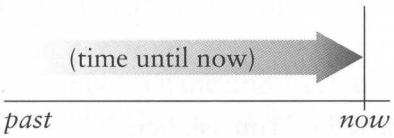
B

Compare:

Present perfect or simple past

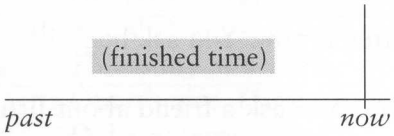
- I **have lost** my key. *or* I **lost** my key. (= I can't find it *now*)
- Bill **has gone** home. *or* Bill **went** home. (= he isn't here *now*)
- **Have** you **had** lunch? *or* **Did** you **have** lunch?
- The letter **hasn't arrived** yet. *or* The letter **didn't arrive** yet.

Present perfect only



- **Have** you **ever been** to Spain? (= in your life, until *now*)
- My friend is a writer. He **has written** many books.
- We**'ve lived** in Boston for six years. (= we live there *now*)

Simple past only



- **Did** you **go** to Spain **last year**?
- Shakespeare **wrote** many plays and poems.
- We **lived** in Chicago for ten years, but now we live in Boston.

Exercises

21.1 Use the words in parentheses ( ) to answer the questions.

1. (an hour ago)	Have you had lunch?	*Yes, I had it an hour ago.*
2. (last week)	Have you started your new job?	Yes, I _____ last week.
3. (on Friday)	Have your friends arrived?	Yes, they _____ .
4. (at 5 o'clock)	Has Sarah gone out?	Yes, _____ .
5. (yesterday)	Have you worn your new suit?	Yes, _____ .

21.2 Right or wrong? Correct the underlined parts that are wrong.

1. I've lost my key. I can't find it. *RIGHT*
2. Have you seen Anne yesterday? *WRONG Did you see*
3. I've finished my work at two o'clock. _____
4. I'm ready now. I've finished my work. _____
5. What time have you finished your work? _____
6. Gloria isn't here. She's gone out. _____
7. Jim's grandmother has died last night. _____
8. Where have you been in 1998? _____

21.3 Put the verb in the present perfect or simple past.

1. My friend is a writer. He *has written* many books. (write)
2. We *didn't take* a vacation last year. (not / take)
3. I _____ tennis yesterday afternoon. (play)
4. What time _____ to bed last night? (you / go)
5. Kathy travels a lot. She _____ many countries. (visit)
6. I live in New York now, but I _____ in Mexico for many years. (live)
7. The weather _____ very good yesterday. (not / be)
8. Sonia is an actress now. She _____ in several plays. (be)
9. I _____ my hair before breakfast this morning. (wash)

21.4 Put the verb in the present perfect or simple past.

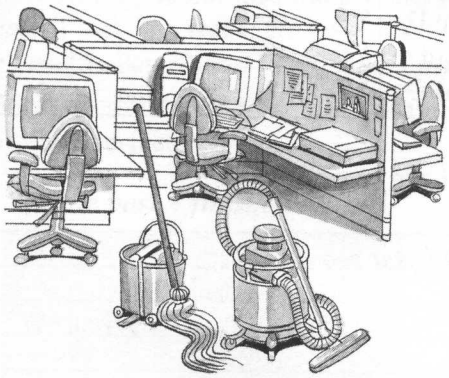
1. *A:* *Have you ever been* (you / ever / be) to Florida? *B:* Yes, we *went* (go) there on vacation two years ago. *A:* _____ (you / have) a good time? *B:* Yes, it _____ (be) great.	2. *A:* What does your friend do? *B:* She's a painter. She _____ (win) many prizes for her paintings. *A:* _____ (you / see) any of her paintings? *B:* Yes, _____ (I / see) some of her work last week.
3. Rose works in a factory now, but she _____ (have) a lot of different jobs. Five years ago, she _____ (be) a waitress in a restaurant. After that, she _____ (work) on a ranch, but she _____ (not / enjoy) it very much.	4. *A:* Do you know Mark's sister? *B:* I _____ (see) her a few times but I _____ (never / speak) to her. _____ (you / ever / speak) to her? *A:* Yes, I _____ (meet) her at a party last week. She's very nice.

Additional Exercises 19–23 (pages 251–253)

UNIT 22

Is done and *was done* (Passive 1)

A



The office **is cleaned** every day.

The office **was cleaned** yesterday.

Compare *active* and *passive:*

Somebody **cleans** the office every day. *(active)*

The office **is cleaned** every day. *(passive)*

Somebody **cleaned** the office yesterday. *(active)*

The office **was cleaned** yesterday. *(passive)*

B

The passive is:

			Past participle	
Simple present	**am/is/are**	(not)	**cleaned**	**done**
Simple past	**was/were**		**invented**	**built**
			injured	**taken,** etc.

The *past participle* of regular verbs is **-ed** (**cleaned/damaged,** etc.).
For a list of irregular past participles (**done/built/taken,** etc.), see Appendixes 2–3.

- Butter **is made** from cream.
- Oranges **are imported** into Canada.
- How often **are** these rooms **cleaned**?
- I **am** never **invited** to parties.
- This house **was built** 100 years ago.
- These houses **were built** 100 years ago.
- When **was** the telephone **invented**?
- We **weren't invited** to the party last week.
- "**Was** anybody **injured** in the accident?" "Yes, two people **were taken** to the hospital."

C

was/were born

- I **was born** in Los Angeles in 1981. (*not* I am born)
- Where **were** you **born**?

D

Passive + **by . . .**

- We were woken up **by a loud noise.** (= The noise woke us up.)
- The telephone was invented **by Alexander Graham Bell** in 1876.
- My brother was bitten **by a dog** last week.

Is being done / has been done **Unit 23** **Irregular Verbs** **Unit 25, Appendixes 2–3**
By **Unit 106** **Active and Passive** **Appendix 1**

Exercises

22.1 Write sentences with the words in parentheses ( ). Sentences 1–7 are present.

1. (the office / clean / every day) *The office is cleaned every day.*
2. (these rooms / clean / every day?) *Are these rooms cleaned every day?*
3. (glass / make / from sand) Glass _____.
4. (stamps / sell / in a post office) _____
5. (this word / not / use / very often) _____
6. (we / allow / to park here?) _____
7. (how / this word / pronounce?) _____

Sentences 8–14 are past.

8. (the office / clean / yesterday) *The office was cleaned yesterday.*
9. (the house / paint / last month) The house _____.
10. (three people / injure / in the accident) _____
11. (my bicycle / steal / a few days ago) _____
12. (when / this bridge / build?) _____
13. (you / invite / to the party last week?) _____
14. (I / not / wake up / by the noise) _____

22.2 Correct these sentences.

1. This house built 100 years ago. *This house was built 100 years ago.*
2. Soccer plays in most countries of the world. _____
3. Why did the letter send to the wrong address? _____
4. A garage is a place where cars repair. _____
5. Where are you born? _____
6. How many languages are speaking in Canada? _____
7. Somebody broke into our house, but nothing stolen. _____
8. When was invented the bicycle? _____

22.3 Complete the sentences. Use the passive (present or past) of these verbs:

~~clean~~ **damage find give invite make make show steal** ~~take~~

1. The room *is cleaned* every day.
2. I saw an accident yesterday. Two people *were taken* to the hospital.
3. Paper _____ from wood.
4. There was a fire at the hotel last week. Two of the rooms _____.
5. "Where did you get this picture?" "It _____ to me by a friend of mine."
6. Many British programs _____ on American television.
7. "Did Jim and Sue go to the wedding?" "No. They _____, but they didn't go."
8. "How old is this movie?" "It _____ in 1965."
9. My car _____ last week, but the next day it _____ by the police.

22.4 Where were they born?

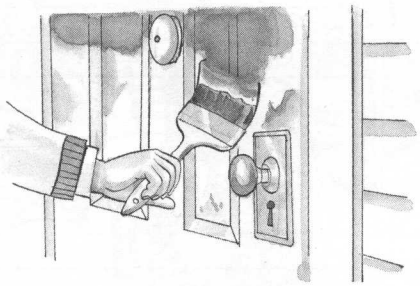
1. (Makoto / Kyoto) *Makoto was born in Kyoto.*
2. (Isabel / São Paulo) Isabel _____.
3. (her parents / Rio de Janeiro) Her _____.
4. (you / ???) I _____.
5. (your mother / ???) _____

UNIT 23

Is being done and *has been done* (Passive 2)

A

is/are being . . . *(present continuous passive)*



Somebody **is painting** the door . *(active)*

The door **is being painted.** *(passive)*

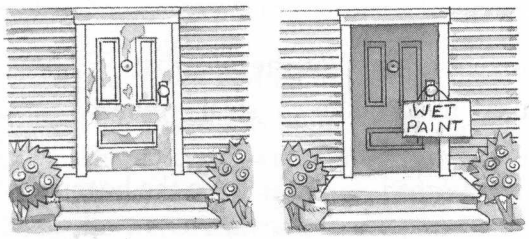
- I took the bus this morning. My car **is being repaired.** (= somebody is repairing it)
- Some new houses **are being built** across from the park. (= somebody is building them)

Compare the *present continuous* and *simple present:*

- The office **is being cleaned** right now. *(present continuous)*
  The office **is cleaned** every day. *(simple present)*
- In the U.S., football games **are** usually **shown** on TV on Mondays, but no games **are being shown** next Monday.

B

has/have been . . . *(present perfect passive)*



before *now*

Somebody **has painted** the door . *(active)*

The door **has been painted.** *(passive)*

- My key **has been stolen.** (= somebody has stolen it)
- My keys **have been stolen.** (= somebody has stolen them)
- I'm not going to the party. I **haven't been invited.** (= nobody has invited me)
- **Has** this window **been washed?** (= Has somebody washed it?)

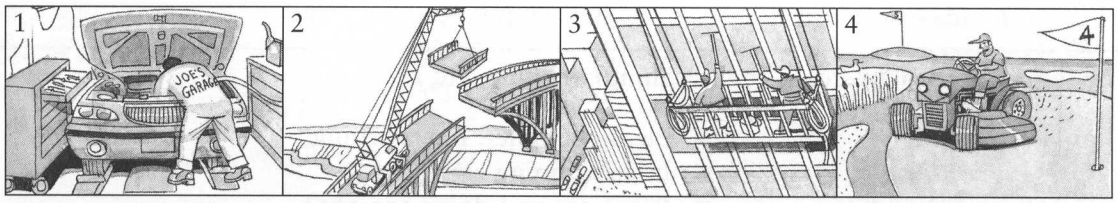
Compare the *present perfect* and *simple past:*

- The room is clean now. It **has been cleaned.** *(present perfect)*
  The room **was cleaned** yesterday. *(simple past)*
- I can't find my keys. I think they've **been stolen.** *(present perfect)*
  My keys **were stolen** last week. *(simple past)*

Present Continuous and Simple Present Units 8, 26 **Present Perfect and Simple Past** Unit 21
Is done / was done Unit 18 **Active and Passive** Appendix 1

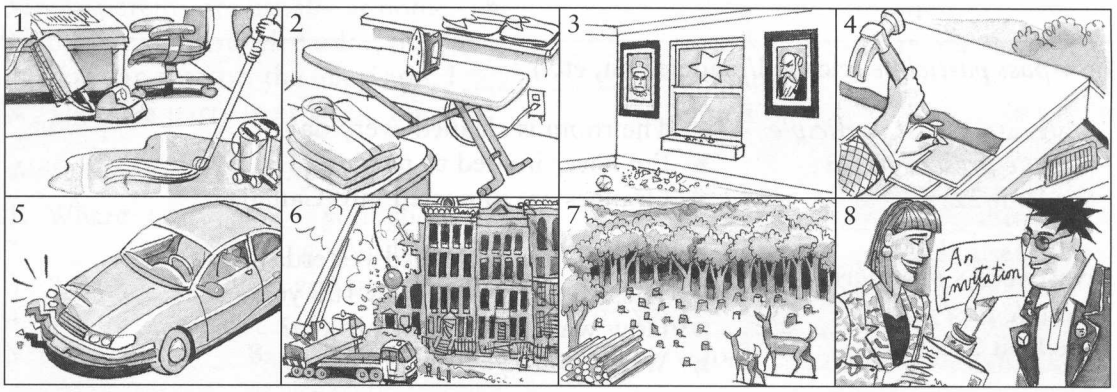
Exercises

23.1 What's happening?



1. The car *is being repaired* .
2. A bridge _____ .
3. The windows _____ .
4. The grass _____ .

23.2 Look at the pictures. What is happening or what has happened? Use the present continuous *(is/are being . . .)* or the present perfect *(has/have been . . .).*



1. (the office / clean) *The office is being cleaned.*
2. (the shirts / iron) *The shirts have been ironed.*
3. (the window / break) The window _____ .
4. (the roof / repair) The roof _____ .
5. (the car / damage) _____
6. (the buildings / knock / down) _____
7. (the trees / cut / down) _____
8. (they / invite / to a party) _____

23.3 Use the words in parentheses ( ) to complete the sentences. (Study Unit 22 first.)

1. I can't use my office right now. It *is being painted* . (paint)
2. We didn't go to the party. We *weren't invited* . (not / invite)
3. The washing machine was broken, but it's OK now.
   It _____ . (repair)
4. The washing machine _____ yesterday afternoon. (repair)
5. A factory is a place where things _____ . (make)
6. How old are these houses? When _____ ? (they / build)
7. *A:* _____ right now? (the computer / use)
   B: Yes, Jim is using it.
8. I've never seen these flowers before. What _____ ? (they / call)
9. My sunglasses _____ at the beach yesterday. (steal)
10. The bridge is closed. It _____ last week and it
    _____ yet. (damage) (not / repair)

UNIT 24

Be, have, and *do* in Present and Past Tenses

A

be (am/is/are/was/were) + -ing (cleaning/working, etc.)

am/is/are + -ing
(present continuous)
See Units 3–4 and 26.

- Please be quiet. I'**m working.**
- It **isn't raining** right now.
- What **are** you **doing** tonight?

was/were + -ing
(past continuous)
See Unit 13.

- I **was working** when she arrived.
- It **wasn't raining,** so we went out.
- What **were** you **doing** at three o'clock?

B

be + *past participle* (cleaned/made/eaten, etc.)

am/is/are + *past participle*
(simple present passive)
See Unit 22.

- The room **is cleaned** every day.
- I'**m** never **invited** to parties.
- Oranges **are imported** into Canada.

was/were + *past participle*
(simple past passive)
See Unit 22.

- The room **was cleaned** yesterday.
- These houses **were built** 100 years ago.
- How **was** the window **broken**?
- Where **were** you **born**?

C

have/has + *past participle* (cleaned/lost/eaten/been, etc.)

have/has + *past participle*
(present perfect)
See Units 16–17, 19–21.

- I'**ve lived** in this house for ten years.
- Tom **has never ridden** a horse.
- Barbara **hasn't been** to South America.
- Where **have** Paul and Nicole **gone**?

D

do/does/did + *base form* (clean/like/eat/go, etc.)

do/does + *base form*
(simple present negative and questions)
See Units 6–7.

- I like coffee, but I **don't like** tea.
- Chris **doesn't go** out very often.
- What **do** you usually **do** on weekends?
- **Does** Barbara **live** alone?

did + *base form*
(simple past negative and questions)
See Unit 12.

- I **didn't watch** TV yesterday.
- It **didn't rain** last week.
- What time **did** Paul and Nicole **go** out?

Irregular Verbs Unit 25, Appendixes 2–3

Exercises

24.1 Write *is/are/do/does*.

1. *Do* you work on weekends?
2. Where *are* they going?
3. Why _____ you looking at me?
4. _____ Bill live near you?
5. _____ you like to cook?
6. _____ the sun shining?
7. What time _____ the stores close?
8. _____ Ratana working today?
9. What _____ this word mean?
10. _____ you feeling all right?

24.2 Write *am not / isn't / aren't / don't / doesn't*. All these sentences are negative.

1. Tom *doesn't* work on weekends.
2. I'm very tired. I _____ want to go out tonight.
3. I'm very tired. I _____ going out tonight.
4. Eric _____ working this week. He's on vacation.
5. My parents are usually at home. They _____ go out very often.
6. Barbara has traveled a lot, but she _____ speak any foreign languages.
7. You can turn off the television. I _____ watching it.
8. There's a party next week, but we _____ going.

24.3 Write *was/were/did/have/has*.

1. Where *were* your shoes made?
2. _____ you go out last night?
3. What _____ you doing at 10:30?
4. Where _____ your mother born?
5. _____ Barbara gone home?
6. What time _____ she go?
7. When _____ these houses built?
8. _____ Sanun arrived yet?
9. Why _____ you go home early?
10. How long _____ they been married?

24.4 Write *is/are/was/were/have/has*.

1. Joe *has* never ridden a horse.
2. This bridge _____ built ten years ago.
3. _____ you finished your work yet?
4. This town is always clean. The streets _____ cleaned every day.
5. Where _____ you born?
6. I _____ just made some coffee. Would you like some?
7. Glass _____ made from sand.
8. This is a very old photograph. It _____ taken a long time ago.
9. Joe _____ bought a new car.

24.5 Complete the sentences. Choose verbs from the list. Use the correct forms.

damage	enjoy	go away	open	~~rain~~	use
eat	~~go~~	listen	pronounce	understand	

1. I'm going to take an umbrella with me. It's *raining*.
2. Why are you so tired? Did you *go* to bed late last night?
3. Where are the chocolates? Have you _____ them all?
4. How is your new job? Are you _____ it?
5. My car was badly _____ in the accident, but I was OK.
6. Chris has a car but she doesn't _____ it very often.
7. Mary isn't at home. She has _____ for a few days.
8. I don't _____ the problem. Can you explain it again?
9. Mark is in his room. He's _____ to music.
10. I don't know how to say this word. How is it _____ ?
11. How do you _____ this window? Can you show me?

UNIT 25

Regular and Irregular Verbs

A

Regular verbs

The *simple past* and *past participle* of regular verbs is **-ed.**
clean → cleaned live → lived paint → painted study → studied

Simple past (see Unit 11)

- I **cleaned** my room yesterday.
- Charlie **studied** engineering in college.

Past participle

Present perfect = **have/has** + *past participle* (see Units 16–17, 19–21)

- I **have cleaned** my room.
- Tracy **has lived** in Miami for ten years.

Passive = **be** (**is / are / were / has been,** etc.) + *past participle* (see Units 22–23)

- These rooms **are cleaned** every day.
- My car **has been repaired.**

B

Irregular verbs

The simple past and past participle of irregular verbs are not **-ed.** For example:

Base form	make	break	cut
Simple past	**made**	**broke**	**cut**
Past participle	**made**	**broken**	**cut**

Sometimes the simple past and past participle are the same. For example:

Base form	make	find	buy	cut
Simple past / *Past participle*	**made**	**found**	**bought**	**cut**

- I **made** a cake yesterday. (simple past)
- I've just **made** some coffee. (past participle in the present perfect)
- Butter **is made** from cream. (past participle in the passive)

Sometimes the simple past and past participle are different. For example:

Base form	break	know	begin	go
Simple past	**broke**	**knew**	**began**	**went**
Past participle	**broken**	**known**	**begun**	**gone**

- Somebody **broke** this window last night. (simple past)
- Somebody **has broken** this window. (past participle in the present perfect)
- This window **was broken** last night. (past participle in the passive)

Irregular Verbs Appendixes 2–3 **Spelling of Regular Verbs** Appendix 5

Exercises

25.1 Write the simple past / past participle of these verbs. (The simple past and past participle are the same for all the verbs in this exercise.)

1. make *made*
2. cut *cut*
3. say _____
4. bring _____
5. pay _____
6. enjoy _____
7. buy _____
8. sit _____
9. leave _____
10. happen _____
11. hear _____
12. put _____
13. catch _____
14. watch _____
15. understand _____

25.2 Write the simple past and past participle of these verbs.

1. break *broke* *broken*
2. begin _____ _____
3. eat _____ _____
4. drink _____ _____
5. drive _____ _____
6. run _____ _____
7. speak _____ _____
8. write _____ _____
9. come _____ _____
10. know _____ _____
11. take _____ _____
12. go _____ _____
13. give _____ _____
14. throw _____ _____
15. get _____ _____

25.3 Put the verb in the right form.

1. I *washed* my hands because they were dirty. (wash)
2. Somebody has *broken* this window. (break)
3. I feel good. I _____ very well last night. (sleep)
4. We _____ a really good movie yesterday. (see)
5. It _____ a lot while we were on vacation. (rain)
6. I've _____ my bag. (lose) Have you _____ it? (see)
7. Rosa's bicycle was _____ last week. (steal)
8. I _____ to bed early because I was tired. (go)
9. Have you _____ your work yet? (finish)
10. The shopping mall was _____ about 20 years ago. (build)
11. Annie _____ to drive when she was 16. (learn)
12. I've never _____ a horse. (ride)
13. Julia is a good friend of mine. I've _____ her for a long time. (know)
14. Yesterday I _____ and _____ my leg. (fall / hurt)

25.4 Complete these sentences. Choose from the list and put the verb in the correct form.

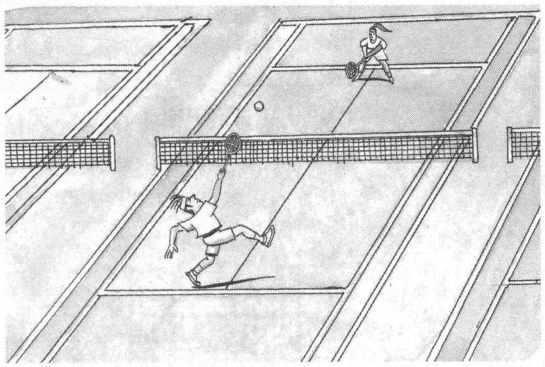
cost drive fly ~~make~~ meet sell speak swim tell think wake up

1. I've just *made* some coffee. Would you like some?
2. Have you _____ John about your new job?
3. I know Aldo, but I've never _____ his wife.
4. We were _____ by loud music in the middle of the night.
5. Stephanie jumped into the river and _____ to the other side.
6. "Did you like the movie?" "Yes, I _____ it was very good."
7. Many different languages are _____ in Guatemala.
8. Our vacation _____ a lot of money because we stayed at an expensive hotel.
9. Have you ever _____ a very fast car?
10. All the tickets for the concert were _____ very quickly.
11. A bird _____ in through the open window while we were eating dinner.

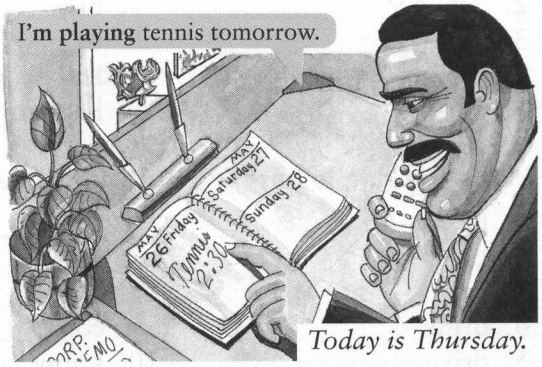
UNIT 26

What are you doing tomorrow?

A



They **are playing** tennis (**now**).



He **is playing** tennis **tomorrow**.

We use **am/is/are + -ing** *(present continuous)* for something happening now.

- "Where are Sue and Amanda?" "They**'re playing** tennis in the park."
- Please be quiet. **I'm working.**

We also use **am/is/are + -ing** for the *future* (tomorrow / next week, etc.).

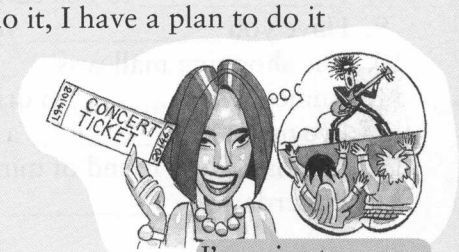
- Andrew **is playing** tennis tomorrow.
- **I'm not working** next week.

B

I **am doing** something tomorrow = I have arranged to do it, I have a plan to do it

- Blanca **is going** to the dentist on Friday.
  (= she has an appointment with the dentist)
- We**'re having** a party next weekend.
- **Are** you **meeting** Bill at the movies tonight?
- What **are** you **doing** tomorrow night?
- **I'm not going** out tonight. **I'm staying** at home.

You can also say, "I'**m going to** do something." (see Unit 27)



I'm going to a concert tomorrow.

C

Do not use the *simple present* (**I stay / Do you go . . . ?**, etc.) for plans and arrangements.

- **I'm staying** at home tonight. (*not* I stay)
- **Are** you **going** out tonight? (*not* Do you go)
- Anne **isn't coming** to the party next week. (*not* Anne doesn't come)

But use the simple present for schedules (buses, movies, classes, etc.).

- The plane **arrives** in New York at 7:30 tomorrow morning.
- What time **does** the movie **end** tonight?

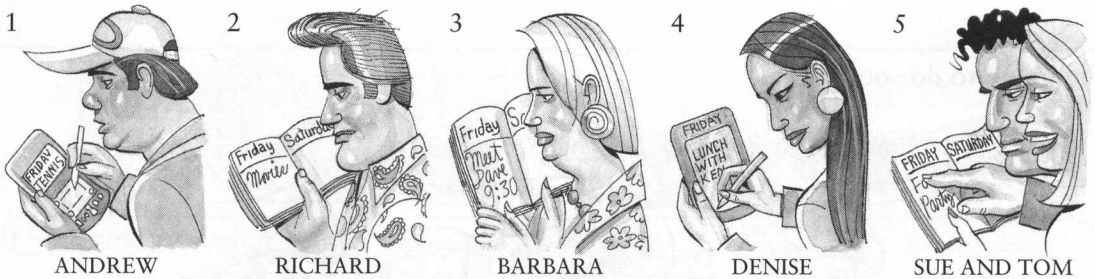
Compare:

Present continuous (usually for people)	*Simple present* (for schedules)
■ **I'm going** to a concert tomorrow.	■ The concert **starts** at 7:30.
■ What time **are** you **leaving?**	■ What time **does** your plane **leave?**

Present Continuous Units 3–4 **Simple Present** Units 5–7 ***I'm going to . . .*** Unit 27

Exercises

26.1 Look at the pictures. What are these people doing next Friday?



ANDREW RICHARD BARBARA DENISE SUE AND TOM

1. *Andrew is playing tennis on Friday.*
2. Richard _____ to the movies.
3. Barbara _____ .
4. _____ lunch with Ken.
5. _____

26.2 Write questions. All the sentences are future.

1. (you / go / out / tonight?) *Are you going out tonight?*
2. (you / work / next week?) _____
3. (what / you / do / tomorrow night?) _____
4. (what time / your friends / come?) _____
5. (when / Liz / go / on vacation?) _____

26.3 Write sentences about yourself. What are you doing in the next few days?

1. *I'm staying at home tonight.*
2. *I'm going to the theater on Monday.*
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____

26.4 Put the verb in the present continuous (*he is leaving*, etc.) or simple present (*the train leaves*, etc.).

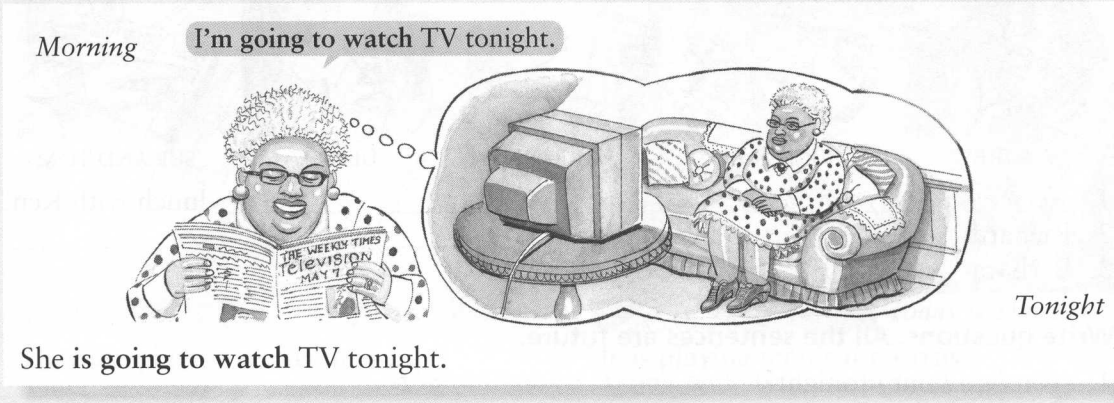
1. "*Are you going* _____ out tonight?" (you / go) "No, I'm too tired."
2. *We're going* _____ to a concert tonight. (we / go) *It starts* _____ at 7:30. (it / start)
3. Listen to this! _____ married next month! (Karen / get)
4. *A:* My parents _____ on vacation soon. (go)
   B: Oh, that's nice. Where _____ ? (they / go)
5. Silvia is taking an English course this semester. The course _____ on Friday. (end)
6. There's a football game tomorrow, but _____ . (I / not / go)
7. _____ out with some friends tonight. (I / go) Why don't you come too? _____ at John's house at 8 o'clock. (we / meet)
8. *A:* How _____ home after the party tomorrow? (you / get) By taxi?
   B: No, I can take the bus. The last bus _____ at midnight. (leave)
9. *A:* Do you want to go to the movies tonight?
   B: Yes, what time _____ ? (the movie / begin)
10. *A:* What _____ next Monday afternoon? (you / do)
    B: _____ (I / work)

UNIT 27

I'm going to . . .

A

I'm **going to do** something.



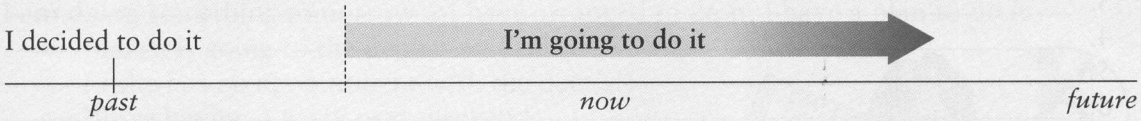
She **is going to watch** TV tonight.

We use **am/is/are + going to . . .** for the *future*.

I **am**		do	**am** I		buy . . . ?
he/she/it **is**	**(not) going to**	drink	**is** he/she/it	**going to**	eat . . . ?
we/you/they **are**		watch	**are** we/you/they		wear . . . ?

B

I am going to do something = I have decided to do it, my intention is to do it



- **I'm going to buy** some books tomorrow.
- Sarah **is going to sell** her car.
- **I'm not going to have** breakfast this morning. I'm not hungry.
- What **are you going to wear** to the party tonight?
- "Your hands are dirty." "Yes, I know. **I'm going to wash** them."
- **Are** you **going to invite** Min Fang to your party?

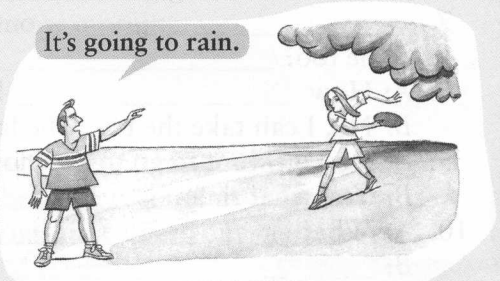
We also use the *present continuous* (**I am doing**) for the future, usually for arrangements (see Unit 26).

- I **am playing** tennis with Julia tomorrow.

C

Something **is going to happen** = it is clear now that it is sure to happen

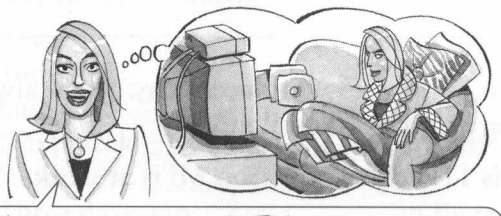
- Look at the sky! It's **going to rain**.
  (black clouds now → rain)
- It's 9 o'clock and I'm not ready.
  I'm **going to be** late.
  (9 o'clock now and not ready → late)



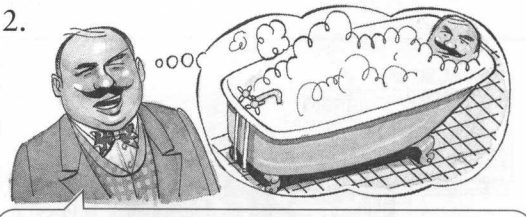
Present for the Future Unit 26 ***Will*** Units 28–29

Exercises

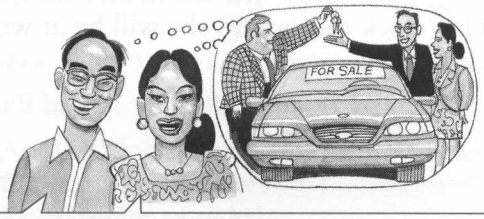
27.1 What are these people saying?

1. 

I *'m going to watch TV* .

2. 

I _____ .

3. 

We _____ .

4.

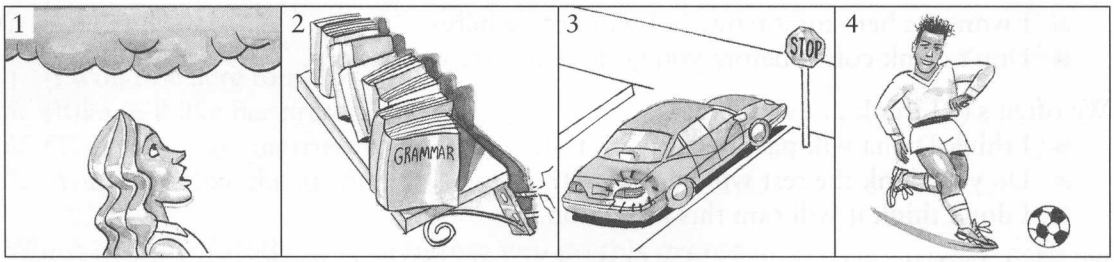
I _____ .

27.2 Complete the sentences. Use *am/is/are + going to* + one of these verbs:

do eat give lie down visit walk ~~wash~~ watch ~~wear~~

1. My hands are dirty. I *'m going to wash* them.
2. What *are you going to wear* to the party tonight?
3. It's a nice day. I don't want to take the bus. I _____ .
4. John is going to Seattle next week. He _____ some friends.
5. I'm hungry. I _____ a sandwich.
6. It's Sharon's birthday next week. We _____ her a present.
7. Maria says she's feeling very tired. She _____ for an hour.
8. There's a good program on Channel 13 at 9:00 tonight. _____ you _____ it?
9. What _____ Rachel _____ when she finishes school?

27.3 Look at the pictures. What is going to happen?



1. *It's going to rain.*
2. The shelf _____ .
3. The car _____ right.
4. He _____ the ball.

27.4 What are you going to do today or tomorrow? Write three sentences.

1. I'm _____ .
2. _____
3. _____

UNIT 28

Will (1)

A

SOO MI

Soo Mi goes to work every day. She is always there from 8:30 until 4:30.

It is 11 o'clock now. Soo Mi **is** at work.

At 11 o'clock yesterday, she **was** at work.

At 11 o'clock tomorrow, she **will be** at work.

will + *base form* (**will be / will win / will come,** etc.)

I/we/you/they he/she/it	**will ('ll)** **will not (won't)**	**be** **win** **eat** **come,** etc.

will	I/we/you/they he/she/it	**be?** **win?** **eat?** **come?,** etc.

'll = will: I'll (I will) / you'll / she'll, etc.
won't = will not: I **won't** (I will not) / you **won't** / she **won't,** etc.

B

We use **will** for the *future* (tomorrow / next week, etc.).

- Sue travels a lot. Today she is in Los Angeles. Tomorrow she'**ll be** in Mexico City. Next week she'**ll be** in New York.
- You can call me tonight. I'**ll be** home.
- Put this bread in the back yard. The birds **will eat** it.
- We'**ll** probably **go** out tonight.
- **Will** you **be** home tonight?
- I **won't be** here tomorrow. (= I will not be here)
- Don't drink coffee before you go to bed. You **won't sleep**.

We often say **I think . . . will . . . .**

- **I think** Diana **will pass** her driver's test.
- **Do you think** the test **will be** difficult?
- **I don't think** it **will rain** this afternoon.

We say **I don't think . . . will . . .** (*not* I think . . . won't . . .).

- **I don't think** the test **will be** difficult. (*not* I think the test won't be . . .)

C

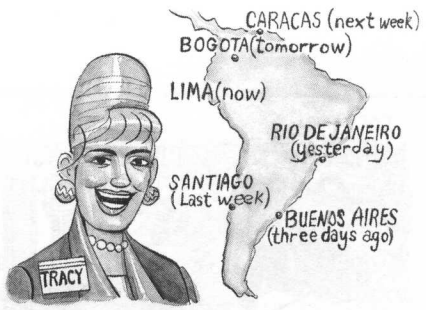
We do not use **will** for things we have already *arranged* or *decided* to do (see Units 26–27).

- We'**re going** to the movies on Saturday. (*not* We will go)
- I'**m** not **working** tomorrow. (*not* I won't work)
- **Are** you **going to cook** dinner tonight? (*not* Will you cook)

What are you doing tomorrow? **Unit 26** ***I'm going to . . .*** **Unit 27** ***Will* (2)** **Unit 29**

Exercises

28.1 **Tracy is traveling in South America. Complete the sentences with *she was, she's,* or *she'll be.***



1. Yesterday *she was* in Rio de Janeiro.
2. Tomorrow _____ in Bogota.
3. Last week _____ in Santiago.
4. Next week _____ in Caracas.
5. Right now _____ in Lima.
6. Three days ago _____ in Buenos Aires.
7. At the end of her trip _____ very tired.

28.2 **Where will you be? Write answers about yourself. Use one of these:**

I'll be . . . **I'll probably be . . .** **I don't know where I'll be.**

1. At 10 o'clock tomorrow? *I'll be at work.* OR *I'll probably be at the beach.*
2. One hour from now? _____
3. At midnight tonight? _____
4. At 3 o'clock tomorrow afternoon? _____
5. Two years from now? _____

28.3 **Write *will* (*'ll*) or *won't.***

1. Don't drink coffee before you go to bed. You *won't* sleep.
2. "Are you ready yet?" "Not yet. I _____ be ready in five minutes."
3. I'm going away for a few days. I'm leaving tonight, so I _____ be at home tomorrow.
4. It _____ rain, so you don't need to take an umbrella.
5. *A:* I don't feel very well tonight.
   B: Well, go to bed early and you _____ feel better in the morning.
6. It's Bill's birthday next Monday. He _____ be 25.
7. I'm sorry I was late this morning. It _____ happen again.

28.4 **Rewrite these sentences. Use *I think . . .* or *I don't think . . .***

1. (Diana will pass the driver's test.) *I think Diana will pass the driver's test.*
2. (Diana won't pass the driver's test.) *I don't think Diana will pass the driver's test.*
3. (We'll win the game.) I _____.
4. (I won't be here tomorrow.) _____
5. (Rika will like her present.) _____
6. (They won't get married.) _____
7. (You won't like the movie.) _____

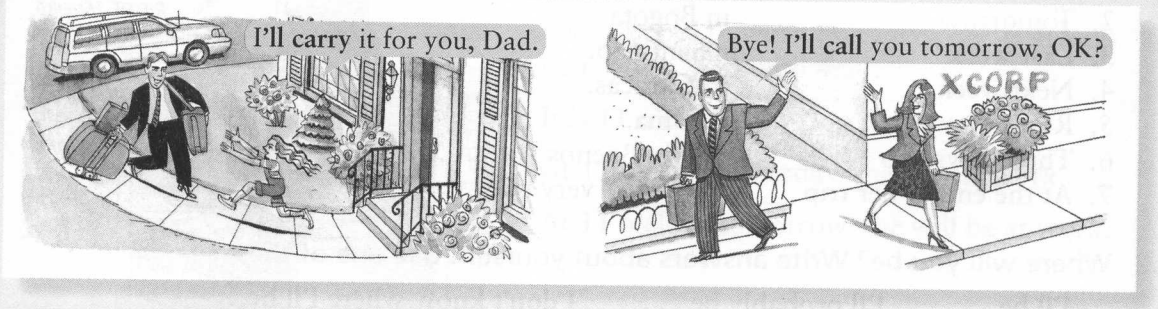
28.5 **Which is right? (Study Unit 26 before you do this exercise.)**

1. ~~We'll go~~ / We're going to the theater tonight. We've got tickets. (*We're going* is right.)
2. "What will you do / are you doing tomorrow night?" "Nothing. I'm free."
3. They'll leave / They're leaving tomorrow morning. Their train is at 8:40.
4. I'm sure she'll lend / she's lending us some money. She's very rich.
5. "Why are you putting on your coat?" "I'll go / I'm going out."
6. Do you think Claire will call / is calling us tonight?
7. Steve can't meet us on Saturday. He'll work / He's working.

UNIT 29

Will (2)

A



You can use **I'll . . .** (**I will**) when you offer or decide to do something.

- "My suitcase is very heavy." "**I'll carry** it for you."
- "**I'll call** you tomorrow, OK?" "OK. Goodbye."

We often say **I think I'll . . . / I don't think I'll . . .** when we decide to do something.

- I'm tired. **I think I'll go** to bed early tonight.
- It's a nice day. **I think I'll sit** outside.
- It's raining. **I don't think I'll go** out.

Do not use the simple present (**I go / I call,** etc.) in sentences like these:

- **I'll call** you tomorrow, OK? (*not* I call you)
- I think **I'll go** to bed early. (*not* I go to bed)

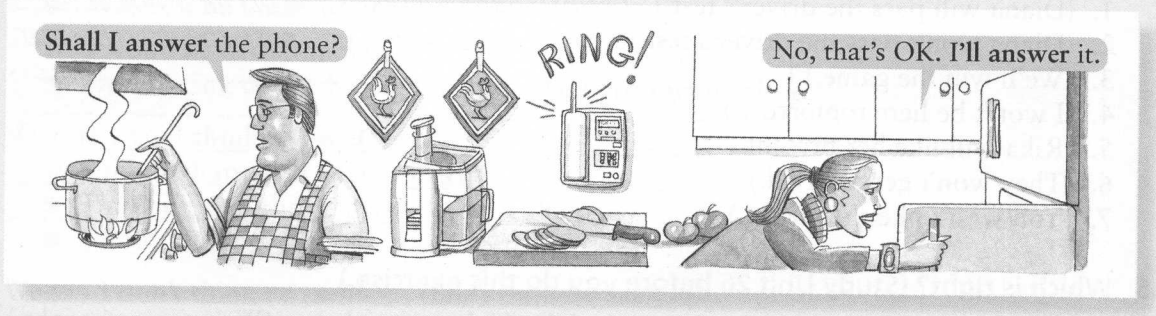
B

Do not use **I'll . . .** for something you decided before (see Units 26–27).

- **I'm working** tomorrow. (*not* I'll work)
- There's a good program on TV tonight. **I'm going to watch** it. (*not* I'll watch)
- What **are** you **doing** this weekend? (*not* What will you do)

C

Shall I/we . . . ?



Shall I/we . . . ? = Do you think this is a good thing to do? Do you think this is a good idea?

- "**Shall I call** you tonight?" "OK."
- It's a nice day. **Shall we go** for a walk?

We use **should** in the same way.

- "**Should I call** you tonight?" "OK."
- It's a nice day. **Should we go** for a walk?

What are you doing tomorrow? **Unit 26** ***I'm going to . . .*** **Unit 27** ***Will*** **Unit 28** ***Should*** **Unit 33**

Exercises

29.1 Complete the sentences. Use *I'll* (*I will*) + one of these verbs:

~~carry~~ do eat send show sit stay

1.	My suitcase is very heavy.	*I'll carry* it for you.
2.	Enjoy your vacation.	Thank you. _____ you a postcard.
3.	I don't want this banana.	Well, I'm hungry. _____ it.
4.	Do you want a chair?	No, that's OK. _____ on the floor.
5.	Did you call Jenny?	Oh no, I forgot. _____ it now.
6.	Are you coming with me?	No, I don't think so. _____ here.
7.	How do you use this camera?	Give it to me and _____ you.

29.2 Complete the sentences. Use *I think I'll . . .* or *I don't think I'll . . .* + one of these verbs:

buy ~~go~~ have play

1. It's cold today. *I don't think I'll go* out.
2. I'm hungry. I _____ something to eat.
3. I feel tired. _____ tennis.
4. This camera is too expensive. _____ it.

29.3 Which is right?

1. ~~I call~~ / I'll call you tomorrow, OK? (*I'll call* is right.)
2. I haven't done the shopping yet. I do / I'll do it later.
3. I like sports. I watch / I'll watch a lot of sports on TV.
4. I need some exercise. I think I go / I'll go for a walk.
5. Jim is going to buy / will buy a new car. He told me last week.
6. "This letter is for Alicia." "OK. I give / I'll give / I'm going to give it to her."
7. *A:* Are you doing / Will you do anything this evening?
   B: Yes, I'm going / I'll go out with some friends.
8. "Can you tell Ted I'll be late tonight?" "Sure, I tell / I'm going to tell / I'll tell him."
9. "Why are you going out?" "I do / I'll do / I'm going to do the shopping."
10. I can't go out with you tomorrow night. I work / I'm working / I'll work.
11. I like this hat. I think I buy / I'll buy it.

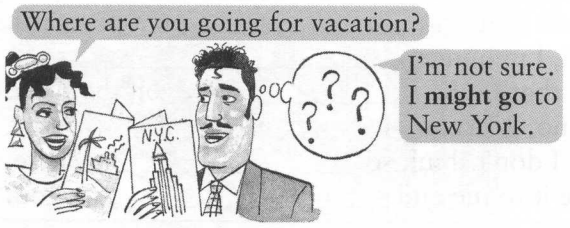
29.4 What does B say to A? Find the right answers.

A		B	
1.	It's very warm in this room.	*d*	a) If you want. Where should we go?
2.	This TV program is boring.	_____	b) Yes, who shall we invite?
3.	Should we have a party?	_____	c) No, shall I go and get some?
4.	It's dark in this room.	_____	d) Shall I open the window?
5.	Should I go to the store?	_____	e) Should I turn on the light?
6.	Shall we go out?	_____	f) OK, how many shall we buy?
7.	Shall I wait here?	_____	g) Should I turn it off?
8.	Have we got any bread?	_____	h) No, come with me.
9.	Should we get some lottery tickets?	_____	i) No, it's OK. I'll go.

UNIT 30

Might

A



He **might go** to New York.
(= it is possible that he will go to New York)

It **might rain.**
(= it is possible that it will rain)

might + *base form* (**might go / might be / might rain,** etc.)

I/we/you/they he/she/it	**might** (not)	**be** **go** **play** **come,** etc.

B

I **might** = it is possible that I will

- I **might go** to the movies tonight. (= it is possible that I will go)
- *A:* When is Kanya going to call you?
  B: I don't know. She **might call** this afternoon.
- Take an umbrella with you. It **might rain.**
- Buy a lottery ticket. You **might be** lucky. (= perhaps you will be lucky)
- "Are you going out tonight?" "I **might.**" (= I might go out)

Study the difference:

- I'm **playing** tennis tomorrow. *(sure)*
  I **might play** tennis tomorrow. *(possible)*
- Kanya **is going to call** later. *(sure)*
  Kanya **might call** later. *(possible)*

C

The negative is **might not.**

- I **might not** go to work tomorrow. (= it is possible that I will not go)
- Sonia **might not come** to the party. (= it is possible that she will not come)

D

may

You can use **may** in the same way. **I may = I might.**

- I **may go** to the movies tonight. (= I might go)
- Sonia **may not come** to the party. (= Sonia might not come)

May I . . . ? = Is it OK to . . . ? / Can I . . . ?

- **May I** ask a question? (= Can I ask?)
- "**May I** sit here?" "Sure."

Will **Units 28–29** ***Can*** **Unit 31**

Exercises

30.1 **Write sentences with *might*.**

1. (it's possible that I'll go to the movies) *I might go to the movies.*
2. (it's possible that I'll see you tomorrow) I _____.
3. (it's possible that Sarah will forget to call) _____
4. (it's possible that it will snow today) _____
5. (it's possible that I'll be late tonight) _____

Write sentences with *might not*.

6. (it's possible that Mark won't be here) _____
7. (it's possible that I won't have time to go out tonight) _____

30.2 **Somebody is asking you about your plans. You have some ideas, but you are not sure. Choose from the list and write sentences with *I might*.**

~~Europe~~ fish Monday new car take a trip take a taxi

1.	Where are you going for vacation?	I'm not sure. *I might go to Europe.*
2.	What are you doing this weekend?	I don't know. I _____.
3.	When will you see Amy again?	I'm not sure. _____
4.	What are you going to have for dinner?	I don't know. _____
5.	How are you going to get home tonight?	I'm not sure. _____
6.	I hear you won some money. What are you going to buy?	I haven't decided yet. _____

30.3 **You ask Adam about his plans. Sometimes he is sure, but usually he is not sure.**

YOU

1.	Are you playing tennis tomorrow?	Yes, in the afternoon.
2.	Are you going out tonight?	Possibly.
3.	Are you going to get up early?	Maybe.
4.	Are you working tomorrow?	No, I'm not.
5.	Will you be home tomorrow night?	Maybe.
6.	Are you going to watch television?	I might.
7.	Are you going out this afternoon?	Yes, I am.
8.	Are you going shopping?	Maybe, I'm not sure.

ADAM

Now write about Adam. Use *might* where necessary.

1. *He's playing tennis tomorrow afternoon.*
2. *He might go out tonight.*
3. He _____.
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____

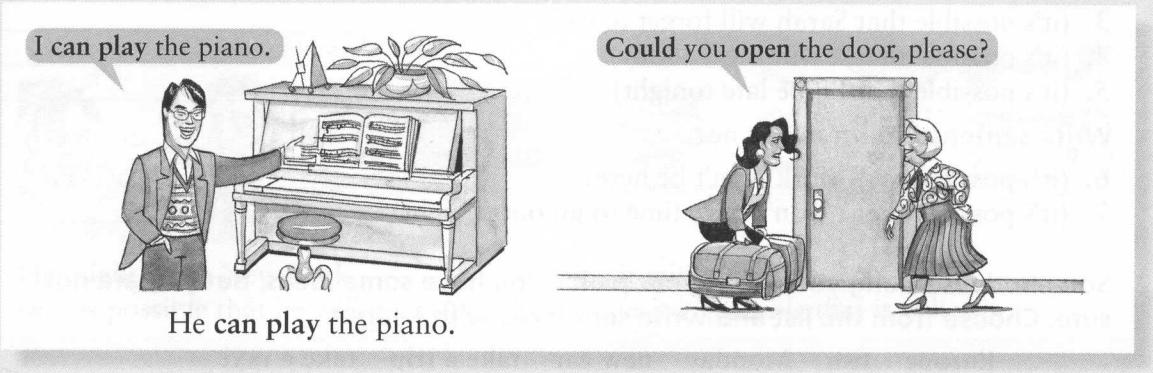
30.4 **Write three things that you might do tomorrow.**

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____

UNIT 31

Can and *could*

A



He **can play** the piano.

can + *base form* (**can do / can play / can come,** etc.)

I/we/you/they he/she/it	**can** **can't/cannot**	**do** **play** **see** **come,** etc.	**can**	I/we/you/they he/she/it	**do?** **play?** **see?** **come?,** etc.

B

I **can do** something = I *know how* to do it or *it is possible* for me to do it

- I **can play** the piano. My brother **can play** the piano too.
- Sarah **can speak** Italian, but she **can't speak** Spanish.
- "**Can** you **swim**?" "Yes, but I'm not a very good swimmer."
- "**Can** you **change** a ten-dollar bill?" "I'm sorry, I **can't**."
- I'm having a party next week, but Scott and Angela **can't come**.

C

For the *past* (**yesterday / last week,** etc.), we use **could/couldn't.**

- When I was young, I **could run** very fast.
- Before Shu Ling came to Canada, she **couldn't understand** much English. Now she **can understand** everything.
- I was tired last night, but I **couldn't sleep**.
- I had a party last week, but Scott and Angela **couldn't come**.

D

Can you . . . ? Could you . . . ? Can I . . . ? Could I . . . ?

We use **Can you . . . ?** or **Could you . . . ?** when we ask people to do things.

- **Can you** open the door, please? *or* **Could you** open the door, please?
- **Can you** tell me the time, please? *or* **Could you** tell . . . ?

We use **Can I have . . . ?** or **Could I have . . . ?** to ask for something.

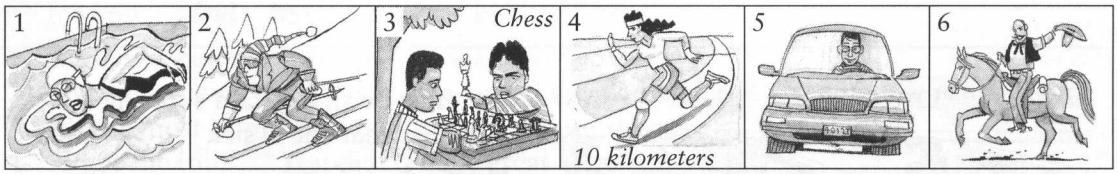
- *(in a store)* **Can I have** change for a dollar, please? *or* **Could I have . . . ?**

Can I . . . ? or **Could I . . . ?** = is it OK to do something?

- Tom, **can I** borrow your pen? *or* Tom, **could I** borrow your pen?
- *(on the phone)* Hello, **can I** speak to Jerry, please? *or* . . . **could I** speak . . . ?

Exercises

31.1 Ask Steve if he can do these things:



1. *Can you swim?*
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____

STEVE

Can you do these things? Write sentences about yourself. Use *I can* or *I can't*.

7. I _____ .
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____
11. _____
12. _____

31.2 Complete these sentences. Use *can* or *can't* + one of these verbs:

~~come~~ find hear see speak

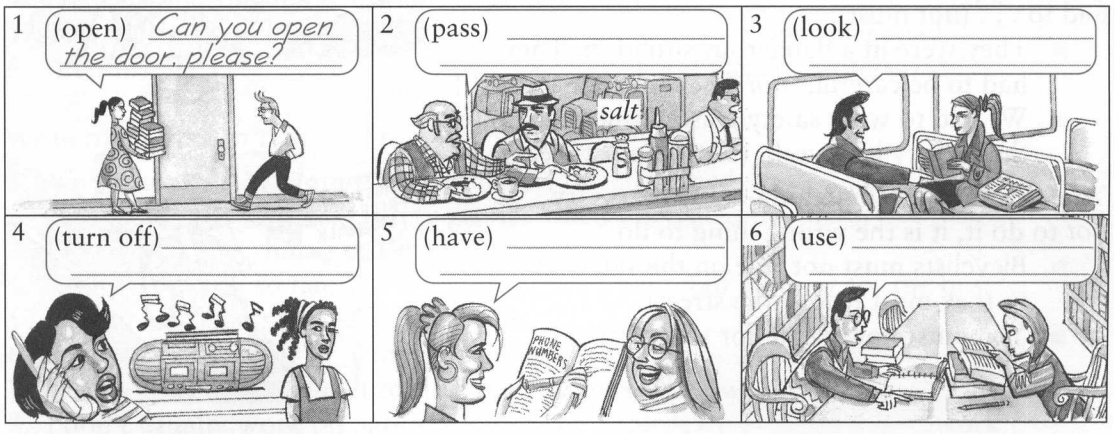
1. I'm sorry but we *can't come* _____ to your party next Saturday.
2. I like this hotel room. You _____ the mountains from the window.
3. You are speaking very quietly. I _____ you.
4. Have you seen my suitcase? I _____ it.
5. Catherine got the job because she _____ five languages.

31.3 Complete these sentences. Use *can't* or *couldn't* + one of these verbs:

decide eat find go go ~~sleep~~

1. I was tired, but I *couldn't sleep* _____ .
2. I wasn't hungry yesterday. I _____ my dinner.
3. Angela doesn't know what to do. She _____ .
4. I wanted to speak to Mark yesterday, but I _____ him.
5. Jim _____ to the concert next Saturday. He has to work.
6. Yoko _____ to the meeting last week. She was sick.

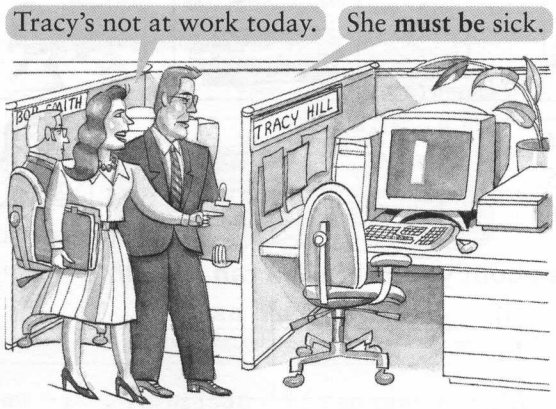
31.4 What do you say in these situations? Use *can* or *could*. Use the words in parentheses ( ).



UNIT 32

Must

A



She **must be** sick = I am sure she is sick, it is clear that she is sick

Must + *base form*
(**must be / must know**, etc.)

I/we/you/they he/she/it	**must (not)**	**be** **know** **have** **live**, etc.

We use **must** when we believe that something is true.

- You worked ten hours today. You **must be** tired.
- My brother has worked at your company for years. You **must know** him.
- My friends have the same zip code as you. They **must live** close to you.
- (*on the telephone*) This isn't the Smiths'? I'm sorry. I **must have** the wrong number.

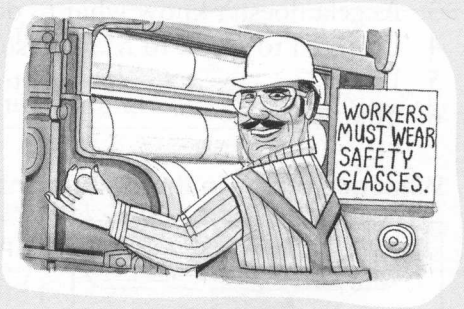
We use **must not** when we believe that something is *not* true.

- The phone rang eight times and Karen didn't answer. She **must not be** at home.
- Carlos takes the bus everywhere. He **must not have** a car.
- The Silvas are always home on Friday. They **must not work** then.

B

Must also has another meaning. You **must do** something = it is necessary to do it

- You **must be** careful with this knife. It's very sharp.
- Workers **must wear** safety glasses at this machine.
- In the U.S., you **must be** 18 to vote.

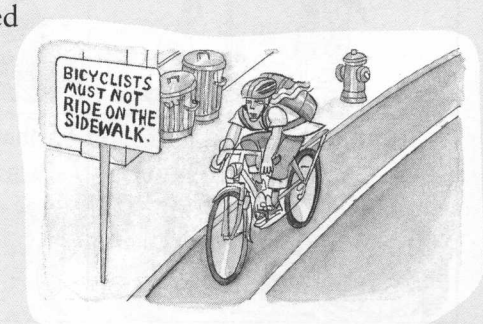


For the *past* (**yesterday, last week,** etc.), we use **had to . . .** (*not* must).

- They were in a dangerous situation. They **had to be** careful. (*not* They must be careful.)
- We **had to wear** safety glasses when we visited the factory last week. (*not* we must wear)

You **must not do** something = it is necessary *not* to do it, it is the wrong thing to do

- Bicyclists **must not ride** on the sidewalk. (= they must ride in the street)
- You **must not be** late for school again!



Should **Unit 33** ***I have to . . .*** **Unit 34**

Exercises

32.1 Complete the sentences. Use *must be* + one of these:

for you good hungry in the kitchen ~~tired~~ very happy

1. Silvia worked ten hours today. She *must be tired* .
2. It's evening and you haven't eaten anything all day. You _____ .
3. It's the most popular restaurant in town, so the food _____ .
4. "I got the job!" "You did? That's great. You _____ ."
5. The phone's ringing. I know it's not for me. It _____ .
6. My keys aren't in the living room, so they _____ .

32.2 Complete the sentences. Use *must* + one of these:

drink have ~~know~~ like work

1. My brother has worked at your company for years. You *must know* him.
2. Marilyn wears something blue every day. She _____ the color blue.
3. The Hills have six children and three dogs. They _____ a big house.
4. Mrs. Lee bought three gallons of milk at the store. Her children _____ a lot of milk.
5. I know Mrs. Romo has a job, but she's always home during the day. She _____ nights.

32.3 Write *must* or *must not*.

1. (*on the telephone*) This isn't the Smiths'? I'm sorry. I *must* have the wrong number.
2. Carlos takes the bus everywhere. He *must not* have a car.
3. Brandon is very thin. He _____ eat very much.
4. I never see my neighbor in the morning. He _____ leave for work very early.
5. I always have to repeat things when I talk to Kelly. She _____ hear very well.
6. Jim wears the same clothes every day. He _____ have many clothes.
7. You have a cold and a fever? Poor thing! You _____ feel awful.

32.4 Complete the sentences. Use *must* + one of these:

~~be~~ be get know take wear

1. In most of the U.S., you *must be* at least 16 to get a driver's license.
2. For this job, you _____ both English and Spanish.
3. People in the front seat of a car _____ a seat belt.
4. High school students who want to go to college _____ good grades.
5. This highway is closed. Drivers _____ another road.
6. A tennis player _____ very good to play professionally.

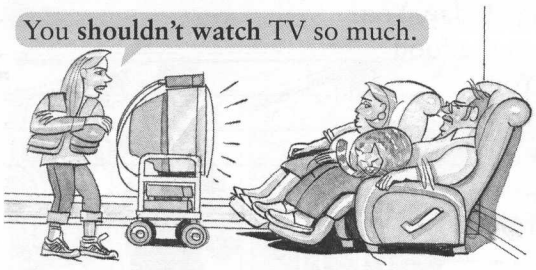
32.5 Write *must, mustn't,* or *had to*.

1. We *mustn't* forget to send Sam a birthday card.
2. We *had to* wear safety glasses when we visited the factory.
3. I _____ hurry or I'll be late.
4. "Why were you so late?" "I _____ wait half an hour for the bus."
5. Keep these papers in a safe place. You _____ lose them.
6. Bicyclists _____ follow the same traffic rules as drivers.
7. We _____ forget to turn off the lights when we leave.
8. I don't usually work on Saturdays, but last Saturday I _____ work.

UNIT 33

Should

A



Should + *base form*
(**should do / should watch,** etc.)

I/we/you/they he/she/it	**should** **shouldn't**	**do** **stop** **go** **watch,** etc.

B

You **should do** something = it is a good thing to do, it is the right thing to do

- Tom **should go** to bed earlier. He goes to bed very late, and he's always tired.
- It's a good movie. You **should go** and see it.
- When you play tennis, you **should** always **watch** the ball.

Should I **do** something? = is it a good thing to do?

- **Should** I **invite** Karen to dinner?
- **Should** we **buy** something special for dinner?

C

You **shouldn't do** something = it is not a good thing to do (**shouldn't = should not**)

- Tom **shouldn't go** to bed so late.
- You watch TV all the time. You **shouldn't watch** TV so much.

D

We often use **think** with **should.**

I think . . . should . . .

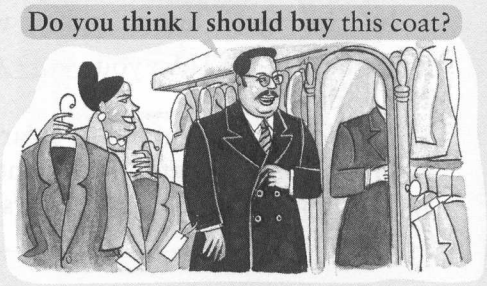
- **I think** Gary **should buy** some new clothes. (= I think it is a good idea.)
- It's late. **I think** I **should go** home now.

I don't think . . . should . . .

- **I don't think** you **should work** so hard. (= I don't think it is a good idea.)
- **I don't think** we **should go** yet. It's too early.

Do you think . . . should . . . ?

- **Do you think** I **should buy** this coat?
- What time **do you think** we **should go** home?



E

Should is different from **have to.**

- I **should** study tonight, but I think I'll go to the movies.
- I **have to** study tonight. I can't go to the movies.

F

Another way to say **should** is **ought to.**

- I **ought to study** tonight, but I think I'll go to the movies. (= I should study)
- I think Gary **ought to buy** some new clothes. (= Gary should buy)

Shall/should **Unit 29** ***Can*** **Unit 31** ***Must*** **Unit 32** ***Have to*** **Unit 34**

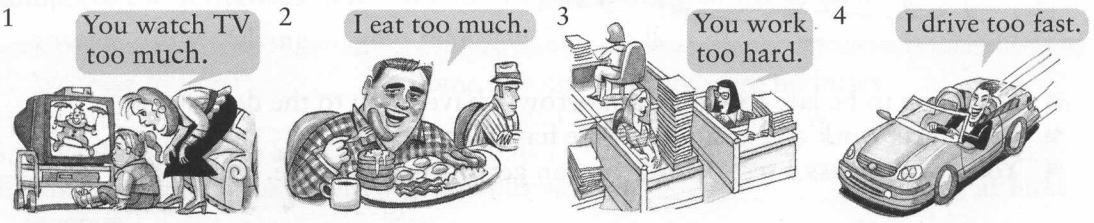
Exercises

33.1 Complete the sentences. Use *you should* + one of these verbs:

brush go read visit ~~watch~~ wear

1. When you play tennis, *you should watch* the ball.
2. It's late and you're very tired. _____ to bed.
3. _____ your teeth twice a day.
4. If you have time, _____ the Science Museum. It's very interesting.
5. When you're driving, _____ a seat belt.
6. It's a very good book. _____ it.

33.2 Write about the people in the pictures. Use *He/She shouldn't . . . so . . . .*



1. *She shouldn't watch TV so much.*
2. He _____ .
3. _____ hard.
4. _____

33.3 You ask a friend for advice. Write questions with *Do you think I should . . . ?*

1. You are in a store. You are trying on a jacket. You ask your friend:
   (buy) *Do you think I should buy this jacket?*
2. You can't drive. You ask your friend:
   (learn) Do you think _____ ?
3. You don't like your job. You ask your friend:
   (get another job) _____
4. You are going to have a party. You ask your friend:
   (invite Scott) _____

33.4 Write sentences with *I think . . . should* or *I don't think . . . should.*

1. We have to get up early tomorrow. *I think we should go home now.* (go home now)
2. That coat is too big for you. *I don't think you should buy it.* (buy it)
3. You don't need your car. _____ (sell it)
4. Diane needs a change. _____ (take a trip)
5. Karen and Don are too young. _____ (get married)
6. You're still sick. _____ (go to work)
7. James isn't feeling well today. _____ (go to the doctor)
8. This hotel is too expensive for us. _____ (stay here)

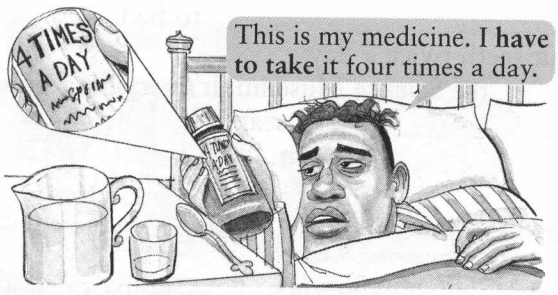
33.5 What do you think? Write sentences with *should.*

1. I think *everybody should learn another language* .
2. I think everybody _____ .
3. I think _____ .
4. I don't think _____ .
5. I think I should _____ .

UNIT 34

I have to . . .

A



I have to do something = it is necessary for me to do it, I am obliged to do it

I/we/you/they **have**	**to do** **to work**
he/she/it **has**	**to go** **to wear,** etc.

- I'm going to be late for work tomorrow. I **have to go** to the dentist.
- Kim starts work at 7 o'clock, so she **has to get** up at 6:00.
- You **have to pass** a test before you can get a driver's license.

B

The *past* (**yesterday / last week,** etc.) is **had to . . . .**

- I was late for work yesterday. I **had to go** to the dentist.
- We **had to walk** home last night. There were no buses.

C

In *questions* and *negatives* we use **do/does** *(present)* and **did** *(past).*

Present

do	I/we/you/they	**have to . . . ?**	I/we/you/they	**don't**	**have to . . .**
does	he/she/it		he/she/it	**doesn't**	

Past

did	I/we/you/they he/she/it	**have to . . . ?**	I/we/you/they he/she/it	**didn't have to . . .**

- What time **do** you **have to go** to the dentist tomorrow?
- **Does** Kim **have to work** on Saturdays?
- Why **did** they **have to leave** the party early?

I **don't have to** do something = it is not necessary to do it

- I'm not working tomorrow, so I **don't have to get** up early.
- Da Ming **doesn't have to work** very hard. He's got an easy job.
- We **didn't have to wait** very long for the bus.

D

must

You can also use **must** to say it is necessary to do something.

- You **must** pass a test before you can get a driver's license.
- In many countries, men **must** do military service.

We use **have to** more often than **must,** especially in spoken English.

Must **Unit 32**

Exercises

34.1 Complete the sentences. Use *have to* or *has to* + one of these verbs:

hit read speak take travel ~~wear~~

1. My eyes are not very good. I *have to wear* glasses.
2. At the end of the course, all the students _____ a test.
3. Marta is studying literature. She _____ a lot of books.
4. Alberto doesn't understand much English. You _____ to him very slowly.
5. Kate is not at home much. She _____ a lot for her job.
6. In tennis you _____ the ball over the net.

34.2 Complete the sentences. Use *have to* or *had to* + one of these verbs:

answer buy change go take wake ~~walk~~

1. We *had to walk* home last night. There were no buses.
2. It's late. I _____ now. I'll see you tomorrow.
3. I went to the store after work yesterday. I _____ some food.
4. This bus doesn't go all the way downtown. You _____ at First Avenue.
5. We took an exam yesterday. We _____ six questions out of ten.
6. I'm going to bed early. I _____ up early tomorrow.
7. Amy and her cousin can't go out with us tonight. They _____ care of Amy's little brother.

34.3 Complete the questions. Some are present and some are past.

1.	I have to get up early tomorrow.	What time *do you have to get up* ?
2.	Eric had to wait a long time.	How long _____ ?
3.	Liz has to go somewhere.	Where _____ ?
4.	We had to pay a lot of money.	How much _____ ?
5.	I have to do some work.	What exactly _____ ?
6.	They had to leave early.	Why _____ ?

34.4 Write sentences with *don't/doesn't/didn't have to . . . .*

1. Why do you want to pay the bill now? You *don't have to pay* it now.
2. Why is Hannah waiting? She _____ .
3. Why did you get up early? You _____ .
4. Why is Joel working so hard? He _____ .
5. Why do you want to leave now? We _____ .

34.5 Write some things that you (or your friends or family) *have to do* or *had to do*.

1. (every day) *I have to drive fifty miles to work every day.*
2. (every day) _____
3. (tomorrow) _____
4. (yesterday) _____
5. (last week) _____
6. (when I was younger) _____

UNIT 35

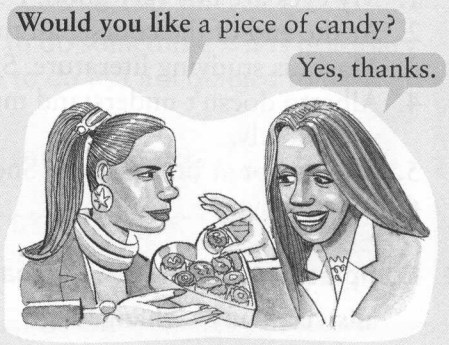
Would you like . . . ? I'd like . . .

A

Would you like . . . ? = Do you want . . . ?

We use **Would you like . . . ?** to offer things.

- *A:* **Would you like** some coffee?
  B: No, thank you.
- *A:* **Would you like** a piece of candy?
  B: Yes, thanks.
- *A:* What **would you like,** tea or coffee?
  B: Tea, please.



We use **Would you like to . . . ?** to invite somebody.

- **Would you like to go** for a walk?
- *A:* **Would you like to have** dinner with us on Sunday?
  B: Yes, **I'd love to.** (= I would love to have dinner with you.)
- What **would you like to do** tonight?

B

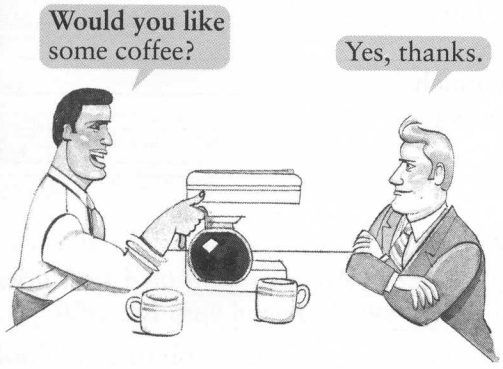
I'd like . . . is a polite way to say "I want." (**I'd** like = **I would** like)

- I'm thirsty. **I'd like** a drink.
- *(in a tourist office)* **I'd like** a road map, please.
- **I'd like to watch** the news on television tonight.

C

Would you like . . . ? and **Do you like . . . ?**

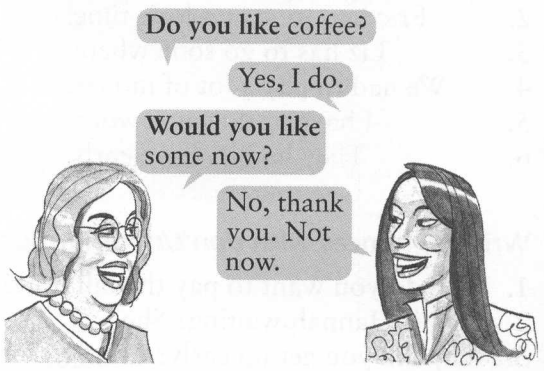
Would you like . . . ? / I'd like . . .



Would you like some coffee? = Do you want some coffee?

- *A:* **Would you like** to go to the movies tonight? (= Do you want to go tonight?)
  B: Yes, I'd love to.
- **I'd like** an orange, please. (= Can I have an orange?)
- What **would you like** to do next weekend?

Do you like . . . ? / I like . . .



Do you like coffee? = Do you think coffee is good?

- *A:* **Do you like** to go to the movies? *(in general)*
  B: Yes, I go to the movies a lot.
- **I like** oranges. *(in general)*
- What **do you like** to do on weekends?

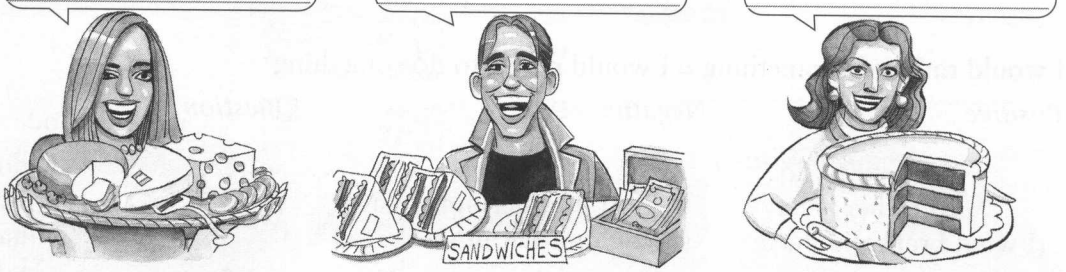
Like to do* and *like -ing Unit 53 ***A* and *some*** Units 68–69 ***I would . . . something if . . .*** Unit 114

Exercises

35.1 What are the people in the pictures saying? Use *Would you like . . . ?*

1. *Would you like a piece of candy?*
2. _____
3. _____

4. _____
5. _____
6. _____



35.2 What do you say to Sue in these situations? Use *Would you like to . . . ?* and the words in parentheses ( ).

1. You want to go to the movies tonight. You hope Sue will go too.
   You say: (go) *Would you like to go to the movies tonight?*
2. You want to play tennis tomorrow. You hope Sue will play with you.
   You say: (play) _____
3. You've got some vacation pictures. Sue hasn't seen them yet.
   You say: (see) _____
4. You have an extra ticket for a concert next week. You hope Sue will go with you.
   You say: (go) _____
5. It's raining and Sue is going out. She doesn't have an umbrella, but you have one.
   You say: (borrow) _____

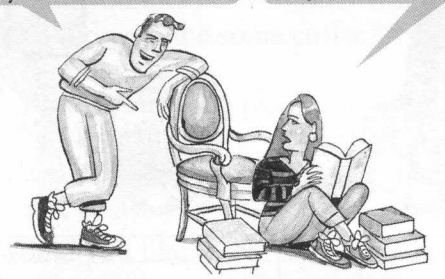
35.3 Which is right?

1. "~~Do you like~~ / Would you like a piece of candy?" "Yes, thanks." (*Would you like* is right.)
2. "Do you like / Would you like bananas?" "Yes, I love them."
3. "Do you like / Would you like some ice cream?" "No, thank you."
4. "What do you like / would you like to drink?" "A glass of water, please."
5. "Do you like / Would you like to go out for a walk?" "Not now. Maybe later."
6. I like / I'd like tomatoes, but I don't eat them very often.
7. What time do you like / would you like to have dinner tonight?
8. "Do you like / Would you like something to eat?" "No, thanks. I'm not hungry."
9. "Do you like / Would you like your new job?" "Yes, I'm enjoying it."
10. I'm tired. I like / I'd like to go to sleep now.

UNIT 36

I'd rather . . .

A



Angela likes to sit on the floor. She doesn't want to sit on a chair. So she says:

I'd rather sit on the floor.
(= I would prefer to sit on the floor.)

I'd rather . . . = I **would** rather . . .

I **would rather** do something = I would prefer to do something

Positive		*Negative*		*Question*	
I'd rather (I **would rather**)	do stay have be	**I'd rather not** (I **would rather not**)	do stay have be	**Would** you **rather**	do? stay? have? be?

- I don't really want to go out. I'**d rather stay** home. (= I'd prefer to stay home.)
- "Should we go now?" "No, I'**d rather wait** until later."
- I want to go now, but Tom **would rather wait** until later.
- I don't like to be late. I'**d rather be** early.

- I'm feeling tired. I'**d rather not go out** tonight. (= I'd prefer not to go out.)
- Beth is feeling tired. She'**d rather not go out** tonight.
- We're not hungry. We'**d rather not eat** yet.
- "Do you want to go out tonight?" "I'**d rather not.**" (= I'd rather not go out.)

- "**Would** you **rather have** milk or juice?" "Juice, please."
- Which **would** you **rather do** – go to the movies or watch a video at home?

B

We say "I'**d rather do** something." (*not* to do something)

- I'd rather **sit** on the floor. (*not* I'd rather to sit)
- Beth would rather not **go** out. (*not* would rather not to go)

But we say "I'**d prefer to do** something."

- I'd prefer **to sit** on the floor.
- Beth would prefer not **to go** out.

C

You can say "I'**d rather . . . than . . . .**"

- I'**d rather** go out **than** stay home.
- I'**d rather** have a dog **than** a cat.
- We'**d rather** go to the movies **than** watch a video at home.
- I'**d rather** be at home right now **than** here.

Prefer **Unit 53**

Exercises

36.1 Look at the pictures and complete B's sentences. Use *I'd rather . . . .*

1. Would you like to sit here?

No, thanks. *I'd rather sit* _____ on the floor.

2. Do you want to watch TV?

No, I _____ my book.

3. Would you like some tea?

Well, _____ coffee if you have some.

4. Should we go out now?

_____ until it stops raining.

36.2 Complete these questions. Use *would you rather . . . .*

1. Do you want to go out, or *would you rather stay* _____ home?
2. Should we have dinner now, or _____ later?
3. Would you like a glass of iced tea, or _____ water?
4. Do you want to go to the movies, or _____ TV?

36.3 Complete the sentences with a verb. Sometimes you need *to*.

1. I'd rather *stay* _____ home tonight. I'd prefer not *to go* _____ out.
2. Should we walk home, or would you rather _____ a taxi?
3. Do you want me to go with you, or would you prefer _____ alone?
4. Vera doesn't want to go to college. She'd rather _____ a job.
5. "Can I help you with your suitcase?" "No, thanks. I'd rather _____ it myself."
6. I'd rather not _____ him. I'd prefer _____ him a letter.

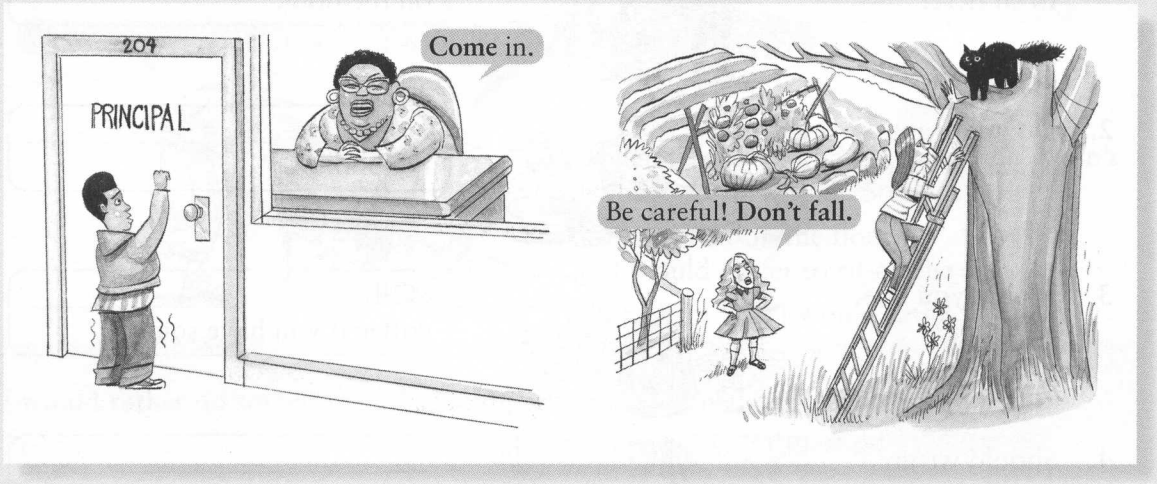
36.4 Write sentences about yourself with *I'd rather . . . than.*

1. Which would you prefer to be – a bus driver or an airline pilot?
   I'd rather be an airplane pilot than a bus driver.
2. Which would you prefer to be – a journalist or a teacher?
   I'd rather _____ .
3. Where would you prefer to live – in a big city or a small town?
   _____
4. Which would you prefer to have – a cat or a dog?
   _____
5. What would you prefer to study – electronics or philosophy?
   _____

UNIT 37

Do this! Don't do that! Let's do this!

A



We use the *base form* (**come/go/do/wait/be,** etc.) when we tell someone to do something.

- "**Come** here and **look** at this!" "What is it?"
- I don't want to talk to you. **Go** away!
- Please **wait** for me.
- Please **be** quiet. I'm working.
- Goodbye. **Have** a nice time.

The negative is **don't . . .** (**don't come/go/do/wait/be,** etc.). (**don't** = do not)

- Stay here. Please **don't go.**
- **Don't be** silly!
- Be careful! **Don't fall.**

B

You can say **Let's . . .** when you want people to do things with you. (**let's** = let us)

- It's a nice day. **Let's go** out.
  (= *you and I* can go out)

We use **let's** + *base form*
(**let's go/do/have,** etc.).

- Come on! **Let's dance.**
- Are you ready? **Let's go.**
- **Let's have** fish for dinner tonight.
- "Should we go out tonight?"
  "No, I'm tired. **Let's stay** home."

C

The negative is **let's not . . . .**

- It's cold. **Let's not go** out. Let's stay home.
- **Let's not have** fish for dinner. Let's have chicken.

Exercises

37.1 Look at the pictures. What are the people saying? Sometimes the sentence is positive (*go/eat,* etc.) and sometimes it is negative (*don't go / don't eat,* etc.). Use these verbs:

buy ~~come~~ drink sit sleep smile talk turn

37.2 Complete the sentences. Use *No, let's . . .* + one of these:

~~go for a swim~~ go to a restaurant take the bus wait watch TV

1. Would you like to play tennis? — *No, let's go for a swim.*
2. Do you want to drive downtown? — No, _____.
3. Shall we go to the movies?
4. Should we have dinner at home?
5. Would you like to begin now?

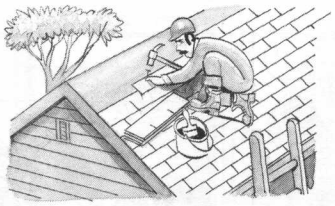
37.3 Answer with *No, don't . . .* or *No, let's not . . . .*

1. Shall I wait for you? — *No, don't wait for me.*
2. Should we go home now? — *No, let's not go home now.*
3. Shall we go out?
4. Should I close the door?
5. Should I call you tonight?
6. Should we wait for Dave?
7. Shall I turn on the light?
8. Should we take a taxi?

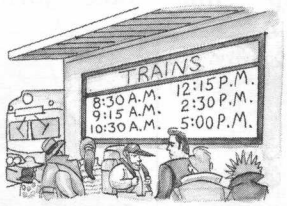
UNIT 38

There is/are

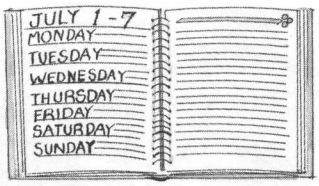
A



There's a man on the roof.



There's a train at 10:30.



There are seven days in a week.

Singular

there is . . .	(there's)
is there . . . ?	
there is not . . .	(there isn't *or* there's not)

- There's a big tree in the yard.
- There's a good movie on TV tonight.
- *A:* Do you have any money?
  B: Yes, there's some in my wallet.
- *A:* Excuse me, is there a hotel near here?
  B: Yes, there is. / No, there isn't.
- We can't go skiing. There isn't any snow.

Plural

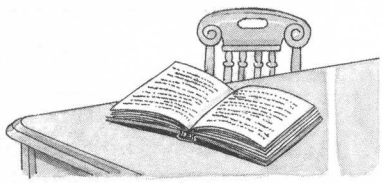
there are . . .	
are there . . . ?	
there are not . . .	(there aren't)

- There are some big trees in the yard.
- There are a lot of accidents on this road.
- *A:* Are there any mistakes in my letter?
  B: Yes, there are. / No, there aren't.
- This restaurant is very quiet. There aren't many people here.
- How many players are there on a soccer team?
- There are 11 players on a soccer team.

B

there is and it is

there is



There's a book on the table.
(*not* It's a book on the table.)

it is

I like this book . It's funny. (it = this book)

Compare:

- "What's that noise?" "It's a train." (it = that noise)
  There's a train at 10:30. It's a fast train. (it = the 10:30 train)
- There's a lot of salt in this soup.
  I don't like this soup. It's too salty. (it = this soup)

There was / were / has been, etc. Unit 39 *It* and *there* Unit 40 *Some* and *any* Unit 77

Exercises

38.1 **Springfield is a small town. Write sentences about Springfield with *There is/are* or *There isn't/aren't.* Use the information in the box.**

1. A golf course?	No
2. Any restaurants?	Yes (a lot)
3. A hospital?	Yes
4. A swimming pool?	No
5. Any movie theaters?	Yes (two)
6. A university?	No
7. Any big hotels?	No

1. *There isn't a golf course.*
2. *There are a lot of restaurants.*
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____

38.2 **Write about your town (or a town that you know). Use *There is/are/isn't/aren't.***

1. *There are a few restaurants.*
2. *There's a big park.*
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____

38.3 **Write *there is / there isn't / is there / there are / there aren't / are there.***

1. Springfield isn't an old town. *There aren't* any old buildings.
2. Look! _____ a picture of your brother in the newspaper!
3. "Excuse me, _____ a bank near here?" "Yes, at the end of the block."
4. _____ five people in my family: my parents, my two sisters, and me.
5. "How many students _____ in the class?" "Twenty."
6. "Can we take a picture?" "No, _____ any film in the camera."
7. "_____ a bus downtown from the airport?" "Yes. Every 20 minutes."
8. "_____ any problems?" "No, everything is OK."
9. _____ nowhere to sit down. _____ any chairs.

38.4 **Write sentences with *There are . . . .* Choose from the boxes.**

~~seven~~	twenty-six
nine	thirty
eleven	fifty

~~days~~	planets
days	players
letters	states

a hockey team	the English alphabet
~~a week~~	the solar system
September	the USA

1. *There are seven days in a week.*
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____

38.5 **Write *there's / is there / it's / is it.***

1. "*There's* a flight at 10:30." "*Is it* a non-stop flight?"
2. I'm not going to buy this shirt. _____ too expensive.
3. "What's wrong?" "_____ something in my eye."
4. _____ a red car outside the house. _____ yours?
5. "_____ anything good on TV tonight?" "Yes, _____ a movie at 8:00."
6. "What's that building?" "_____ a school."
7. "_____ a restaurant in this hotel?" "No, I'm sorry."

UNIT 39

There was/were there has been / have been there will be

A

there was/were *(past)*

There is a train every hour.
It's 11:15 now.
There was a train at 11 o'clock.

Compare:

there is/are *(present)*

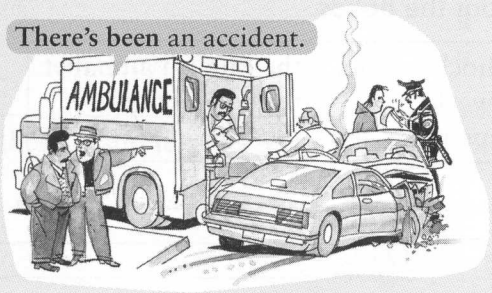
- **There is** a good movie on TV tonight.
- We are staying at a big hotel. **There are** 1,250 rooms.
- **Are there** any phone messages for me today?
- I'm hungry, but **there isn't** anything to eat.

there was/were *(past)*

- **There was** a good movie on TV last night.
- We stayed at a very big hotel. **There were** 1,250 rooms.
- **Were there** any phone messages for me yesterday?
- When I got home, I was hungry, but **there wasn't** anything to eat.

B

there has been / have been *(present perfect)*



- Look! **There's been** an accident. (**there's been** = there has been)
- This road is very dangerous. **There have been** a lot of accidents here.

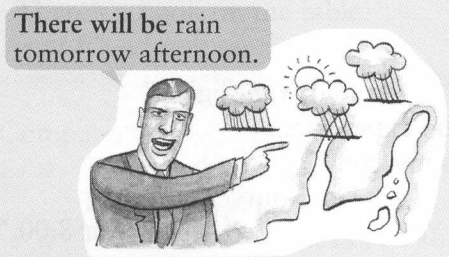
Compare **there was** *(past)*:

- **There was** an accident **last night**. (*not* There has been an accident last night.)

For present perfect and simple past, see Unit 19.

C

there will be



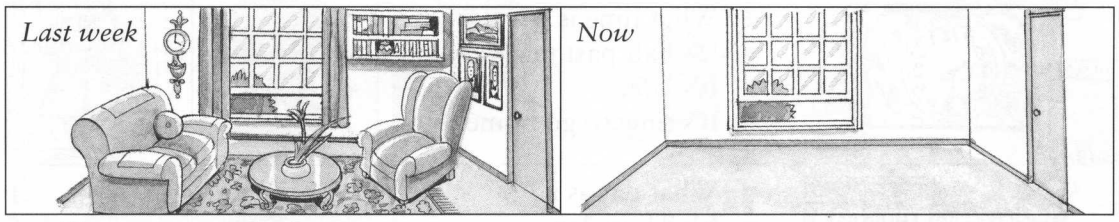
- Do you think **there will be** a lot of people at the party on Saturday?
- The manager of the company is leaving, so **there will be** a new manager soon.
- I'm going away tomorrow. I'm packing my things today because **there won't be** time tomorrow. (**there won't be** = there will not be)

Was/were **Unit 10** ***Has/have been*** **Units 16, 19–21** ***Will*** **Unit 28** ***There is/are*** **Unit 38** ***There*** **and** ***it*** **Units 38, 40** ***Some/any*** **Unit 77**

Exercises

39.1 Look at the two pictures. The room is empty now. What was in the room last week? Write sentences with *There was . . .* or *There were . . .* + one of these:

~~a clock~~	an armchair	a sofa	some flowers
a coffee table	a rug	some books	three pictures



1. *There was a clock* on the wall near the window.
2. _____ on the floor.
3. _____ on the wall near the door.
4. _____ in the middle of the room.
5. _____ on the table.
6. _____ on the shelves.
7. _____ in the corner near the door.
8. _____ opposite the armchair.

39.2 Write *there was / there wasn't / was there / there were / there weren't / were there.*

1. I was hungry but *there wasn't* anything to eat.
2. *Were there* any phone messages for me yesterday?
3. _____ a soccer game on TV last night. Did you see it?
4. "We stayed at a very nice hotel." "Really? _____ a swimming pool?"
5. "Did you buy any cherries?" "No, _____ any at the store."
6. "_____ many people at the meeting?" "No, very few."
7. We didn't visit the museum. _____ enough time.
8. I'm sorry I'm late. _____ a lot of traffic.
9. Twenty years ago _____ many tourists here. Now there are a lot.

39.3 Write *there + is / are / was / were / has been / have been / will be.*

1. *There was* a good movie on TV last night.
2. _____ twenty-four hours in a day.
3. _____ a party at work last Friday, but I didn't go.
4. "Where can I buy a newspaper?" "_____ a newsstand at the end of the block."
5. "Why are those police officers outside the bank?" "_____ a robbery."
6. When we got to the theater, _____ a long line outside.
7. When you arrive tomorrow, _____ somebody at the airport to meet you.
8. Ten years ago _____ five hundred children at the school. Now _____ more than a thousand.
9. Last week I went back to the town where I was born. It's very different now. _____ a lot of changes.
10. I think everything will be OK. I don't think _____ any problems.

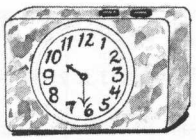
UNIT 40

It . . .

A

We use **it** for time/day/distance/weather.

Time

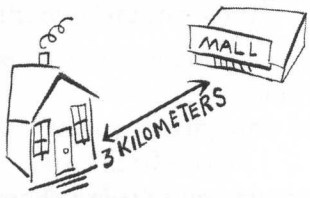


- What time is **it**?
- **It**'s half past ten.
- **It**'s late.
- **It**'s time to go home.

Day

- What day is **it**?
- **It**'s Thursday.
- **It**'s March 16th.
- **It** was my birthday yesterday.

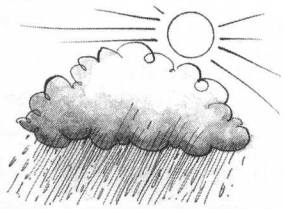
Distance



- **It**'s three kilometers from our house to the mall.
- How far is **it** from New York to Los Angeles?
- **It**'s a long way from here to the airport.
- We can walk home. **It** isn't far.

We use **far** in questions (**is it far**?) and negatives (**it isn't far**).
We use **a long way** in positive sentences (**it's a long way**).

Weather



- **It**'s raining. **It** isn't raining. Is **it** snowing?
- **It** rains a lot here. **It** didn't rain yesterday. Does **it** snow very often?
- **It**'s warm/hot/cold/nice/cloudy/clear/dry/humid/windy/sunny/foggy/dark, etc.
- **It**'s a nice day today.

Compare **it** and **there**:

- **It rains** a lot in the winter.
  It's very **rainy** in the winter.
  There is a lot of **rain** in the winter.
- **It was** very **windy** yesterday.
  There was a strong **wind** yesterday.

B

It's nice **to . . .**, etc.

It's	easy/difficult/impossible/dangerous/safe/expensive/interesting/nice/wonderful/terrible, etc.	to . . .

- **It** 's nice **to see you again** . (**it** = to see you again)
- **It's** impossible **to understand her.** (**it** = to understand her)
- **It wasn't** easy **to find your house.** (**it** = to find your house)

C

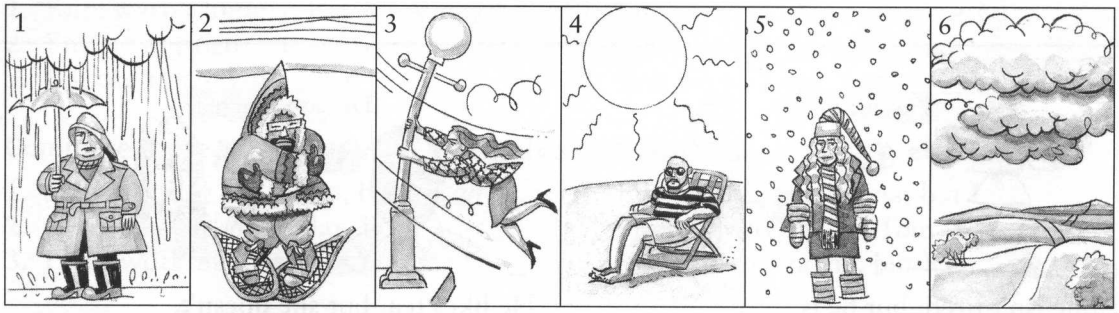
Don't forget to use **it.**

- **It**'s raining again. (*not* Is raining again)
- Is **it** true that you are moving to Australia? (*not* Is true that . . . ?)

There is **Unit 38**

Exercises

40.1 Write about the weather in the pictures. Use *It's . . . .*



1. *It's raining.*
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____

40.2 Write *it's* (it is) or *is it*.

1. What time *is it* ?
2. We must go now. _____ very late.
3. _____ true that Bill can fly a helicopter?
4. "What day _____ today? Tuesday?" "No, _____ Wednesday."
5. _____ OK to call you at the office?
6. _____ twelve kilometers from downtown to the airport.
7. "Do you want to walk to the restaurant?" "I don't know. How far _____ ?"
8. _____ Linda's birthday today. She's 27.
9. I don't believe it! _____ impossible.

40.3 Write questions with *How far . . . ?*

1. (here / the station) *How far is it from here to the station?*
2. (the hotel / the beach) How _____ ?
3. (New York / Washington) _____
4. (your house / the airport) _____

40.4 Write *it* or *there*.

1. *It* rains a lot in the winter.
2. *There* was a strong wind yesterday.
3. _____ was a nice day yesterday.
4. We can't go skiing. _____ isn't any snow.
5. _____'s hot in this room. Open a window.
6. I was afraid because _____ was very dark.
7. _____ was a storm last night. Did you hear it?
8. _____'s a long way from here to the nearest gas station.

40.5 Complete the sentences. Choose from the boxes.

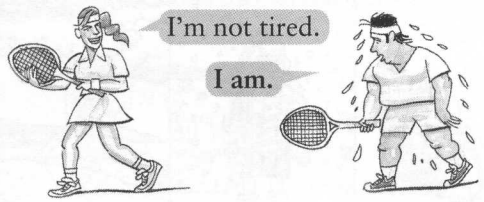
it's			to		
	easy	dangerous		work in this office	~~get up early~~
	~~difficult~~	nice		visit different places	go out alone
	impossible	interesting		see you again	make friends

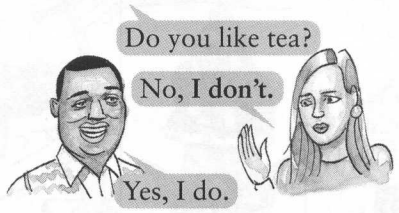
1. If you go to bed late, *it's difficult to get up early* in the morning.
2. Hello, Jill. _____ How are you?
3. _____ There is too much noise.
4. Everybody is very nice at work. _____
5. I like traveling. _____
6. Some cities are not safe. _____ at night.

UNIT 41

I am, I don't, etc.

A





She isn't tired, but **he is.**
(= he is tired)

He likes tea, but **she doesn't.**
(= she doesn't like tea)

In these examples, it is not necessary to repeat some words (he is *tired,* she doesn't *like tea*).

You can use these verbs in the same way.

am/is/are
was/were
have/has
do/does/did
can
will
might
should

- I haven't seen the movie, but my sister **has.** (= She has seen the movie.)
- *A:* Please help me.
  B: I'm sorry. I **can't.** (= I can't help you.)
- *A:* Are you tired?
  B: I **was,** but I'**m not** now. (= I was tired, but I'm not tired now.)
- *A:* Do you think Marta will call tonight?
  B: She **might.** (= she might call)
- *A:* Are you going to study tonight?
  B: I **should,** but I probably **won't.**
  (= I should study, but I probably won't study.)

You *cannot* use **'m/'s/'ve,** etc. *(short forms)* in this way. You must use **am/is/have,** etc.

- She isn't tired, but he **is.** (*not* . . . but he's)

But you *can* use **isn't/haven't/won't,** etc. (negative short forms).

- My sister has seen the movie, but I **haven't.**
- "Are you and Jim working tomorrow?" "I am, but Jim **isn't.**"

B

You can use **I am / I'm not,** etc., after **Yes** and **No.**

- "Are you tired?" "Yes, I **am.** / No, I'**m not.**"
- "Will Alan be here tomorrow?" "Yes, he **will.** / No, he **won't.**"
- "Is there a bus to the airport?" "Yes, there **is.** / No, there **isn't.**"

C

We use **do/does** for the *simple present* (see Units 6–7).

- I don't like hot weather, but Megan **does.** (= Megan likes hot weather.)
- Megan works hard, but I **don't.** (= I don't work hard.)
- "Do you enjoy your work?" "Yes, I **do.**"

We use **did** for the *simple past* (see Unit 12).

- *A:* Did you and John like the movie?
  B: I **did,** but John **didn't.** (= I liked it, but John didn't like it.)
- "I had a good time." "I **did** too." (= I had a good time too.)
- "Did it rain yesterday?" "No, it **didn't.**"

***You have? / have you?,* etc. Unit 42** ***So am I / neither do I,* etc. Unit 43**

Exercises

41.1 Complete these sentences. Use only one verb (*is/have/can,* etc.) each time.

1. Kate wasn't hungry, but we *were* .
2. I'm not married, but my sister _____ .
3. Bill can't help you, but I _____ .
4. I haven't read the book, but Ed _____ .
5. Ken won't be here, but Sue _____ .
6. You weren't late, but I _____ .

41.2 Complete these sentences with a negative verb (*isn't/haven't/can't,* etc.).

1. Sam can play the piano, but I *can't* .
2. Marta is working today, but I _____ .
3. I was working, but my friends _____ .
4. Bob has been to China, but I _____ .
5. I'm ready to go, but Tom _____ .
6. I've seen the movie, but Kim _____ .

41.3 Complete these sentences with *do/does/did* or *don't/doesn't/didn't.*

1. I don't like hot weather, but Megan *does* .
2. Megan likes hot weather, but I *don't* .
3. My mother wears glasses, but my father _____ .
4. You don't know Paul very well, but I _____ .
5. I didn't enjoy the party, but my friends _____ .
6. I don't watch TV much, but Peter _____ .
7. Kate lives in Canada, but her parents _____ .
8. You had breakfast this morning, but I _____ .

41.4 Complete the sentences. Write about yourself and other people.

1. I didn't *go out last night, but my friends did* .
2. I like _____ , but _____ .
3. I don't _____ , but _____ .
4. I'm _____ .
5. I haven't _____ .

41.5 Write a verb – positive or negative.

1. "Are you tired?" "I *was* earlier, but I'm not now."
2. Fu Chen is happy today, but he _____ yesterday.
3. The stores aren't open yet, but the post office _____ .
4. I don't have a video camera, but I know somebody who _____ .
5. I would like to help you, but I'm sorry, I _____ .
6. I don't usually go to work by car, but I _____ yesterday.
7. *A:* Have you ever been to Alaska?
   B: No, but Sandra _____ . She went there on vacation last year.
8. "Do you and Luke watch TV a lot?" "I _____, but Luke doesn't."
9. "Do you think Diane will pass her driving test?" "Yes, I'm sure she _____ ."
10. "Are you going out tonight?" "I _____ . I don't know for sure."

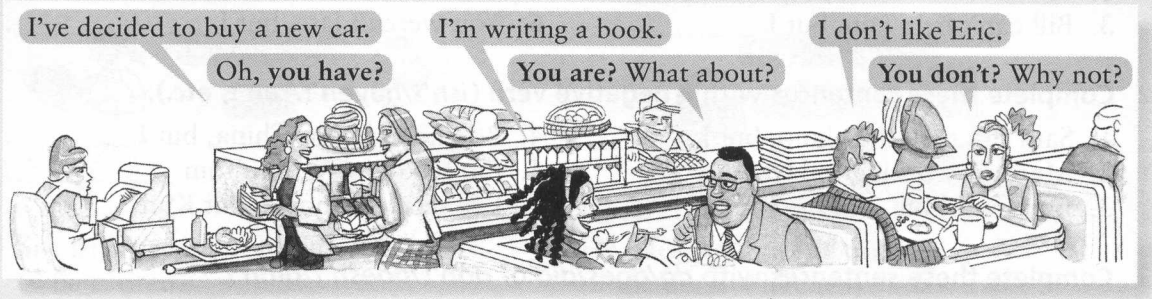
41.6 Answer these questions about yourself. Use *Yes, I have. / No, I'm not.,* etc.

1. Are you Canadian? *No, I'm not.*
2. Do you have a car? _____
3. Is it snowing? _____
4. Do you feel OK? _____
5. Are you hungry? _____
6. Do you like classical music? _____
7. Will you be in Rome tomorrow? _____
8. Have you ever been to Oslo? _____
9. Did you go out last night? _____
10. Were you asleep at 1:00 A.M.? _____

UNIT 42

You have? / have you? you are? / are you?, etc.

A



You can say **you have? / you are? / you don't?**, etc., to show that you are interested or surprised.

- "**You're** late." "**I am?** I'm sorry."
- "**I was** sick last week." "**You were?** I didn't know that."
- "**It's** raining again." "**It is?** It was sunny ten minutes ago."
- "**There's** a letter for you." "**There is?** Where is it?"
- "**Bill can't** drive." "**He can't?** I didn't know that."
- "**I'm not** hungry." "**You aren't?** I am."
- "**Sue isn't** at work today." "**She isn't?** Is she sick?"

Use **do/does** for the *simple present* and **did** for the *simple past.*

- "**I speak** four languages." "**You do?** Which ones?"
- "**Tom doesn't** eat meat." "**He doesn't?** Does he eat fish?"
- "**Nicole got** married last week." "**She did?** Really?"

B

Tag questions

You can use **have you? / is it? / can't she?**, etc., at the end of a sentence.

These "mini-questions" are called *tag questions.*

A *positive* sentence → a *negative* tag question

It's a nice day,	**isn't it?**	Yes, it's perfect.
Karen lives in Seattle,	**doesn't she?**	Yes, that's right.
You closed the window,	**didn't you?**	Yes, I did.
Those shoes are nice,	**aren't they?**	Yes, very nice.
Tom will be here soon,	**won't he?**	Yes, probably.

A *negative* sentence → a *positive* tag question

That isn't your car,	**is it?**	No, my car is white.
You haven't met my mother,	**have you?**	No, I haven't.
Lucia doesn't have a car,	**does she?**	No, she doesn't.
You won't be late,	**will you?**	No, I'm never late.

***I am, I don't,* etc. Unit 41**

Exercises

42.1 **Answer with *You do? / She doesn't? / They did?*, etc.**

1.	I speak four languages.	*You do?*	Which ones?
2.	I work in a bank.	_____	I work in a bank too.
3.	I didn't go to work yesterday.	_____	Were you sick?
4.	Paula doesn't like me.	_____	Why not?
5.	You look tired.	_____	I feel fine.
6.	Julia called me last night.	_____	What did she say?

42.2 **Answer with *You have? / You haven't? / She did? / She didn't?*, etc.**

1.	I've decided to buy a new car.	*You have?*	What kind?
2.	Tim doesn't eat meat.	*He doesn't?*	Does he eat fish?
3.	I've already had dinner.	_____	When did you have it last?
4.	Sue can't drive.	_____	She should learn.
5.	I was born in Italy.	_____	I didn't know that.
6.	I didn't sleep well last night.	_____	Was the bed uncomfortable?
7.	There's a good movie on TV.	_____	Are you going to watch it?
8.	I'm not happy.	_____	Why not?
9.	I saw Amy last week.	_____	How is she?
10.	Anne works in a factory.	_____	What kind of factory?
11.	I won't be here next week.	_____	Where will you be?
12.	The clock isn't working.	_____	It was working yesterday.

42.3 **Complete these sentences with a tag question (*isn't it? / haven't you?*, etc.).**

1.	It's a nice day, *isn't it* ?	Yes, it's beautiful.
2.	These flowers are nice, _____ ?	Yes, what kind are they?
3.	Anne was at the party, _____ ?	Yes, but I didn't speak to her.
4.	You've been to Chile, _____ ?	Yes, many times.
5.	You speak Thai, _____ ?	Yes, but not very well.
6.	Bill looks tired, _____ ?	Yes, he works very hard.
7.	You'll help me, _____ ?	Yes, of course I will.

42.4 **Complete these sentences. Use a positive tag question (*is it? / do you?* etc.) or a negative tag question (*isn't it? / don't you?*, etc.).**

1.	You haven't eaten yet, *have you* ?	No, I'm not hungry.
2.	You aren't tired, _____ ?	No, I feel fine.
3.	Mary is a very nice person, _____ ?	Yes, everybody likes her.
4.	You can play the piano, _____ ?	Yes, but I'm not very good.
5.	You don't know Mike's sister, _____ ?	No, I've never met her.
6.	John went to college, _____ ?	Yes, she studied economics.
7.	The movie wasn't very good, _____ ?	No, it was terrible.
8.	Anne lives near you, _____ ?	Yes, just a few blocks away.
9.	You won't tell her what I said, _____ ?	No, of course not.

UNIT 43

Too/either and *so am I / neither do I*, etc.

A too and either

We use **too** and **either** at the end of a sentence.

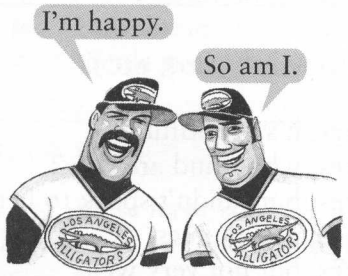
We use **too** after a *positive* verb.

- *A:* I'm happy.
  B: I'm happy **too.** (*or* I am too.)
- *A:* I liked the movie.
  B: I **liked** it **too.** (*or* I did too.)
- Mei Lan is a doctor. Her husband is a doctor **too.** (*or* Her husband is too.)

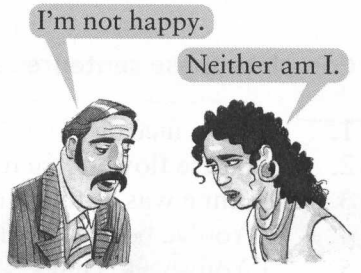
We use **either** after a *negative* verb.

- *A:* I'm not happy.
  B: **I'm not** happy **either.** (*or* I'm not either.)
- *A:* I can't cook.
  B: I **can't either.**
- Bill doesn't watch TV. He **doesn't** read newspapers **either.**

B so am I / neither do I, etc.



so neither	am/is/are . . . was/were . . . do/does . . . did . . . have/has . . . can . . . will . . . would . . .



so am I = I am too
so do I = I do too (etc.)

- *A:* **I'm** working.
  B: **So am I.** (= I'm working too.)
- *A:* **I was** late for work today.
  B: **So was John.** (= John was late too.)
- *A:* **I have** a key.
  B: **So do I.**
- *A:* **We went** to the movies last night.
  B: You did? **So did we.**
- *A:* **I'd** like to go to Australia.
  B: **So would I.**

neither am I = I'm not either
neither can I = I can't either (etc.)

- *A:* **I haven't** been to China.
  B: **Neither have I.** (= I haven't either.)
- *A:* **Anne can't** cook.
  B: **Neither can Tom.** (= Tom can't either.)
- *A:* **I won't** (= will not) be here tomorrow.
  B: **Neither will I.**
- *A:* **I never go** to the movies.
  B: **Neither do I.**

Remember: so **am I** (*not* so I am), neither **have I** (*not* neither I have)

Exercises

43.1 Write *too* or *either.*

1.	I'm happy.	I'm happy *too* .
2.	I'm not hungry.	I'm not hungry _____ .
3.	I'm going out.	I'm going out _____ .
4.	It rained on Saturday.	It rained on Sunday _____ .
5.	Gloria can't ride a bicycle.	She can't drive a car _____ .
6.	I don't like to go shopping.	I don't like to go shopping _____ .
7.	Tracy's mother is a teacher.	Her father is a teacher _____ .

43.2 Answer with *So . . . I* (*So am I / So do I / So can I,* etc.).

1.	I went to bed late last night.	*So did I.*
2.	I'm thirsty.	
3.	I've already read this book.	
4.	I need a vacation.	
5.	I'll be late tomorrow.	
6.	I was very tired this morning.	

Answer with *Neither . . . I.*

7.	I can't go to the party.	
8.	I didn't call Alex last night.	
9.	I haven't eaten lunch yet.	
10.	I'm not going out tonight.	
11.	I don't have much time.	

43.3 You are talking to Maria. Write true sentences about yourself. Where possible, use *So . . . I* or *Neither . . . I.* Look at these examples carefully:

MARIA

I'm tired today. **You can say:** So am I. **or** I'm not.

I don't work very hard. **You can say:** Neither do I. **or** I do.

YOU

1.	I'm studying English.	
2.	I can ride a bicycle.	
3.	I'm not American.	
4.	I like to cook.	
5.	I don't like cold weather.	
6.	I slept well last night.	
7.	I've never been to India.	
8.	I don't write letters very often.	
9.	I'm going out tomorrow night.	
10.	I wasn't sick last week.	
11.	I didn't watch TV last night.	
12.	I go to the movies a lot.	

UNIT 44

Isn't . . . , haven't . . . , don't . . . , etc. (Negatives)

A

We use **not** (**n't**) in negative sentences.

Positive → Negative

am	**am not** (**'m not**)
is	**is not** (**isn't** *or* **'s not**)
are	**are not** (**aren't** *or* **'re not**)
was	**was not** (**wasn't**)
were	**were not** (**weren't**)
have	**have not** (**haven't**)
has	**has not** (**hasn't**)
will	**will not** (**won't**)
can	**cannot** (**can't**)
could	**could not** (**couldn't**)
should	**should not** (**shouldn't**)
would	**would not** (**wouldn't**)
must	**must not**

- I'**m not** tired.
- It **isn't** (*or* It's **not**) raining.
- They **aren't** (*or* They'**re not**) here.
- Brian **wasn't** hungry.
- The stores **weren't** open.
- I **haven't** finished my work.
- Sue **hasn't** been to Mexico.
- We **won't** be here tomorrow.
- Eric **can't** drive.
- I **couldn't** sleep last night.
- You **shouldn't** work so hard.
- I **wouldn't** like to be an actor.
- They **must not** have a car.

B

don't/doesn't/didn't

Simple present negative	I/we/you/they **do not** (**don't**) he/she/it **does not** (**doesn't**)	**work/live/have,** etc.
Simple past negative	I/they/he/she, etc. **did not** (**didn't**)	

Positive → Negative

I **want** to go out. → I **don't want** to go out.
They **work** hard. → They **don't work** hard.
Liz **has** a car. → Liz **doesn't have** a car.
My father **likes** his job. → My father **doesn't like** his job.

I **got** up early this morning. → I **didn't get** up early this morning.
They **worked** hard yesterday. → They **didn't work** hard yesterday.
We **played** tennis. → We **didn't play** tennis.
Diane **had** dinner with us. → Diane **didn't have** dinner with us.

don't . . .

Look! → **Don't look!**
Wait for me. → **Don't wait** for me.

Sometimes **do** is the main verb.

Do something! → **Don't do** anything!
Sue **does** a lot on weekends. → Sue **doesn't do** much on weekends.
I **did** what you said. → I **didn't do** what you said.

Simple Present Negative Unit 6 **Simple Past Negative** Unit 12
Don't! Unit 37 ***Why isn't/don't . . . ?*** Unit 45

Exercises

44.1 Make these sentences negative.

1. He's gone out. *He hasn't gone out.*
2. They're married. _____
3. I've had dinner. _____
4. It's cold today. _____
5. We'll be late. _____
6. You should go. _____

44.2 Make these sentences negative. Use *don't/doesn't/didn't.*

1. She saw me. *She didn't see me.*
2. I like cheese. _____
3. They understood. _____
4. He lives here. _____
5. Go away! _____
6. I did the dishes. _____

44.3 Make these sentences negative.

1. She can swim. *She can't swim.*
2. They've arrived. _____
3. I went to the bank. _____
4. He speaks Japanese. _____
5. We were angry. _____
6. He'll be pleased. _____
7. Call me tonight. _____
8. It rained yesterday. _____
9. I could hear them. _____
10. I have a camera. _____

44.4 Complete these sentences with a negative verb (*isn't/haven't/don't*, etc.).

1. They aren't rich. They *don't* have much money.
2. "Would you like something to eat?" "No, thank you. I _____ hungry."
3. I _____ find my glasses. Have you seen them?
4. Eric _____ write letters very often. He prefers to use the phone.
5. We can walk to the station from here. It _____ very far.
6. "Where's Kim?" "I _____ know. I _____ seen her today."
7. Be careful! _____ fall!
8. I _____ have a ticket, so I couldn't go to the concert.
9. I've been to Japan many times, but I _____ been to Korea.
10. Julia _____ be here tomorrow. She's going away.
11. "Who broke that window?" "Not me. I _____ do it."
12. We didn't see what happened. We _____ looking at the time.

44.5

You ask Gary some questions. He answers "Yes" or "No." Write sentences about Gary, positive or negative.

Are you married?	No.	1. *He isn't married.*
Do you live in Los Angeles?	Yes.	2. *He lives in Los Angeles.*
Were you born in Los Angeles?	No.	3. _____
Do you like Los Angeles?	No.	4. _____
Would you like to live someplace else?	Yes.	5. _____
Can you drive?	Yes.	6. _____
Have you traveled abroad?	No.	7. _____
Do you read newspapers?	No.	8. _____
Are you interested in politics?	No.	9. _____
Do you watch TV at night?	Yes.	10. _____
Did you watch TV last night?	No.	11. _____
Did you go out last night?	Yes.	12. _____

UNIT 45

Is it . . . ?, Have you . . . ?, Do they . . . ?, etc.

A

Positive you are You are eating.

Question are you Are you eating? What are you eating?

Positive *subject + verb*			*Question* *verb + subject*	
I	am late.	→	Am	I late?
That seat	is free.	→	Is	that seat free?
She	was angry.	→	Why was	she angry?
David	has gone out.	→	Where has	David gone?
You	have been to Japan.	→	Have	you been to Japan?
They	will be here soon.	→	When will	they be here?
Paula	can swim.	→	Can	Paula swim?

Be careful with word order – the *subject* is after the first *verb*.

- Where **has David** gone? (*not* Where has gone David?)
- **Are those people** waiting for something? (*not* Are waiting . . . ?)
- When **was the telephone** invented? (*not* When was invented . . . ?)

B

do . . . ? / does . . . ? / did . . . ?

Simple present questions	**do** I/we/you/they **does** he/she/it	**work/live/have** (etc.) . . . ?
Simple past questions	**did** you/she/they (etc.)	

Positive			*Question*	
They	work hard.	→	Do they	work hard?
You	watch television.	→	How often do you	watch television?
Chris	has a car.	→	Does Chris	have a car?
She	gets up early.	→	What time does she	get up?
They	worked hard.	→	Did they	work hard?
You	had dinner.	→	What did you	have for dinner?
She	got up early.	→	What time did she	get up?

Sometimes **do** is the *main verb* (do you **do** / did he **do**, etc.).

- What do you usually **do** on weekends?
- "What does your brother **do**?" "He works in a bank."
- "I broke my finger last week." "How did you **do** that?"

C

Why isn't . . . ? / Why don't . . . ?, etc. (**Why** + *negative*)

- Where's Pedro? **Why isn't he** here? (*not* Why he isn't here?)
- **Why can't Ratana** come to the meeting tomorrow? (*not* Why Ratana can't . . . ?)
- **Why didn't you** call me last night?

Simple Present Questions Unit 7 **Simple Past Questions** Unit 12
Questions Units 46–47 ***What/which/how . . . ?*** Units 48–49

Exercises

45.1 Write questions.

1. I can swim. (and you?) *Can you swim?*
2. I work hard. (and Jim?) *Does Jim work hard?*
3. I was late this morning. (and you?) _____
4. I've had lunch. (and Anne?) _____
5. I'll be here tomorrow. (and you?) _____
6. I'm going out tonight. (and Paul?) _____
7. I like my job. (and you?) _____
8. I live near here. (and Nicole?) _____
9. I enjoyed the movie. (and you?) _____
10. I had a nice vacation. (and you?) _____

45.2 YOU **You are talking to a friend about driving. Write the questions.**

1. (have / a car?) *Do you have a car?*
2. (use / a lot?) _____ it _____ ?
3. (use / yesterday?) _____
4. (enjoy driving?) _____
5. (a good driver?) _____
6. (ever / have / an accident?) _____

Yes, I do.
Yes, almost every day.
Yes, to go to work.
Not very much.
I think I am.
No, never.

45.3 Put the words in the right order. All the sentences are questions.

1. (has / gone / where / David?) *Where has David gone?*
2. (working / Rachel / is / today?) *Is Rachel working today?*
3. (the children / what / are / doing?) What _____ ?
4. (made / is / how / cheese?) _____
5. (to the party / coming / is / your sister?) _____
6. (you / the truth / tell / don't / why?) _____
7. (your guests / have / yet / arrived?) _____
8. (leave / what time / your plane / does?) _____
9. (your car / in the accident / was / damaged?) _____
10. (to work / Anne / why / go / didn't?) _____

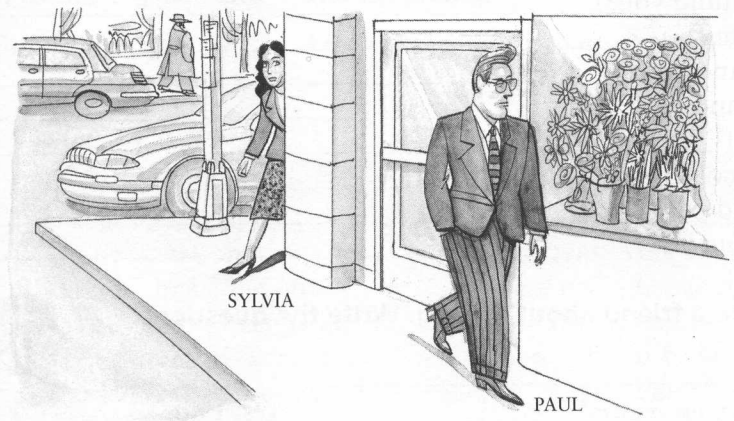
45.4 Complete the questions.

1. I want to go out. — Where *do you want to go* ?
2. Al and Joe aren't going to the party. — Why *aren't they going* ?
3. I'm reading. — What _____ ?
4. Sue went to bed early. — What time _____ ?
5. My parents are going on vacation. — When _____ ?
6. I saw Tom a few days ago. — Where _____ ?
7. I can't come to the party. — Why _____ ?
8. I need some money. — How much _____ ?
9. Angela doesn't like me. — Why _____ ?
10. It sometimes rains. — How often _____ ?
11. I did the shopping. — When _____ ?

UNIT 46

Who saw you? Who did you see?

A



Sylvia saw Paul.

Who **saw** Paul?
Sylvia. (Sylvia saw him.)

Who **did** Sylvia **see**?
Paul. (She saw Paul.)

Sylvia saw **Paul**.

subject

Somebody saw Paul.

Who saw Paul?

Sylvia. (Sylvia saw him.)

Who is the *subject*.
Paul is the *object*.

object

Sylvia saw **somebody**.

Who did Sylvia see?

Paul. (She saw Paul.)

Who is the *object*.
Sylvia is the *subject*.

B

In these questions, **who/what** is the subject:

- **Who lives** in this house? (= somebody lives in it – who?) (*not* Who does live)
- **What happened?** (= something happened – what?) (*not* What did happen?)
- **What's happening?** (**What's** = What is)
- **Who's got** my car keys? (**Who's** = Who has)

In these questions, **who/what** is the object:

- **Who** did you meet yesterday? (= you met somebody – who?)
- **What** did Paul say? (= Paul said something – what?)
- **Who** are you calling?
- **What** was Sylvia wearing?

Compare:

- Justin likes chocolate. → **Who likes** chocolate? – Justin.
  What does Justin like? – Chocolate.
- Lucas won some money. → **Who won** some money? – Lucas.
  What did Lucas win? – Some money.

C

Use **who** for people (somebody). Use **what** for things, ideas, etc. (something).

- **Who** is your favorite **singer**?
- **What** is your favorite **song**?

Questions Units 45, 47 ***What . . . ?, Which . . . ?, How . . . ?*** Unit 48

Exercises

46.1 Write questions with *who* or *what*. In these questions, *who/what* is the subject.

1. Somebody broke the window. — *Who broke the window?*
2. Something fell off the shelf. — What _____?
3. Somebody wants to see you. — _____ me?
4. Somebody took my umbrella. — _____
5. Something made me sick. — _____
6. Somebody is coming. — _____

46.2 Write questions with *who* or *what* (subject or object).

1. I bought something. — *What did you buy?*
2. Somebody lives in this house. — *Who lives in this house?*
3. I called somebody. — _____
4. Something happened last night. — _____
5. Somebody knows the answer. — _____
6. Somebody did the dishes. — _____
7. Jane did something. — _____
8. Something woke me up. — _____
9. Somebody saw the accident. — _____
10. I saw somebody. — _____
11. Somebody has my pen. — _____
12. This word means something. — _____

46.3 You want the missing information (XXXXX). Write questions with *who* or *what*.

1. I lost XXXXX yesterday, but fortunately XXXXX found it and gave it back to me. — *What did you lose?* / *Who found it?*
2. XXXXX called me last night. She wanted XXXXX. — _____
3. I needed some advice, so I asked XXXXX. He said XXXXX. — _____
4. I hear that XXXXX got married last week. XXXXX told me. — _____
5. I met XXXXX on my way home tonight. She told me XXXXX. — _____
6. Steve and I played tennis yesterday. XXXXX won. After the game, we XXXXX. — _____
7. It was my birthday last week, and I got some presents. XXXXX gave me a book, and Catherine gave me XXXXX. — _____

UNIT 47

Who is she talking to? What is it like?

A

Julia is talking to somebody.

Who is she talking **to**?
preposition

In questions beginning **Who . . . ? / What . . . ? / Where . . . ? / Which . . . ?**, *prepositions* (**to/from/with,** etc.) usually go at the end.

- "**Where** are you **from?**" "I'm from Thailand."
- "John was afraid." "**What** was he afraid **of?**"
- "**Who** do these books belong **to?**" "They're mine."
- "Tom's father is in the hospital." "**Which hospital** is he **in?**"
- "Kate is going on vacation." "**Who** is she going **with?**"
- "Can we talk?" "Sure. **What** do you want to talk **about?**"

B

What's it like? / What are they like?, etc.

What's it like? = What **is** it like?

What's it like? = tell me something about it (is it good or bad?, big or small?, old or new?, etc.)

When we say, "What is it like?," **like** is a *preposition*.
It is not the *verb* **like.** (**Do** you **like** your new house?)

- *A:* There's a new restaurant near my house.
  B: **What's** it **like?** Is it good?
  A: I don't know. I haven't eaten there yet.
- *A:* **What's** your new teacher **like?**
  B: She's really good. We learn a lot.
- *A:* I met Nicole's parents yesterday.
  B: You did? **What** are they **like?**
  A: They're very nice.
- *A:* Did you have a good vacation? **What** was the weather **like?**
  B: It was great. It was sunny every day.

Questions Units 45–46 ***What . . . ?, Which . . . ?, How . . . ?*** Unit 48 **Prepositions** Units 101–108

Exercises

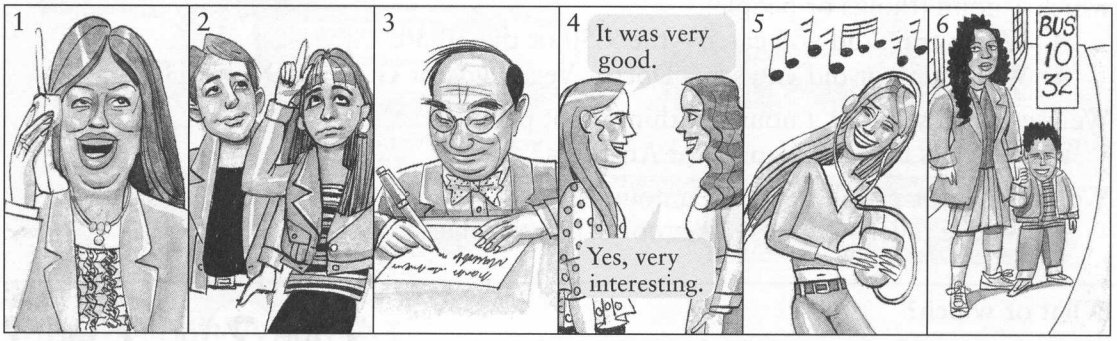
47.1 You want the missing information (XXXXX). Write questions with *Who* or *What*.

1. The letter is from XXXXX.
2. I'm looking for a XXXXX.
3. I went to the movies with XXXXX.
4. The movie was about XXXXX.
5. I gave the money to XXXXX.
6. The book was written by XXXXX.

Who is the letter from?
What _____ you _____ ?
_____
_____
_____
_____

47.2 Complete the questions about the pictures. Use one of these verbs + a preposition:

listen look ~~talk~~ talk wait write



1. Who *is she talking to* _____ ?
2. What _____ ?
3. Who _____ ?
4. What _____ ?
5. What _____ ?
6. Which bus _____ ?

47.3 Write questions with *Which*.

1. Tom's father is in the hospital.
2. We stayed at a hotel.
3. Jack belongs to a tennis club.
4. I went to high school in this town.

Which hospital is he in?
_____ you _____ ?
_____
_____

47.4 You want some information about another country. You ask somebody who has been there. Ask questions with *What is/are . . . like?*

1. (the roads) *What are the roads like?*
2. (the food) _____
3. (the people) _____
4. (the weather) _____

47.5 Ask questions with *What was/were . . . like?*

1. Your friend has just come back from a trip. Ask about the weather.
   What was the weather like?
2. Your friend has just come back from the movies. Ask about the movie.
   _____
3. Your friend has just finished a computer course. Ask about the classes.
   _____
4. Your friend has just come back from a business trip. Ask about the hotel.
   _____

UNIT 48

What . . . ?, Which . . . ?, and *How . . . ?*

A

what + *noun* (**What color . . . ? / What kind . . . ?**, etc.)

- **What color** is your car?
- **What size** is this shirt?
- **What day** is it today?
- **What kind** of job do you want? (*or* **What type** of job . . . ?)
- **What color** are your eyes?
- **What nationality** is she?
- **What time** is it?

what without a noun

- **What**'s your favorite color?
- **What** do you want to do tonight?

B

which + noun (things or people)

- **Which train** did you catch – the 9:50 or the 10:30?
- **Which doctor** did you see – Doctor Vega, Doctor Gray, or Doctor Hill?

We use **which** without a noun for things, not people.

- **Which** is bigger – Canada or Australia?

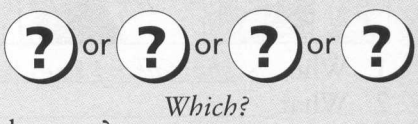
We use **who** for people (without a noun).

- **Who** is taller – Bill or Sam? (*not* Which is taller?)

C

What or **which**?

We use **which** when we are thinking about a small number of possibilities (perhaps two, three, or four).



Which?

- We can go this way or that way. **Which way** should we go?
- There are four umbrellas here. **Which** is yours?

What is more general.

- **What** is the capital of Argentina? (of all the cities in Argentina)
- **What kind** of music do you like? (of all kinds of music)

Compare:

- **What color** are his eyes? (*not* Which color . . . ?)
  Which color do you prefer, **pink** or **yellow**?
- **What** is the longest river in the world?
  Which is the longest river – **the Mississippi, the Amazon,** or **the Nile**?

D

How . . . ?

- "**How** was the party last night?" "It was great."
- "**How** do you usually get to work?" "By bus."

You can use **how** + *adjective/adverb* (**how tall / how old / how often,** etc.).

"How	**tall** are you?" "I'm five feet 10."(five feet 10 inches *or* one meter 70)
	big is the house?" "Not very big."
	old is your mother?" "She's 45."
	far is it from here to the airport?" "Ten miles." (about 17 kilometers)
	often do you use your car?" "Every day."
	long have they been married?" "Ten years."
	much was the taxi?" "Ten dollars."

Questions Units 45–47 ***How long does it take . . . ?*** Unit 49 ***Which one(s)?*** Unit 76

Exercises

48.1 Write questions with *What . . . ?*

1. This shirt is nice. (size) *What size is it?*
2. I want a job. (kind) *What kind of job do you want?*
3. I've got a new sweater. (color) What _____?
4. I got up early this morning. (time) _____ get up?
5. I like music. (type) _____
6. I want to buy a car. (kind) _____

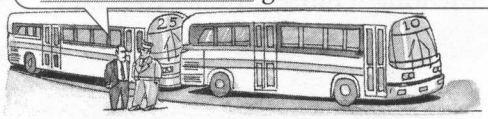
48.2 Complete the questions. Use *Which . . . ?*

1. *Which way* _____ should we go?

2. _____ is yours?

3. _____ do you want to see?

4. _____ goes to the museum?



48.3 Write *What, Which,* or *Who.*

1. *What* is that man's name?
2. *Which* way is it? Left or right?
3. Tea or coffee? _____ do you prefer?
4. "_____ day is it today?" "Friday."
5. This is a nice office. _____ desk is yours?
6. _____ is your favorite sport?
7. _____ is cheaper, meat or fish?
8. _____ is older, Anne or Justin?
9. _____ kind of camera do you have?
10. *A:* Mary has three cameras. *B:* _____ camera does she use most?

48.4 Complete the questions with *How* + adjective or adverb (*How high, How long,* etc.).

1. *How high* is Mount Everest? — Almost 9,000 meters.
2. _____ is it to the station? — About two miles.
3. _____ is Sarah? — She's 26.
4. _____ do the buses run? — Every ten minutes.
5. _____ is the water in the pool? — Two meters.
6. _____ have you lived here? — Almost three years.

48.5 Write questions with *How . . . ?*

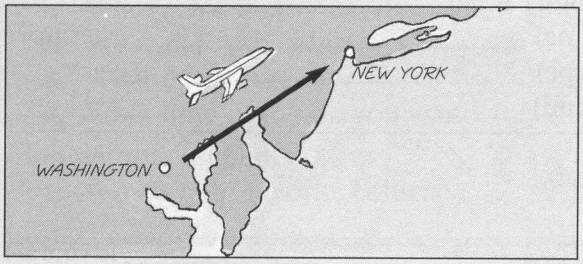
1. Are you five feet nine? Five feet ten? Five feet eleven? *How tall are you?*
2. Is this box one kilogram? Two? Three? _____
3. Are you 20 years old? 21? 22? _____
4. Did you spend $10? $15? $20? _____
5. Do you watch TV every day? Once a week? Never? _____
6. Is it 2,000 miles from New York to Los Angeles? 2,500? 3,000? _____

UNIT 49

How long does it take . . . ?

A

How long **does it take to get from . . . to . . . ?**



- "How long **does it take to get from** Washington **to** New York by plane?" "**It takes** one hour."
- "How long **does it take to get from** your house **to** the station by car?" "**It takes** ten minutes **to get from** my house **to** the station."

B

How long **does it take** (**to do** something)?

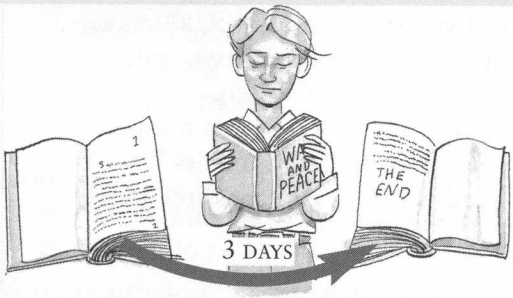
How long	does did will	it take to . . . ?

It		takes took will take	a week a long time three hours	to . . .
	doesn't didn't won't	take	long	

- How long **does it take to cross** the Atlantic by ship?
- How long **did it take to get** to the airport?
- **It takes** a long time **to learn** a language.
- **It took** about an hour **to get** to the airport.
- **It doesn't take** long **to cook** an omelet.
- **It won't take** long **to fix** the computer.

C

How long **does it take you** (**to do** something)?



I started reading the book on Monday.
I finished it on Wednesday night.
It took me three days **to read** it.

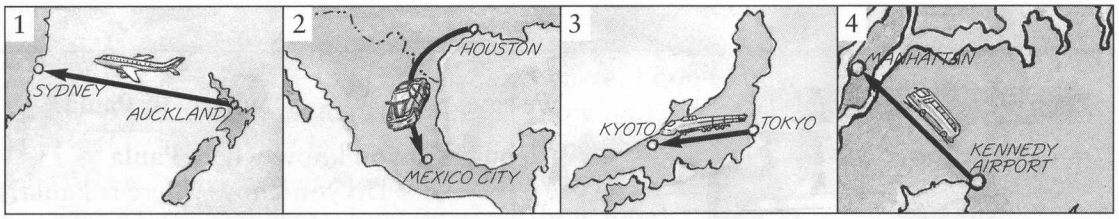
How long	does did will	it take	you Anne them	to . . . ?

It	takes took will take	me Anne them	a week a long time three hours	to . . .

- How long **will it take me to learn** to drive?
- **It takes me** 20 minutes **to get** to work in the morning.
- **It took Tom** an hour **to do** the shopping.
- **Did it take you** a long time **to find** a job?
- **It will take us** an hour **to cook** dinner.

Exercises

49.1 Look at the pictures and write questions with *How long . . . ?*



1. *How long does it take to get from Auckland to Sydney by plane?*
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____

49.2 How long does it take to do these things? Write full sentences.

1. fly from your city/country to New York
   It takes a day to fly from Tokyo to New York.
2. fly from your city/country to Australia
   _____
3. become a doctor in your country
   _____
4. walk from your house to the nearest school
   _____
5. get from your house to the nearest airport
   _____

49.3 Write questions with *How long did it take . . . ?*

1. She found a place to live. *How long did it take her to find a place to live?*
2. I walked to the station. _____ you _____ ?
3. He washed the windows. _____
4. I learned to ski. _____
5. They repaired the car. _____

49.4 Read the situations and write sentences with *It took . . . .*

1. I read a book last week. I started reading it on Monday. I finished it three days later.
   It took me three days to read the book.
2. We walked home last night. We left at 10 o'clock, and we got home at 10:20.
   _____
3. I learned to fly last year. I had my first flying lesson in January. I got my pilot's license nine months later.
   _____
4. Mark drove to Houston yesterday. He left home at eight o'clock and got to Houston at 10:00.
   _____
5. Nicole began looking for a job a long time ago. She found a job last week.
   _____
6. (Now write a true sentence about yourself.)
   _____

UNIT 50

Do you know where . . . ?, I don't know what . . . , etc.

A

We say: Where **is Paula**?

but: **Do you know** where **Paula is** ?
(*not* Do you know where is Paula?)

In the same way we say:
I know where **Paula is.**
I don't know where **Paula is.**
Can you tell me where **Paula is?**

Compare:

Who **are those people?** *but*
How old **is Nicole?**
What time **is it?**
Where **can I** go?
How much **is this camera?**
When **are you** leaving town?
Where **have they** gone?
What **was Dawn** wearing?

Do you know	who **those people are**	?
Can you tell me	how old **Nicole is**	
	what time **it is**	
	where **I can** go	
I know	how much **this camera is**	.
I don't know	when **you're** leaving town	
I don't remember	where **they've** gone	
	what **Dawn was** wearing	

B

Questions with **do/does/did** *(simple present* and *simple past)*

Where **does he live** ?

Do you know where **he lives** ? (*not* Do you know where does he live?)

Compare:

How **do airplanes** fly? *but*
What **does Jessica** want?
Why **did she** go home?
Where **did I** put the key?

Do you know	how **airplanes fly**	?
I don't know	what **Jessica wants**	
I don't remember	why **she went** home	.
I know	where **I put** the key	

C

Questions beginning **Is . . . ? / Do . . . ? / Can . . . ?**, etc. *(yes/no questions)*

Compare:

Is Jack at home? *but*
Have they left yet?
Can Brian swim?
Do they live near here?
Did anybody see you?

		Jack is at home	
Do you know	**if**	**they've** left yet	?
	or	**Brian can** swim	
I don't know	**whether**	**they live** near here	.
		anybody saw you	

You can use **if** or **whether** in these sentences:

- Do you know **if** they've got a car? *or* Do you know **whether** they've got a car?
- I don't know **if** he's married. *or* I don't know **whether** he's married.

Exercises

50.1 **Answer these questions with *I don't know where/when/why . . .*, etc.**

1.	Have your friends gone home?	(where) *I don't know where they've gone.*
2.	Is Kate in her office?	(where) I don't know _____.
3.	Is the building very old?	(how old) _____
4.	Will Paul be here soon?	(when) _____
5.	Was he angry because I was late?	(why) _____
6.	Has Mary lived here a long time?	(how long) _____

50.2 **Complete the sentences.**

1. (How do airplanes fly?) Do you know *how airplanes fly* ?
2. (Where does Susan work?) I don't know _____ .
3. (What did Peter say?) Do you remember _____ ?
4. (Why did he go home early?) I don't know _____ .
5. (What time does the meeting begin?) Do you know _____ ?
6. (How did the accident happen?) I don't remember _____ .

50.3 **Which is right?**

1. Do you know what time ~~is it~~ / it is? (*it is* is right)
2. Why are you / you are leaving?
3. I don't know where are they / they are going.
4. Can you tell me where is the museum / the museum is?
5. Where do you want / you want to go for vacation?
6. Do you know what do elephants eat / elephants eat?

50.4 **Write questions with *Do you know if . . . ?***

1. (Have they got a car?) *Do you know if they've got a car?*
2. (Are they married?) Do you know _____ ?
3. (Does Sue know Bill?) _____
4. (Will Justin be here tomorrow?) _____
5. (Did he pass his exam?) _____

50.5 **Write questions beginning with *Do you know . . . ?***

1. (What does Tomiko want?) *Do you know what Tomiko wants?*
2. (Where is Lynn?) Do _____ ?
3. (Is she working today?) _____
4. (What time does she start work?) _____
5. (Are the banks open tomorrow?) _____
6. (Where do Sarah and Tim live?) _____
7. (Did they go to Ji Yoo's party?) _____

50.6 **Use your own ideas to complete these sentences.**

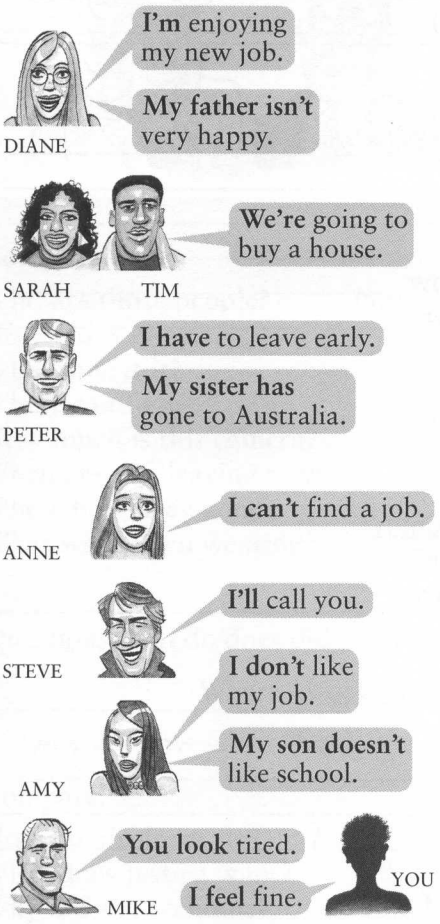
1. Do you know why *the train was late* ?
2. Do you know what time _____ ?
3. Excuse me, can you tell me where _____ ?
4. I don't know what _____ ?
5. Do you know if _____ ?

UNIT 51

She said that . . . He told me that . . .

A

Last week you went to a party. A lot of your friends were there. Here are some things they said to you.



Present		*Past*
am / is	→	was
are	→	were
have / has	→	had
can	→	could
will	→	would
do / does	→	did
look	→	looked
feel	→	felt
(etc.)		(etc.)

Today you meet Paul. You tell him about the party. You tell Paul what your friends said.

- Diane said that **she was** enjoying her new job.
- She said that **her father wasn't** very happy.
- Sarah and Tim said that **they were** going to buy a house.
- Peter said that **he had** to leave early.
- He said that **his sister had** gone to Australia.
- Anne said that **she couldn't** find a job.
- Steve said that **he would** call me.
- Amy said that **she didn't** like her job.
- She said that **her son didn't** like school.
- Mike said that **I looked** tired.
- I said that **I felt** fine.

B

say and **tell**

say (→ **said**)

- He **said** that he was tired. (*not* He said me)
- What did she **say to** you? (*not* say you)

Do not say: "he said me," "I said Anne," etc.

tell (→ **told**)

- He **told me** that he was tired. (*not* He told that . . .)
- What did she **tell you**? (*not* tell to you)

Do not say: "he told to me," "I told to Anne," etc.

C

You can say:

- He said **that** he was tired. *or* He said he was tired. (*without* that)
- Amy told me **that** she didn't like her job. *or* Amy told me she didn't like her job.

Exercises

51.1 Read what these people say and write sentences with *He/She/They said (that) . . . .*

I've lost my watch.

1. *He said he had lost his watch.*

I'm very busy.

2. _____

I can't go to the party.

3. _____

I have to go out.

4. _____

I'm learning Russian.

5. _____

I don't feel very well.

6. _____

We'll be home late.

7. _____

I've just gotten back from vacation.

8. _____

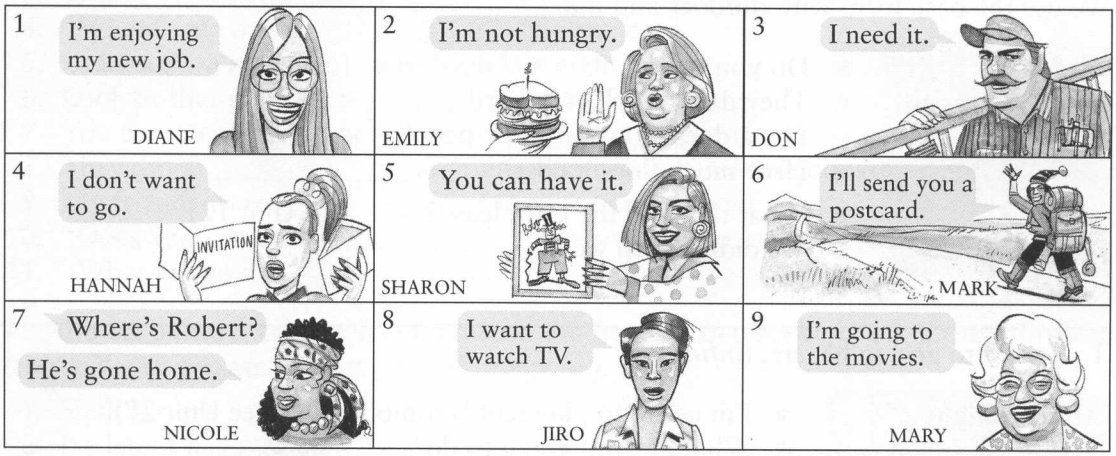
I'm going to buy a new computer.

9. _____

We don't have a key.

10. _____

51.2 Use the pictures to complete the sentences.



1. I saw Diane last week. She said *she was enjoying her new job*.
2. Emily didn't want anything to eat. She said _____.
3. I wanted to borrow Don's ladder but he said _____.
4. Hannah was invited to the party but she said _____.
5. Sharon told me she didn't want the picture. She said _____.
6. Mark just left on vacation. He said _____.
7. I was looking for Robert. Nicole said _____.
8. "Why did Jiro stay home?" "He said _____."
9. "Has Mary gone out?" "I think so. She said _____."

51.3 Write *say/said* or *tell/told*.

1. He *said* he was tired.
2. What did she *tell* you?
3. Anne _____ she didn't like Peter.
4. Jack _____ me that you were sick.
5. Please don't _____ Jim what happened.
6. Did Pat _____ she would be late?
7. The woman _____ she was a reporter.
8. The woman _____ us she was a reporter.
9. They asked me a lot of questions, but I didn't _____ them anything.
10. They asked me a lot of questions, but I didn't _____ anything.

UNIT 52 Work/working, go/going, do/doing

A

work/go/be, etc. *(base form)*

We use the base form with **will/can/must,** etc.

will **shall**	■ Amy **will be** here soon. ■ **Shall I open** the window?	(see Units 28–29)
might **may**	■ I **might call** you later. ■ **May I sit** here?	(see Unit 30)
can **could**	■ I **can't meet** you tomorrow. ■ **Could** you **pass** the salt, please?	(see Unit 31)
must	■ It's late. You **must be** tired.	(see Unit 32)
should	■ You **shouldn't work** so hard.	(see Unit 33)
would	■ **Would** you **like** some coffee?	(see Unit 35)

We use the base form with **do/does** and **did.**

do/does *(simple present)*	■ **Do** you **work**? ■ They **don't work** very hard. ■ Elena **doesn't know** many people. ■ How much **does** it **cost**?	(see Units 6–7)
did *(simple past)*	■ What time **did** the train **leave**? ■ We **didn't sleep** well.	(see Unit 12)

B

To work / to go / to be, etc. *(infinitive)*

(I'm) **going to . . .**	■ **I'm going to play** tennis tomorrow. ■ What **are** you **going to do**?	(see Unit 27)
(I) **have to . . .**	■ **I have to go** now. ■ Everybody **has to eat.**	(see Unit 34)
(I) **want to . . .**	■ Do you **want to go** out? ■ They don't **want to come** with us.	(see Unit 51)
(I) **would like to . . .**	■ **I'd like to talk** to you. ■ **Would** you **like to go** out?	(see Unit 35)
(I) **used to . . .**	■ Dave **used to work** in a factory.	(see Unit 25)

C

Working/going/playing, etc.

am/is/are + -ing *(present continuous)*	■ Please be quiet. **I'm working.** ■ Tom **isn't working** today. ■ What time **are** you **going** out?	(see Units 3–4, 8, 26)
was/were + -ing *(past continuous)*	■ It **was raining,** so we didn't go out. ■ What **were** you **doing** when the phone rang?	(see Units 13–14)

Verbs + *to . . .* and *-ing (I want to do / I enjoy doing)* Unit 53 ***Go* + *-ing*** Unit 56

Exercises

UNIT 52

52.1 Complete the sentences. Write: *call Paul* or *to call Paul*.

1. I'll *call Paul* .
2. I'm going *to call Paul* .
3. You can _____ .
4. Shall I _____ ?
5. I'd like _____ .
6. Do you have _____ ?
7. You should _____ .
8. I want _____ .
9. I might _____ .
10. Could you _____ ?

52.2 Complete the sentences with a verb from the list. Sometimes you need the base form (*work, go,* etc.) and sometimes you need *-ing* (*working, going,* etc.).

do / doing	get / getting	~~sleep / sleeping~~	watch / watching
eat / eating	go / going	stay / staying	wear / wearing
fly / flying	listen / listening	wait / waiting	~~work / working~~

1. Please be quiet. I'm *working* .
2. I feel tired today. I didn't *sleep* very well last night.
3. What time do you usually _____ up in the morning?
4. "Where are you _____ ?" "To the bank."
5. Did you _____ television last night?
6. Look at that plane! It's _____ very low.
7. You can turn off the radio. I'm not _____ to it.
8. They didn't _____ anything because they weren't hungry.
9. My friends were _____ for me when I arrived.
10. "Does Sharon always _____ glasses?" "No, only for reading."
11. "What are you _____ tonight?" "I'm _____ home."

52.3 Put the verb in the correct form. Choose the base form (*work/go,* etc.), the infinitive (*to work / to go,* etc.), or *-ing* (*working/going,* etc.).

1. Shall I *open* the window? (open)
2. It's late. I have *to go* now. (go)
3. Amy isn't *working* this week. She's on vacation. (work)
4. I'm tired. I don't want _____ out. (go)
5. It might _____ . Take an umbrella with you. (rain)
6. What time do you have _____ tomorrow morning? (leave)
7. I'm sorry I can't _____ you. (help)
8. My brother is a student. He's _____ physics. (study)
9. Would you like _____ on a trip around the world? (go)
10. When you saw Chol Su, what was he _____ ? (wear)
11. When you go to London, where are you going _____ ? (stay)
12. It's cold, but Carlos isn't wearing a jacket. He must _____ cold. (be)
13. "Where's Eric?" "He's _____ a bath." (take)
14. I used _____ a car, but I sold it last year. (have)
15. He spoke very quietly. I couldn't _____ him. (hear)
16. You don't look well. I don't think you should _____ to work today. (go)
17. I don't know what he said. I wasn't _____ to him. (listen)
18. I'm sorry I'm late. I had _____ a phone call. (make)
19. Medical students must _____ courses in biology and chemistry. (take)
20. May I please _____ your phone? (use)

UNIT 53

To . . . (I want to do) and *-ing (I enjoy doing)*

A

Verbs + to . . . (I want to do)

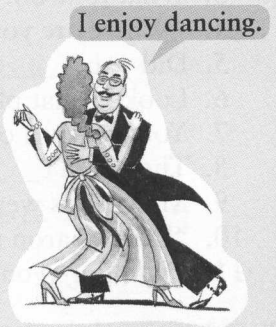
want	plan	decide	try	+ to . . . (to do / to work / to be, etc.)
hope	expect	offer	forget	
need	promise	refuse	learn	

- What do you **want to do** tonight?
- It's not very late. We don't **need to go** home yet.
- Tina has **decided to sell** her house.
- You **forgot to turn** off the light when you went out.
- My brother is **learning to drive.**
- I **tried to read** my book, but I was too tired.

B

Verbs + -ing (I enjoy doing)

enjoy	stop	suggest	+ -ing (doing / working / being, etc.)
mind	finish		



- I **enjoy dancing.** (*not* enjoy to dance)
- I don't **mind getting** up early.
- Has it **stopped raining?**
- Sonia **suggested going** to the movies.

C

Verbs + -ing or to . . .

like	love	start	continue	+ -ing (doing, etc.) *or* to . . . (to do, etc.)
prefer	hate	begin		

- Do you **like getting** up early? *or* Do you **like to get** up early?
- I **prefer traveling** by car. *or* I **prefer to travel** by car.
- Anna **loves dancing.** *or* Anna **loves to dance.**
- I **hate being** late. *or* I **hate to be** late.
- It **started raining.** *or* It **started to rain.**

D

Would like to . . . , etc.

would like	would love	+ to . . . (to do / to work / to be, etc.)
would prefer	would hate	

- Julia **would like to meet** you.
- I'd **love to go** to Australia. (I'd = I would)
- "**Would** you **like to stay** at the Metro Hotel?" "No, I'd **prefer to stay** at the Grand."
- I like this city very much. I **wouldn't like to move.**
- I'd **hate to lose** my address book.

Would like **Unit 35** ***I want you to . . .*** **Unit 54** ***Go + -ing*** **Unit 56** **Preposition + *-ing*** **Unit 107**

Exercises

UNIT 53

53.1 Put the verb in the right form – *to . . .* or *-ing*.

1. I enjoy *dancing* . (dance)
2. What do you want *to do* tonight? (do)
3. Goodbye! I hope _____ you again soon. (see)
4. I learned _____ when I was five years old. (swim)
5. Have you finished _____ the kitchen? (clean)
6. I'm tired. I want _____ to bed. (go)
7. Do you enjoy _____ other countries? (visit)
8. The weather was nice, so I suggested _____ for a walk by the river. (go)
9. Where's Bill? He promised _____ here on time. (be)
10. I'm not in a hurry. I don't mind _____ . (wait)
11. What have you decided _____ ? (do)
12. Eric was very angry and refused _____ to me. (speak)
13. Where's Anna? I need _____ her something. (ask)
14. They were very upset and started _____ . (cry)
15. I'm trying _____ . (work) Please stop _____ . (talk)

53.2 Complete the sentences with *to . . .* or *-ing*. Use one of these verbs:

cook go help lose ~~meet~~ rain read see send wait walk watch

1. Julia would like *to meet* you.
2. Nicole has a lot of books. She enjoys _____ .
3. I'm surprised that you're here. I didn't expect _____ you.
4. Don't forget _____ us a postcard when you're on vacation.
5. "Should we take a taxi to the restaurant?" "If you want, but it isn't far. I don't mind _____ ."
6. This ring was my grandmother's. I'd hate _____ it.
7. Rita had a lot to do, so I offered _____ her.
8. What should we do this afternoon? Would you like _____ to the beach?
9. When I'm tired in the evening, I like _____ television.
10. "Do you want to go now?" "No, I'd prefer _____ a few minutes."
11. I'm not going out until it stops _____ .
12. Dinner is going to be late. I just started _____ .

53.3 Read the questions and complete the answers.

1.	Do you usually get up early ?	Yes, I like *getting up early* OR *to get up early* .
2.	Do you ever go to museums?	Yes, I love _____ .
3.	Do you write letters often?	No, I don't like _____ .
4.	Have you ever been to Rome?	No, but I'd love _____ sometime.
5.	Do you ever travel by train?	Yes, I enjoy _____ .
6.	Do you want to eat at home or go to a restaurant?	I don't mind _____ a restaurant, but I'd prefer _____ home.

53.4 Complete these sentences. Write about yourself. Use *to . . .* or *-ing*.

1. I enjoy _____ .
2. I don't like _____ .
3. If it's a nice day tomorrow, I'd like _____ .
4. When I'm on vacation, I like _____ .
5. I don't mind _____ , but _____ .
6. I wouldn't like _____ .

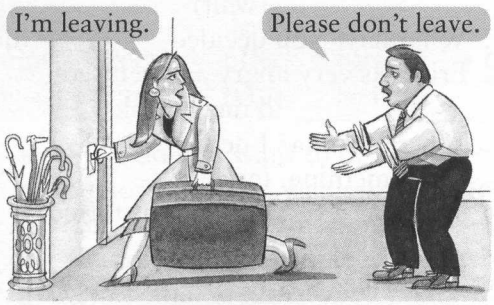
Additional Exercise 30 (pages 256–257)

UNIT 54

I want you to . . . and *I told you to . . .*

A

I want you to . . .



The woman **wants to leave.**

The man **doesn't want** the woman **to leave.** He **wants** her **to stay.**

We say:

I **want**	**you** **somebody** **Anne**	**to do** something

- I **want you to be** happy. (*not* I want that you are happy)
- They didn't **want anybody to know** their secret.
- Do you **want me to lend** you some money?

We use **would like** in the same way.

- **Would** you **like me to lend** you some money?

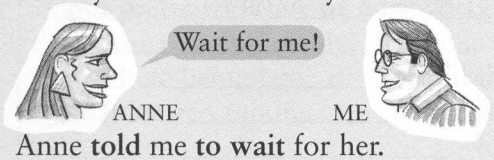
B

We also use this structure (*verb* + somebody + **to . . .**) with:

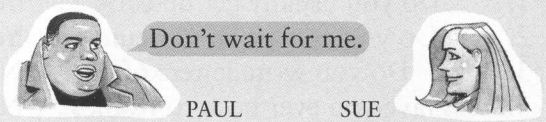
		verb	+ somebody +	**to . . .**	
ask	Sue	**asked**	a friend	**to lend**	her some money.
tell	I	**told**	you	**to be**	careful.
advise	What do you	**advise**	me	**to do?**	
expect	I didn't	**expect**	them	**to be**	here.
persuade	We	**persuaded**	Eric	**to come**	with us.
teach	I	**am teaching**	my brother	**to swim.**	

C

I told you to . . . / I told you not to . . .



Anne **told** me **to wait** for her.



Paul **told** Sue **not to wait** for him.

D

make and **let**

After **make** and **let,** we do not use **to.**

- He's very funny. He **makes** me **laugh.** (*not* makes me to laugh)
- At school our teachers **made** us **work** very hard.
- Ada **let** me **use** her computer because mine wasn't working. (*not* let me to use)

You can say **Let's . . .** (= **Let us**) when you want people to do things with you.

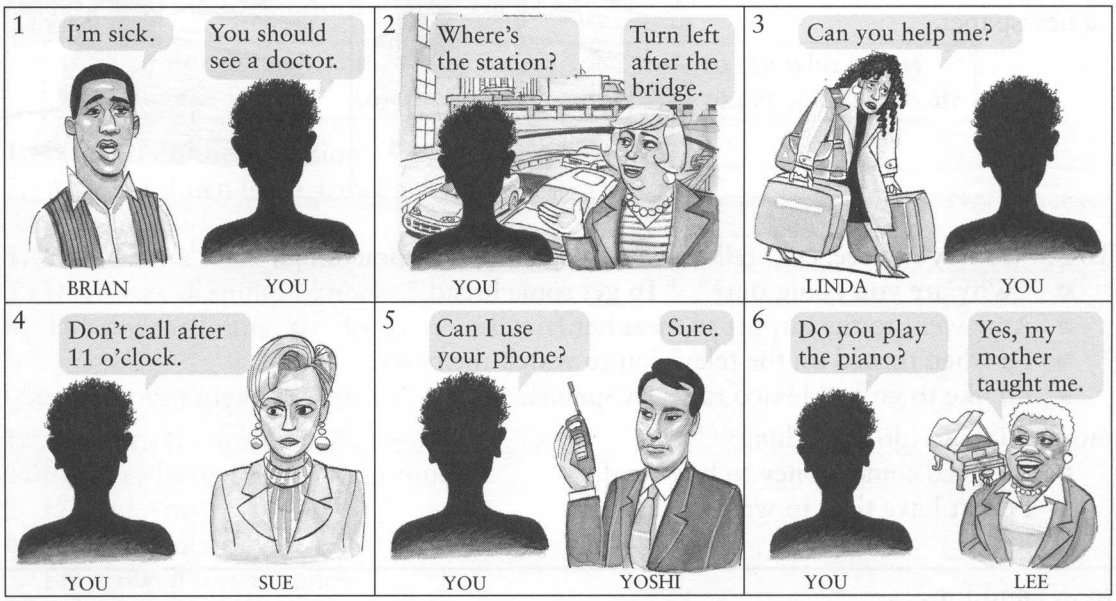
- Come on! **Let's dance.**
- "Do you want to go out tonight?" "No, I'm tired. **Let's stay** home."

Exercises

54.1 **Write sentences beginning *I want you ... / I don't want you ... / Do you want me ... ?***

1. (you have to come with me) *I want you to come with me.*
2. (listen carefully) I want _____.
3. (please don't be angry) I don't _____.
4. (shall I wait for you?) Do you _____.
5. (don't call me tonight) _____
6. (you should meet Sarah) _____

54.2 **Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.**



1. Brian was sick. I advised *him to see a doctor* .
2. I wanted to get to the station. A woman told _____.
3. Linda had a lot of luggage. She asked _____.
4. Sue is going to call later. I told _____.
5. I wanted to make a phone call. Yoshi let _____.
6. Lee's mother taught _____.

54.3 **Complete these sentences with the verbs in the list. Sometimes *to* is necessary (*to go / to wait,* etc.); sometimes *to* is not necessary (*go/wait,* etc.).**

arrive borrow get go ~~leave~~ make repeat tell think wait

1. Please stay! I don't want you *to leave* yet.
2. I didn't hear what she said, so I asked her _____ it.
3. "Should we begin?" "No, let's _____ a few minutes."
4. Are they already here? I expected them _____ much later.
5. Kevin's parents didn't want him _____ married.
6. I want to stay here. You can't make me _____ with you.
7. "Is that your bicycle?" "No, it's John's. He let me _____ it."
8. Mika can't come to the party. She told me _____ you.
9. Do you want something to drink? Would you like me _____ some coffee?
10. "Achara doesn't like me." "What makes you _____ that?"

UNIT 55

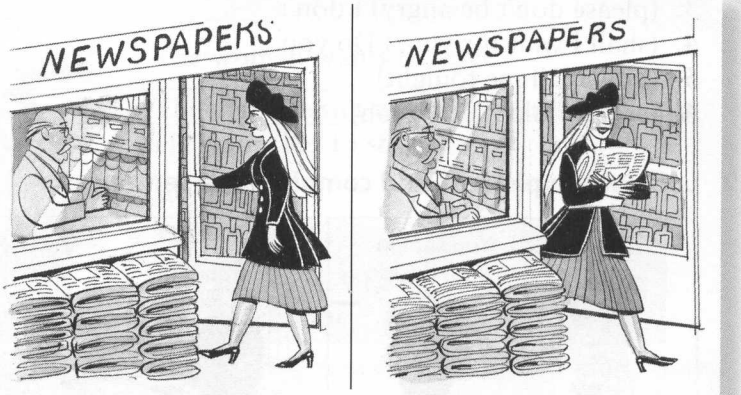
I went to the store to . . .

A

Kelly wanted a newspaper, so she went to the store.

Why did she go to the store? **To buy** a newspaper.

She went to the store **to buy** a newspaper.



To . . . (**to buy / to see,** etc.) tells us *why* a person does something.

- "Why are you going out?" "**To get** some bread."
- Amy went to the airport **to meet** her friend.
- Fu Chen turned on the television **to watch** the news.
- I'd like to go to Mexico to **learn** Spanish.

money/time to (do something)

- We need some **money to buy** food.
- I don't have **time to watch** television.

B

to . . . and for . . .

to + *verb* (**to buy / to see,** etc.)	for + *noun* (**for a newspaper / for food,** etc.)
■ I went to the store **to buy** a newspaper. (*not* for buy)	■ I went to the store **for a newspaper.**
■ They're going to Brazil **to see** their friends.	■ They're going to Brazil **for a holiday.**
■ We need some money **to buy** food.	■ We need some money **for food.**

C

wait for . . .

- Please **wait for me.**
- Are you **waiting for the bus?**

wait to (do something)

- I'm **waiting to talk** to the manager.
- Are you **waiting to see** the doctor?

wait for (somebody/something) **to . . .**

- I can't leave yet. I'm **waiting for John to call.**
- Are you **waiting for the mail to come?**

Go to . . . , go for . . . **Unit 56** ***Something to eat / nothing to do,*** **etc. Unit 80**
Enough to/for . . . **Unit 92** ***Too . . . to/for . . .*** **Unit 93**

Exercises

55.1 Write sentences beginning *I went to . . . .* Choose from the boxes.

~~the station~~	the post office
a coffee shop	the supermarket

buy some food	get some stamps
~~catch a train~~	meet a friend

1. *I went to the station to catch a train.*
2. I went _____.
3. _____
4. _____

55.2 Finish the sentences. Choose from the box.

to open this door	to wake him up	to see who it was
~~to watch the news~~	to read the newspaper	to get some fresh air

1. I turned on the television *to watch the news*.
2. Alice sat down in an armchair _____.
3. Do I need a key _____?
4. I went for a walk by the river _____.
5. Dave was sleeping. I knocked on his door _____.
6. The doorbell rang, so I looked out the window _____.

55.3 Use your own ideas to finish these sentences. Use *to . . . .*

1. I went to the store *to buy a newspaper*.
2. I'm very busy. I haven't got time _____.
3. I called Amy _____.
4. I'm going out _____.
5. I borrowed some money _____.

55.4 Write *to* or *for*.

1. Ampol went to the store *to* buy some bread.
2. We went to a restaurant _____ have dinner.
3. Robert wants to go to college _____ study economics.
4. I'm going to Toronto _____ an interview next week.
5. I'm going to Vancouver _____ visit some friends of mine.
6. Do you have time _____ a cup of coffee?
7. I was late this morning. I didn't have time _____ comb my hair.
8. Everybody needs money _____ live.
9. My office is very small. There's only enough room _____ a desk and a chair.
10. *A:* Excuse me, are you waiting _____ use the phone?
    B: No, I'm waiting _____ somebody.

55.5 Finish these sentences. Choose from the list:

~~John / call~~ it / to arrive you / tell me the film / begin

1. I can't leave yet. I'm waiting *for John to call*.
2. I sat down in the movie theater and waited _____.
3. We called an ambulance and waited _____.
4. "Do you know what to do?" "No, I'm waiting _____."

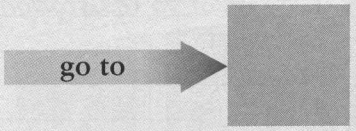
UNIT 56

Go to . . . go on . . . go for . . . go -ing

A

go to . . . (**go to work / go to San Francisco / go to a concert,** etc.)

- What time do you usually **go to work?**
- I'm **going to China** next week.
- Tom didn't want to **go to the concert.**
- What time did you **go to bed** last night?
- I **went to the dentist** last week.



go home (without **to**)

- I'm **going home** now. (*not* going to home)

B

go on . . .

go on	a trip a tour an excursion a cruise vacation strike

- Children often **go on school trips.**
- When we were in Egypt, we **went on a tour** of the Pyramids.
- We're **going on vacation** next week.
- Last year I **went** to Costa Rica **on vacation.**
- The workers have **gone on strike.** (= they are refusing to work)

C

go for . . .

go (somewhere) **for**	a walk a run a swim lunch, dinner, etc.

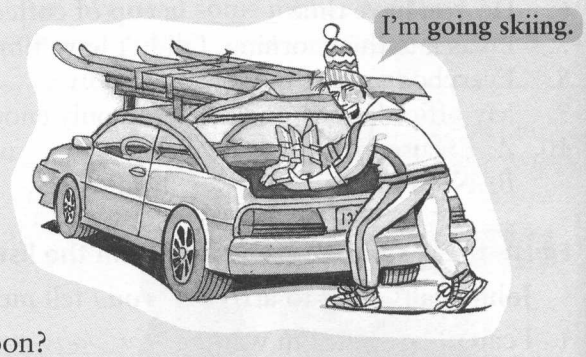
- "Where's John?" "He **went for a walk.**"
- Did you **go for a run** this morning?
- The water looks nice. Let's **go for a swim.**
- Should we **go** out **for dinner?** I know a good restaurant.

D

go + -ing

We use **go + -ing** for many sports (**swimming/skiing,** etc.) and also for **shopping:**

I go	**shopping**
he is **going**	**swimming**
we **went**	**fishing**
they have **gone**	**sailing**
she wants to **go**	**skiing**
	jogging
	running, etc.



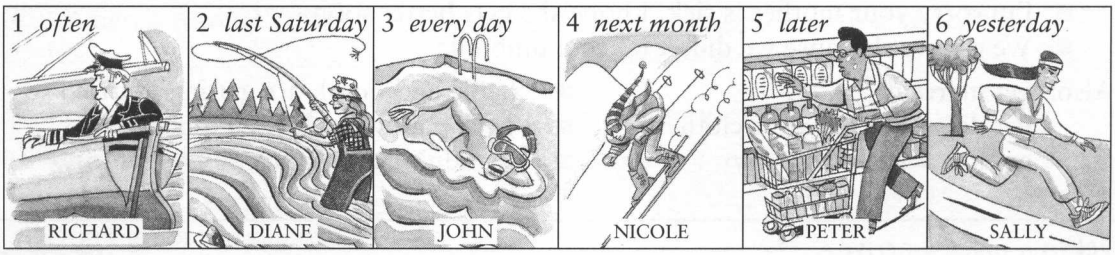
- Are you **going shopping** this afternoon?
- It's a nice day. Let's **go swimming.** (*or* Let's **go for a swim.**)
- Richard has a small boat, and he often **goes sailing.**
- I **went jogging** before breakfast this morning.

Exercises

56.1 Write *to/on/for* where necessary.

1. I'm going *to* China next week.
2. Richard often goes — sailing.
3. Sue went _____ Mexico last year.
4. Would you like to go _____ the movies tonight?
5. Brian goes _____ jogging every morning.
6. I'm going out _____ a walk. Do you want to come?
7. I'm tired because I went _____ bed very late.
8. Mark is going _____ a trip _____ Turkey next week.
9. The weather was warm and the lake was clean, so we went _____ a swim.
10. The taxi drivers went _____ strike when I was in New York.
11. I need some stamps, so I'm going _____ the post office.
12. It's late. I have to go _____ home now.
13. Would you like to go _____ a tour of the city?
14. Do you want to go out _____ lunch today?
15. My parents are going _____ a cruise this summer.

56.2 Use the pictures to complete the sentences. Use *go/goes/going/went + -ing*.



1. Richard has a boat. He often *goes sailing* .
2. Last Saturday Diane went _____ .
3. John _____ every day.
4. Nicole is going to Colorado next month. She's _____ .
5. Peter is going out later. He has to _____ .
6. Sally _____ after work yesterday.

56.3 Complete these sentences. Use the words in the box. Use to/on/for if necessary.

~~a swim~~	bed	home	shopping	the bank
a walk	Hawaii	riding	skiing	vacation

1. The water looks great! Let's go *for a swim* .
2. "Is John at home?" "No, he went _____ to get some money."
3. I'm going _____ now. I have to buy some presents.
4. I was very tired last night. I went _____ early.
5. I wasn't enjoying the party, so I went _____ early.
6. We live near the mountains. In winter we go _____ almost every weekend.
7. Richard has a horse. He goes _____ a lot.
8. It's a beautiful day! Would you like to go _____ in the park?
9. *A:* Are you going _____ soon?
   B: Yes, next month. We're going _____ .

UNIT 57

Get

A

get a letter / get a job, etc. (**get** + *noun*) = receive/buy/find

you **don't have** something → you **get** it → you **have** it

- "Did you **get** my post card?" "Yes, I **got** it yesterday." (= receive)
- I like your sweater. Where did you **get** it? (= buy)
- *(on the phone)* "Hello, can I speak to Amy, please?" "Sure. I'll **get** her." (= find and bring back)
- Is it difficult to **get** a job in your country? (= find)

B

get hungry / get cold / get tired, etc. (**get** + *adjective*) = become

you're **not hungry** → you **get hungry** → you **are hungry**

- If you don't eat, you **get hungry.**
- Drink your coffee. It's **getting cold.**
- I'm sorry your mother is sick. I hope she **gets better** soon.
- We **got wet** because we didn't take an umbrella.

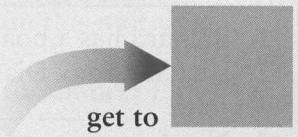
Also: **get married**
get dressed = put your clothes on
get lost = lose your way

- Nicole and Frank **are getting married** soon.
- I got up and **got dressed** quickly.
- We didn't have a map, so we **got lost.**

C

get to a place = arrive

- I usually **get to work** before 8:30. (= arrive at work)
- We left Boston at 10:15 and **got to Ottawa** at 11:30.



get here/there (without **to**)

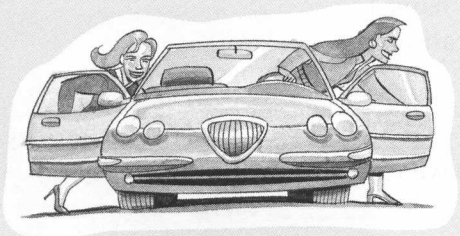
- How did you **get here?** By bus?

get home (without **to**)

- What time did you **get home** last night?

D

get in / get out / get on / get off



get in (a car) **get out** (**of** a car)

get on **get off**
(a bus / a train / a plane)

- Kate **got in the car** and drove away. (You can also say: Kate got **into** the car . . .)
- A car stopped and a man **got out.** (*but* a man got out **of the car**)
- We **got on the bus** outside the hotel and **got off** at Church Street.

Get to **Unit 103** ***In/out/on/off*** **Units 105,109** ***Get up*** **Unit 109**

Exercises

57.1 Complete these sentences. Use *get/gets* and choose from the box.

~~my letter~~	a lot of snow	a room	the manager
your jacket	a new computer	a ticket	the job

1. I wrote to you last week. Did you *get my letter* ?
2. Where did you _____ ? It's really nice.
3. We couldn't _____ . All the hotels were full.
4. I had an interview with the manager, but I didn't _____ .
5. Chicago has terrible weather. They _____ in winter.
6. "Are you going to the concert?" "Yes, if I can _____ ."
7. I'm going to _____ . The one I have is too slow.
8. I have a problem. Could you _____ , please?

57.2 Complete these sentences. Use *getting* + one of these words:

~~cold~~ dark late married ready

1. Drink your coffee. It's *getting cold* .
2. Turn on the light. It's _____ .
3. "I'm _____ next week." "Oh, really? Congratulations!"
4. "Where's Karen?" "She's _____ to go out."
5. It's _____ . It's time to go home.

57.3 Complete the sentences. Use *get/got* + one of these words:

angry better ~~hungry~~ lost married nervous old wet

1. If you don't eat, you'll *get hungry* .
2. Don't go out in the rain. You'll _____ .
3. My brother _____ last year. His wife's name is Julia.
4. My boss _____ and shouted at us yesterday.
5. We tried to find the hotel, but we _____ .
6. Everybody wants to stay young, but we all _____ .
7. The beginning of the film wasn't very good, but it _____ .
8. Most people _____ before exams.

57.4 Write sentences with *I left . . .* and *got to . . .*

1. (home / 7:30 → work / 8:15) *I left home at 7:30 and got to work at 8:15.*
2. (Toronto / 10:15 → New York / 11:45)
   I left Toronto at 10:15 and _____ .
3. (the party / 11:15 → home / midnight)

   _____

Write a true sentence about yourself.

4. I left _____ .

57.5 Write *got in / got out of / got on / got off.*

1. Mei Lan *got in* the car and drove away.
2. I _____ the bus and walked to my house from the bus stop.
3. Isabel _____ the car, locked the doors, and went into a store.
4. I made a stupid mistake. I _____ the wrong train.

UNIT 58

Do and *make*

A

Do is a general word for actions.

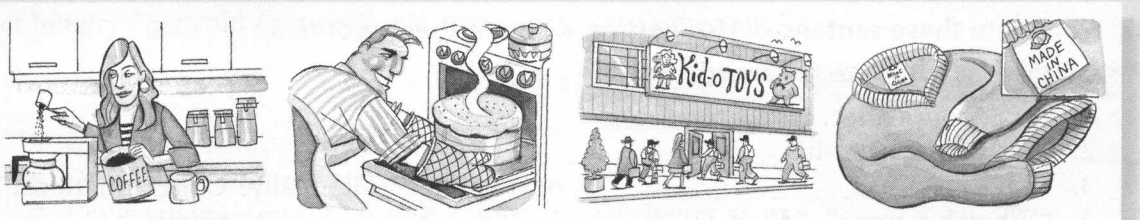
- What are you **doing** tonight? (*not* What are you making)
- "Shall I open the window?" "No, it's OK. I'll **do** it."
- Julia's job is very boring. She **does** the same thing every day.
- I **did** a lot of things yesterday.

What do you do? = What's your job?

- "What do you **do?**" "I work in a bank."

B

Make = produce/create. For example:



She's **making** coffee. He **made** a cake. They **make** toys. It was **made** in China.

Compare **do** and **make**:

- I **did** a lot yesterday. I **cleaned** my room, I **wrote** some letters, and I **made** a cake.
- *A:* What do you **do** in your free time? Read? Play sports?
  B: I **make** clothes. I **make** all of my dresses. I also **make** toys for my children.

C

Expressions with **do**

do	homework (somebody) a favor an exercise (your) best housework the laundry the dishes

- Have the children **done their homework?**
- Erin, could you **do me a favor?**
- I have to **do four exercises** for homework tonight.
- I **did my best,** but I didn't win the race.
- I hate **doing housework,** especially cleaning.
- Tim usually **does the laundry** on Saturdays.
- I cooked, so you should **do the dishes.**

D

Expressions with **make**

make	a mistake an appointment a phone call a list a bed (a) noise

- I'm sorry, I **made a mistake.**
- I need to **make an appointment** to see the doctor.
- Excuse me, I have to **make a phone call.**
- Have you **made a shopping list?**
- Sometimes I forget to **make my bed** in the morning.
- It's late. Please don't **make any noise.**

We say **make a film/movie** *but* **take a photograph/picture.**

- When was **this movie made?** *but* When was **this photograph taken?**

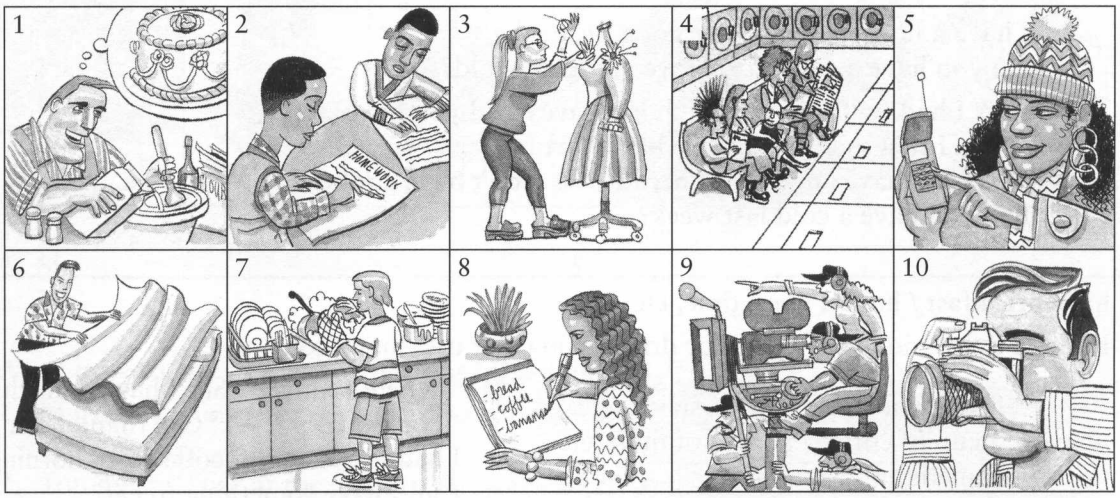
***Do/does/did* (Negatives and Questions) Units 44–45 *Make somebody do something* Unit 54**

Exercises

58.1 Write *make/making/made* or *do/doing/did/done.*

1. "Shall I open the window?" "No, it's OK. I'll *do* it."
2. What did you _____ last weekend? Did you leave town?
3. Do you know how to _____ bread?
4. Paper is _____ from wood.
5. Fernando didn't help me. He sat in an armchair and _____ nothing.
6. "What do you _____?" "I'm a doctor."
7. I asked you to clean the bathroom. Have you _____ it?
8. "What do they _____ in that factory?" "Shoes."
9. I'm _____ some coffee. Would you like some?
10. Why are you mad at me? I didn't _____ anything wrong.
11. "What are you _____ tomorrow afternoon?" "I'm working."

58.2 What are these people doing?



1. *He's making a cake.*
2. They _____.
3. She _____.
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____

58.3 Write *make* or *do* in the correct form.

1. I hate *doing* housework, especially cleaning.
2. Why do you always _____ the same mistake?
3. "Can you _____ me a favor?" "It depends on what it is."
4. "Have you _____ your homework?" "Not yet."
5. I need to see the dentist, but I haven't _____ an appointment yet.
6. Chayan _____ his best, but he didn't pass his driver's test.
7. I painted the door, but I didn't _____ it very well.
8. When you've finished Exercise 1, you can _____ Exercise 2.
9. There's something wrong with the car. The engine is _____ a strange noise.
10. It was a bad mistake. It was the worst mistake I've ever _____.
11. Let's _____ a list of all the things we have to _____ today.

UNIT 59

Have

A

have and **have got** (see Unit 9)

I have (something) or **I've got** (something) = it is mine

- I **have** a new car. *or* I**'ve got** a new car.
- She **has** long hair. *or* She**'s got** long hair. (= She has got)
- **Do** Amy and Ed **have** any children? *or* **Have** Amy and Ed **got** any children?
- Tim **doesn't have** a job. *or* Tim **hasn't got** a job.
- How much time **do** you **have**? *or* How much time **have** you **got**?

Also:

I **have** I've **got**	a headache / a toothache / a stomachache / a pain (in my leg, etc.) a cold / a cough / a sore throat / a fever / the flu, etc.

- I **have** a headache. *or* I**'ve got** a headache.
- **Do** you **have** a cold? *or* **Have** you **got** a cold?

The past is **I had** (without **got**) / **I didn't have** / **Did you have?**, etc.

- When I first met Li Jing, she **had** short hair.
- He **didn't have** any money because he **didn't have** a job.
- **Did** you **have** a cold last week?

B

have breakfast / have a good time, etc.

In these expressions **have** = **eat** or **drink.** You can't use "have got."

have	a sandwich / a pizza / a snack, etc. a cup of coffee / a glass of milk, etc. something to eat/drink

- "Where's Amy?" "She's **having** lunch."
- "**Have** a cookie!" "Oh, thank you."
- I **had** three cups of coffee this morning.
- Can I **have** something to eat?

We also use **have** (*not* have got) in these expressions:

have	a vacation / a party a dream an accident a baby an argument

- We**'re having** a party next Friday. Can you come?
- Fu Chen **had** an accident on the way to work.
- Sandra just **had** a baby. It's a boy.
- Jack and I never agree. We **have** an argument every time we meet.

We also say:

have	fun / a (good) time a (nice) day / a (nice) weekend / a (great) vacation a (good) flight / a (great) trip, etc.

- "My vacation starts tomorrow." "**Have** a great time!"
- "How was your trip?" "We **had** a terrible flight, but after that I **had** fun."
- "Did you **have** a nice weekend?" "Yes, thanks. Very nice!"
- I'm **having** a bad day. Everything is going wrong.

I have / I've got **Unit 9** ***I've (done)*** **(Present Perfect) Units 16, 19–20** ***I have to . . .*** **Unit 34**

Exercises

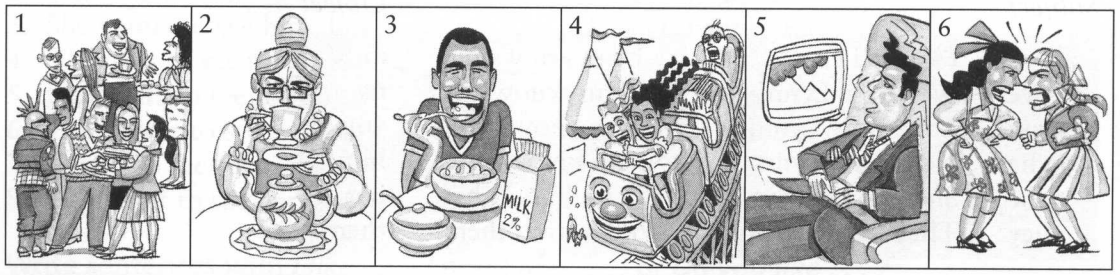
UNIT 59

59.1 Write the correct form of *have* or *have got*.

1. *I didn't have* time to do the shopping yesterday. (I / not / have)
2. "*Has Lisa got* OR *Does Lisa have* a car?" "No, she can't drive." (Lisa / have?)
3. He can't open the door. _____ a key. (he / not / have)
4. _____ a cold last week. He's better now. (Eric / have)
5. What's wrong? _____ a headache? (you / have?)
6. We wanted to go by taxi, but we _____ enough money. (we / not / have)
7. Liz is very busy. _____ much free time. (she / not / have)
8. _____ any problems when you were on vacation? (you / have?)

59.2 What are these people doing? Choose from the list.

an argument **breakfast** **a cup of tea** **a terrible flight** **fun** ~~**a party**~~



1. *They're having a party.*
2. She _____.
3. He _____.
4. They _____.
5. _____
6. _____

59.3 What do you say in these situations? Use *have*.

1. Mariko is going on vacation. What do you say to her before she goes?
   Have a nice vacation!
2. You meet Claire at the airport. She has just arrived. Ask her about her flight.
   Did you have a good flight?
3. Jiro is going on a long trip. What do you say to him before he leaves?
   _____
4. It's Monday morning. You are at work. Ask Paula about her weekend.
   _____
5. Paul has just come back from vacation. Ask him about his vacation.
   _____
6. Rachel is going out tonight. What do you say to her before she leaves?
   _____

59.4 Complete the sentences. Use *have/had* and choose from the list.

an accident **a glass of water** **a baby** ~~**a party**~~ **a bad dream** **something to eat**

1. We *had a party* a few weeks ago. We invited fifty people.
2. "Should we _____?" "No, I'm not hungry."
3. I was thirsty, so I _____.
4. I _____ last night. It woke me up.
5. Soo Mi is a very good driver. She has never _____.
6. Rachel is going to _____. It will be her first child.

UNIT 60

I/me, he/him, they/them, etc.

A

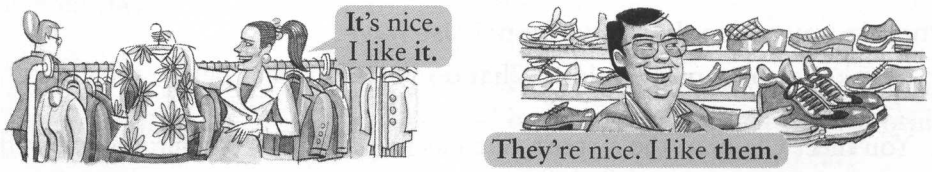
People

subject:	I	we	you	he	she	they
object:	me	us	you	him	her	them

Subject		*Object*	
I	I know Lynn.	Lynn knows **me.**	me
we	We know Lynn.	Lynn knows **us.**	us
you	You know Lynn.	Lynn knows **you.**	you
he	He knows Lynn.	Lynn knows **him.**	him
she	She knows Lynn.	Lynn knows **her.**	her
they	They know Lynn.	Lynn knows **them.**	them

B

Things



subject:	it	they
object:	it	them

- I don't want **this book.** You can have **it.**
- I don't want **these books.** You can have **them.**
- Diane never drinks **milk.** She doesn't like **it.**
- I never go to **parties.** I don't like **them.**

C

We use **me/her/them,** etc. (object) after a *preposition* (**for/to/with,** etc.).

- This letter isn't **for me.** It's **for you.**
- Who is that woman? Why are you looking **at her?**
- We're going to the movies. Do you want to come **with us?**
- Sue and Kevin are going to the movies. Do you want to go **with them?**
- "Where's the newspaper?" "You're sitting **on it.**"

give it/them to . . .

- I need that book. Please give **it to me.**
- Robert needs these books. Can you give **them to him,** please?

***My/his/their,* etc. Unit 61** ***Give me that book / Give it to me* Unit 97**

Exercises

60.1 Complete the sentences with *him/her/them.*

1. I don't know those girls. Do you know *them* ?
2. I don't know that man. Do you know _____ ?
3. I don't know those people. Do you know _____ ?
4. I don't know Dave's wife. Do you know _____ ?
5. I don't know Mr. Kwang. Do you know _____ ?
6. I don't know Sarah's parents. Do you know _____ ?
7. I don't know the woman in the black coat. Do you know _____ ?

60.2 Complete the sentences. Use *I/me/you/she/her,* etc.

1. I want to see her, but *she* doesn't want to see *me* .
2. They want to see me, but _____ don't want to see _____ .
3. She wants to see him, but _____ doesn't want to see _____ .
4. We want to see them, but _____ don't want to see _____ .
5. He wants to see us, but _____ don't want to see _____ .
6. They want to see her, but _____ doesn't want to see _____ .
7. I want to see them, but _____ don't want to see _____ .
8. You want to see her, but _____ doesn't want to see _____ .

60.3 Write sentences with *I like . . . , I don't like . . . ,* or *Do you like . . . ?*

1. I don't eat tomatoes. *I don't like them.*
2. Eric is a very nice man. I like _____ .
3. This jacket isn't very nice. I don't _____ .
4. This is my new car. Do _____ ?
5. Mrs. Clark is not very friendly. I _____ .
6. These are my new shoes. _____ ?

60.4 Complete the sentences. Use *I/me/he/him,* etc.

1. Who is that woman? Why are you looking at *her* ?
2. "Do you know that man?" "Yes, I work with _____ ."
3. Where are the tickets? I can't find _____ .
4. I can't find my keys. Where are _____ ?
5. We're going out. You can come with _____ .
6. Mary likes music. _____ plays the piano.
7. I don't like dogs. I'm afraid of _____ .
8. I'm talking to you. Please listen to _____ .
9. Where is Anne? I want to talk to _____ .
10. My brother has a new job. _____ doesn't like _____ very much.

60.5 Complete the sentences.

1. I need that book. Can you *give it to me* ?
2. He wants the key. Can you give _____ ?
3. She wants the keys. Can you _____ ?
4. I need that letter. Can you _____ ?
5. They want the money. Can you _____ ?
6. We need the photographs. Can you _____ ?

UNIT 61

My/his/their, etc.

A

I → **my**	I like **my** job.
we → **our**	We like **our** jobs.
you → **your**	You like **your** job.
he → **his**	He likes **his** job.
she → **her**	She likes **her** job.
they → **their**	They like **their** jobs.
it → **its**	Hawaii (= it) is famous for **its** beaches.

We use **my/your/his,** etc. + a *noun*

my hands	**his** mother	**her** new car
our house	**your** best friend	**their** room

B

his/her/their

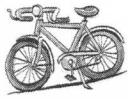
AMY

her car
(= Amy's car)

her husband
(= Amy's husband)

her children
(= Amy's children)

NICK


his bicycle

his sister

his parents

MR. and MRS. LEE

their son

their daughter

their children

C

its and **it's**

its	Hawaii is famous for **its** beaches.
it's (= **it is**)	I like Hawaii. **It's** a beautiful place. (= **It is** a beautiful place.)

***Mine/yours,* etc. Unit 62** ***I/me/my/mine* Unit 63**

Exercises

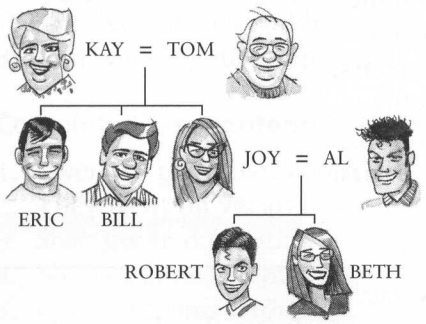
61.1 Complete these sentences.

1. I'm going to wash *my hands* .
2. She's going to wash _____ .
3. We're going to wash _____ .
4. He's going to wash _____ .
5. They're going to wash _____ .
6. Are you going to wash _____ ?

61.2 Complete these sentences.

1. He *lives with his parents* .
2. They live with _____ parents.
3. We _____ parents.
4. Mary lives _____ .
5. I _____ parents.
6. John _____ .
7. Do you live _____ ?
8. Most children _____ .

61.3 Look at the family tree, and complete the sentences with *his/her/their.*



1. I saw Kay with *her* husband, Tom.
2. I saw Joy and Al with _____ children.
3. I saw Al with _____ wife, Joy.
4. I saw Eric with _____ brother, Bill.
5. I saw Joy with _____ brother Bill.
6. I saw Kay and Tom with _____ son Bill.
7. I saw Joy with _____ parents.
8. I saw Beth and Robert with _____ parents.

61.4 Write *my/our/your/his/her/their/its.*

1. Do you like *your* job?
2. I know Mr. Chu, but I don't know _____ wife.
3. Mr. and Mrs. Romo live in San Francisco. _____ son lives in Canada.
4. We're going to have a party. We're going to invite all _____ friends.
5. Amy is going out with _____ friends tonight.
6. I like tennis. It's _____ favorite sport.
7. "Is that _____ car?" "No, I don't have a car."
8. I want to call Amy. Do you know _____ phone number?
9. Do you think most people are happy with _____ jobs?
10. I'm going to wash _____ hair before I go out.
11. That's a beautiful tree. _____ leaves are a beautiful color.
12. John has a brother and a sister. _____ brother is 25, and _____ sister is 21.

61.5 Complete the sentences. Use *my/his/their,* etc., with one of these words:

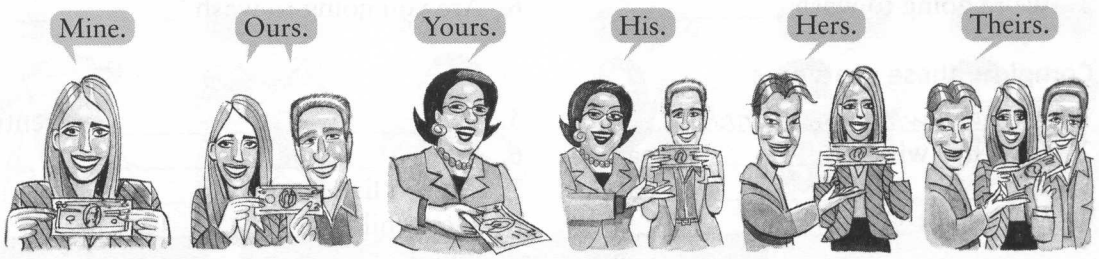
coat homework house husband ~~job~~ key name

1. Jim doesn't enjoy *his job* . It's not very interesting.
2. I can't open the door. I don't have _____ .
3. Amy is married. _____ works in a bank.
4. It's very cold today. Put on _____ when you go out.
5. "What are the children doing?" "They're doing _____ ."
6. "Do you know that man?" "Yes, but I don't know _____ ."
7. We live on Main Street. _____ is on the corner of Main and First.

UNIT 62

Whose is this? It's mine/yours/hers, etc.

A



I	→ **my**	→ **mine**	It's **my** money.	It's **mine.**
we	→ **our**	→ **ours**	It's **our** money.	It's **ours.**
you	→ **your**	→ **yours**	It's **your** money.	It's **yours.**
he	→ **his**	→ **his**	It's **his** money.	It's **his.**
she	→ **her**	→ **hers**	It's **her** money.	It's **hers.**
they	→ **their**	→ **theirs**	It's **their** money.	It's **theirs.**

B

We use **my/your,** etc. + a *noun* (**my hands / your book,** etc.)

- **My hands** are cold.
- Is this **your book?**
- Mary gave me **her umbrella.**
- It's **their problem,** not **our problem.**

We use **mine/yours,** etc., without a noun.

- Is this book **mine** or **yours?** (= my book or your book)
- I didn't have an umbrella, so Mary gave me **hers.** (= her umbrella)
- It's their problem, not **ours.** (= not our problem)
- We went in our car, and they went in **theirs.** (= their car)

You can use **his** with or without a noun.

- "Is this **his camera** or **hers?**" "It's **his.**"

C

a friend **of mine** / a friend **of his** / some friends of **yours,** etc.

- I went to the movies with a friend **of mine.** (*not* a friend of me)
- Tom was with a friend **of his.** (*not* a friend of him)
- Are those people friends **of yours?** (*not* friends of you)

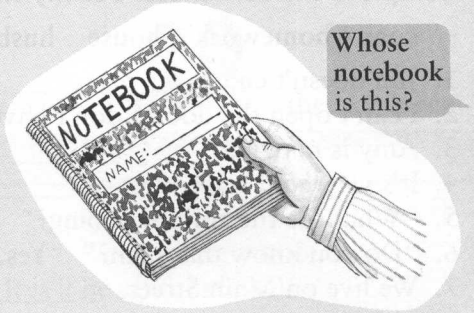
D

Whose . . . ?

- **Whose book** is this? (= Is it your book? his book? my book?, etc.)

You can use **whose** with or without a noun.

- **Whose money** is this? / **Whose** is this? } It's mine.
- **Whose shoes** are these? / **Whose** are these? } They're John's.



My/his/their,* etc.** Unit 61 ***I, me, my,* and *mine Unit 63 ***Kate's camera / my brother's car*** Unit 65

Exercises

62.1 Complete the sentences with *mine/yours*, etc.

1. It's your money. It's *yours*.
2. It's my bag. It's _____.
3. It's our car. It's _____.
4. They're her shoes. They're _____.
5. It's their house. It's _____.
6. They're your books. They're _____.
7. They're my glasses. They're _____.
8. It's his coat. It's _____.

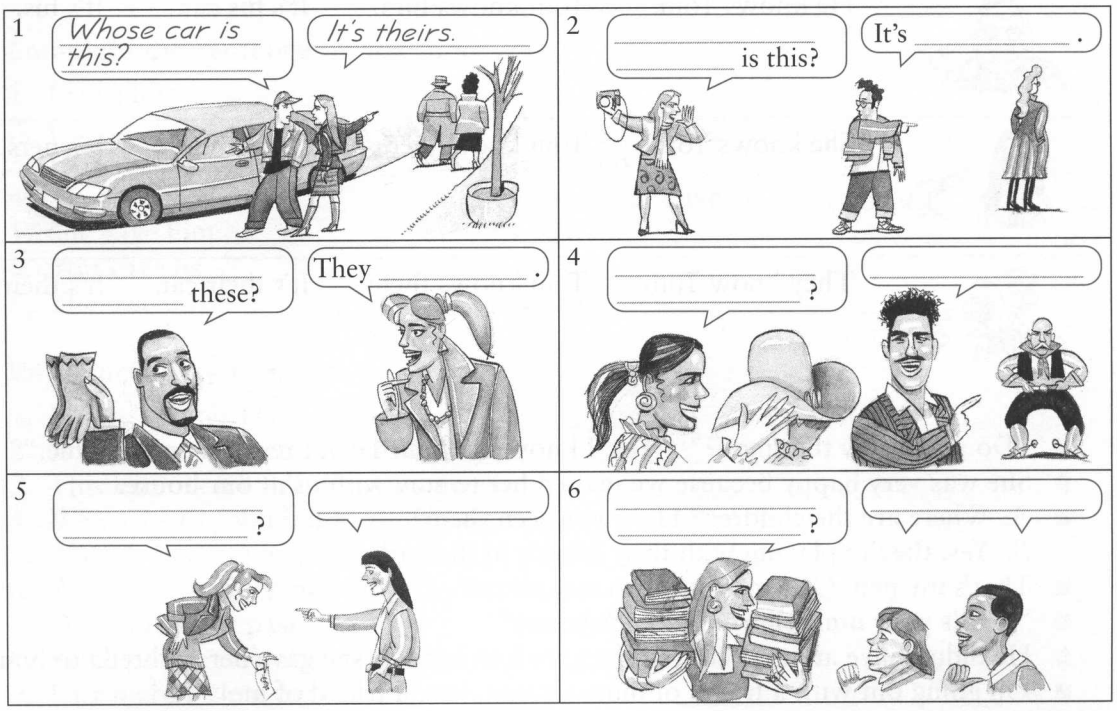
62.2 Choose the right word.

1. It's their/~~theirs~~ problem, not ~~our~~/ours. (*their* and *ours* are right)
2. This is a nice camera. Is it your/yours?
3. That's not my/mine umbrella. My/Mine is black.
4. Whose books are these? Your/Yours or my/mine?
5. Catherine is going out with her/hers friends tonight.
6. My/Mine room is bigger than her/hers.
7. They've got two children but I don't know their/theirs names.
8. Can we use your telephone? Our/Ours isn't working.

62.3 Complete these sentences. Use *friend(s) of mine/yours*, etc.

1. I went to the movies with a *friend of mine*.
2. They went on vacation with some *friends of theirs*.
3. She's going out with a _____.
4. We had dinner with some _____.
5. I played tennis with a _____.
6. Tom is going to meet a _____.
7. Do you know those people? Are they _____?

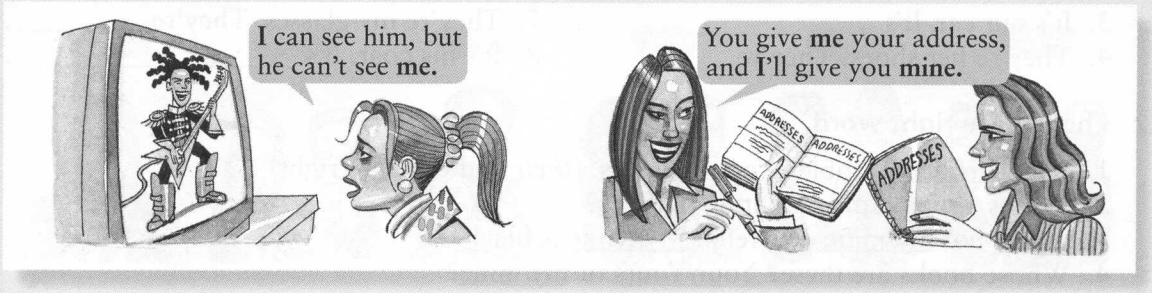
62.4 Look at the pictures. What are the people saying?



UNIT 63

I, me, my, and *mine*

A



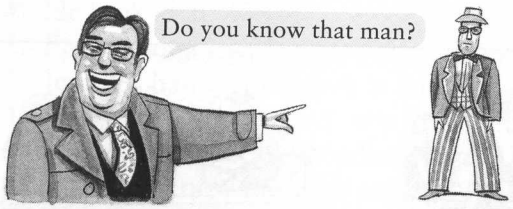
	I, etc. (Unit 60)	me, etc. (Unit 60)	my, etc. (Unit 61)	mine, etc. (Unit 62)
	I know Tom.	Tom knows **me.**	It's **my** car.	It's **mine.**
	We know Tom.	Tom knows **us.**	It's **our** car.	It's **ours.**
	You know Tom.	Tom knows **you.**	It's **your** car.	It's **yours.**
	He knows Tom.	Tom knows **him.**	It's **his** car.	It's **his.**
	She knows Tom.	Tom knows **her.**	It's **her** car.	It's **hers.**
	They know Tom.	Tom knows **them.**	It's **their** car.	It's **theirs.**

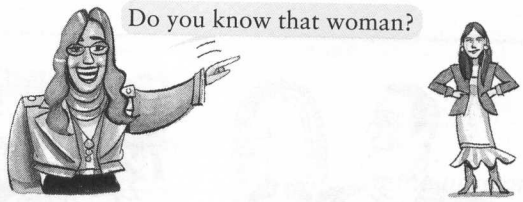
- "Do **you** know that man?" "Yes, **I** know **him,** but **I** can't remember **his name.**"
- **She** was very happy because **we** invited **her** to stay with **us** at **our house.**
- *A:* Where are the children? Have **you** seen **them?**
  B: Yes, **they**'re playing with **their friends** in the park.
- That's **my pen.** Can you give it to **me,** please?
- "Is this **your umbrella?**" "No, it's **yours.**"
- **He** didn't have an umbrella, so **she** gave **him hers.** (= she gave her umbrella to him)
- I'm going out with a friend of **mine** tonight. (*not* a friend of me)

***Myself/yourself,* etc. Unit 64** **_Give me that book / Give it to me_ Unit 97**

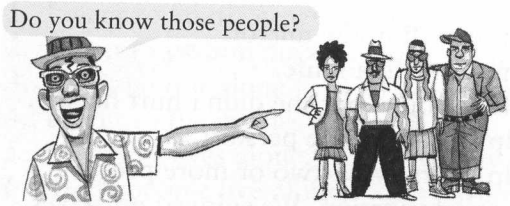
Exercises

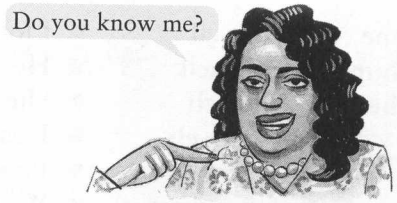
63.1 Answer the questions in the same way.





1. Yes, I *know him, but I can't remember his name*.
2. Yes, I know _____, but I can't remember _____.





3. Yes, I _____, but I _____ names.
4. Yes, I _____, but _____.

63.2 Complete the sentences in the same way.

1. We invited her *to stay with us at our house*.
2. He invited us to stay with _____ house.
3. They invited me to stay with _____ house.
4. I invited them _____.
5. She invited us _____.
6. Did you invite him _____?

63.3 Complete the sentences in the same way.

1. I gave him *my address, and he gave me his*.
2. I gave her _____ address, and she gave me _____.
3. He gave me _____ address, and I gave _____.
4. We gave them _____ address, and they gave _____.
5. She gave him _____ address, and _____.
6. You gave us _____ address, and _____.
7. They gave you _____ address, and _____.

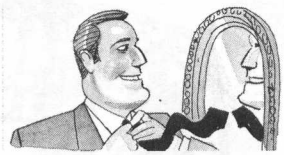
63.4 Write *him/her/yours,* etc.

1. Where's Amy? Have you seen *her*?
2. Where are my keys? Where did I put _____?
3. This letter is for Bill. Can you give it to _____?
4. We wrote to John but he didn't answer _____ letter.
5. "I can't find my pen. Can I use _____?" "Sure."
6. We're going to the movies. Why don't you come with _____?
7. Did your sister pass _____ driver's test?
8. Some people talk about _____ jobs all the time.
9. Last night I went out for dinner with a friend of _____.

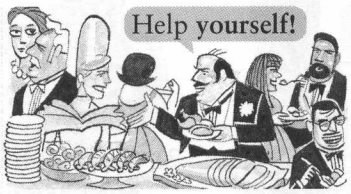
UNIT 64

Myself/yourself/themselves, etc.

A



He's looking at **himself.**



They're enjoying **themselves.**

I	→ **me**	→ **myself**
he	→ **him**	→ **himself**
she	→ **her**	→ **herself**
you	→ **you**	→ **yourself** / **yourselves**
we	→ **us**	→ **ourselves**
they	→ **them**	→ **themselves**

- I looked at **myself** in the mirror.
- **He** cut **himself** with a knife.
- **She** fell off her bike, but she didn't hurt **herself.**
- Please help **yourself.** (one person)
- Please help **yourselves.** (two or more people)
- We had a good vacation. **We** enjoyed **ourselves.**
- They had a nice time. **They** enjoyed **themselves.**

B

Compare:

me/him/them, etc.

She is looking at **him**.
different people

- You never talk to **me.**
- I didn't pay for **them.**
- Did I hurt **you?**

myself/himself/themselves, etc.

He is looking at **himself**.
the same person

- Sometimes I talk to **myself.**
- They paid for **themselves.**
- Be careful! Don't hurt **yourself.**

C

by myself / by yourself, etc. = alone

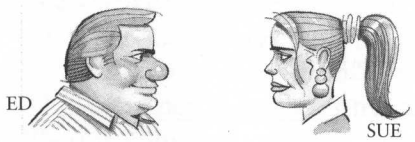
- I went on vacation **by myself.** (= I went alone)
- "Was she with friends?" "No, she was **by herself.**"

D

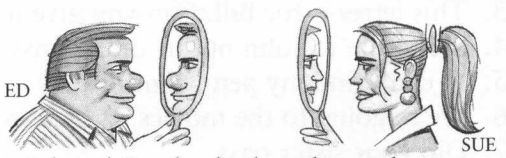
each other

- Kim and Amy are good friends. They know **each other** well.
  (= Kim knows Amy / Amy knows Kim)
- Paul and I live near **each other.** (= he lives near me / I live near him)

Compare **each other** and **-selves:**



- Ed and Sue looked at **each other.**
  (= Ed looked at Sue / Sue looked at Ed)



- Ed and Sue looked at **themselves.**
  (= Ed looked at Ed / Sue looked at Sue)

***Me/him/them,* etc. Unit 60** ***I/me/my/mine* Unit 63**

Exercises

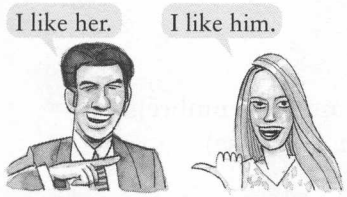
64.1 Complete the sentences with *myself/yourself*, etc.

1. He looked at *himself* in the mirror.
2. I'm not angry with you. I'm angry with _____ .
3. Jennifer had a good time in Mexico. She enjoyed _____ .
4. My friends had a good time in Mexico. They enjoyed _____ .
5. He never thinks about other people. He only thinks about _____ .
6. I want to know more about you. Tell me about _____ . *(one person)*
7. Goodbye! Have a good trip and take care of _____ ! *(two people)*

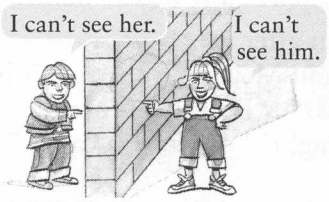
64.2 Write sentences with *by myself / by yourself*, etc.

1. I went to South America alone. *I went to South America by myself.*
2. When I saw him, he was alone. When I saw him, he _____ .
3. Don't go out alone. Don't _____ .
4. I went to the movies alone. I _____ .
5. My sister lives alone. My sister _____ .
6. Many people live alone. Many people _____ .

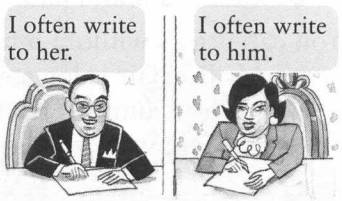
64.3 Write sentences with *each other.*



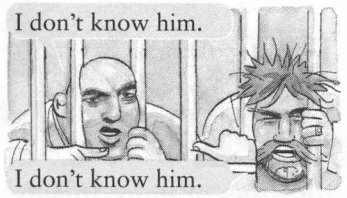
1. *They like each other.*



2. They can't _____ .

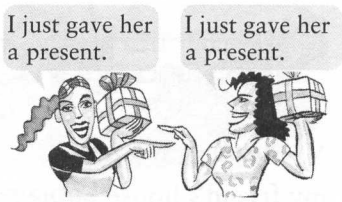


3. They _____ .



4. _____

5. _____



6. _____

64.4 Complete the sentences. Use:

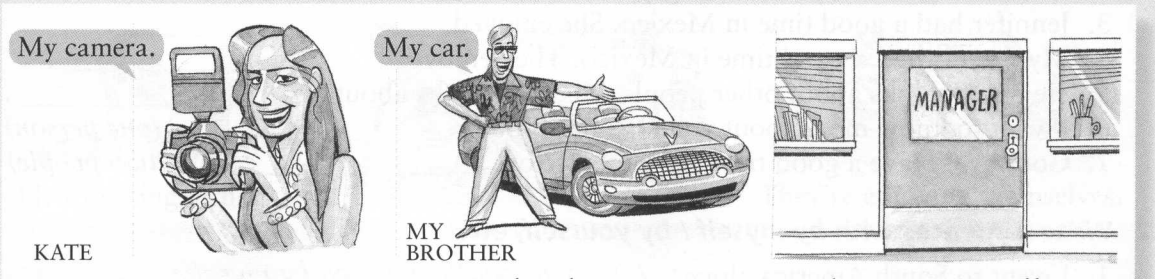
each other ourselves/yourselves/themselves us/you/them

1. Paul and I live near *each other* .
2. Who are those people? Do you know *them* ?
3. You can help Taro, and Taro can help you. So you and Taro can help _____ .
4. There's food in the kitchen. If you and Bob are hungry, you can help _____ .
5. We didn't go to Megan's party. She didn't invite _____ .
6. When we go on vacation, we always enjoy _____ .
7. Diane and I are very good friends. We've known _____ for a long time.
8. "Did you see Sam and Sue at the party?" "Yes, but I didn't speak to _____ ."
9. Many people talk to _____ when they're alone.

UNIT 65

-'s (Kate's camera / my brother's car, etc.)

A



Kate's camera (**her** camera)

my **brother's** car (**his** car)

the **manager's** office (**his** *or* **her** office)

We normally use **-'s** for *people*.

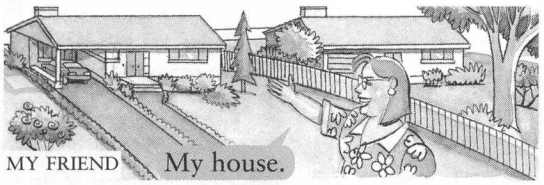
- I stayed at **my sister's** house. (*not* the house of my sister)
- Have you met **Mr. Suzuki's** wife? (*not* the wife of Mr. Suzuki)
- Are you going to **James's** party?
- Paul is **a man's** name. Paula is **a woman's** name.

You can use **-'s** without a noun after it.

- Mi Ja's hair is longer than **Megan's.** (= Megan's hair)
- "Whose umbrella is this?" "It's **my mother's.**" (= my mother's umbrella)
- "Where were you last night?" "I was at **Paul's.**" (= Paul's house)

B

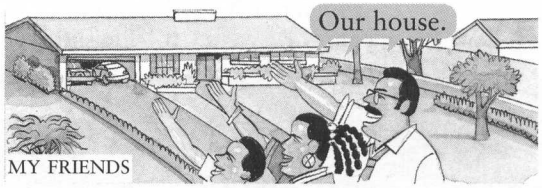
friend's and **friends'**



my **friend's** house = *one friend*
(= **his** house *or* **her** house)

We write **-'s** after **friend/student/mother,** etc. *(singular):*

my **mother's** car *(one mother)*
my **father's** car *(one father)*



my **friends'** house = *two or more friends*
(= **their** house)

We write **-'** after **friends/students/parents,** etc. *(plural):*

my **parents'** car *(two parents)*

C

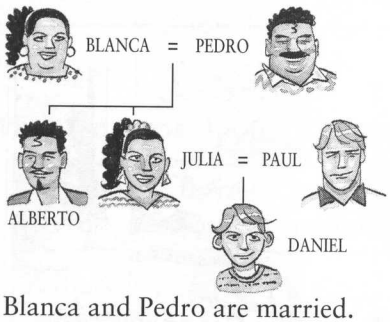
We use **of . . .** for *things, places,* etc.

- Look at the roof **of that building.** (*not* that building's roof)
- We didn't see the beginning **of the film.** (*not* the film's beginning)
- What's the name **of this town?**
- Do you know the cause **of the problem?**
- We had to sit in the back **of the theater.**
- Madrid is the capital **of Spain.**

***Mine/yours*, etc. Unit 62** **Whose . . . ? Unit 62** **-'s (*he's/Alice's*, etc.) Appendix 4**

Exercises

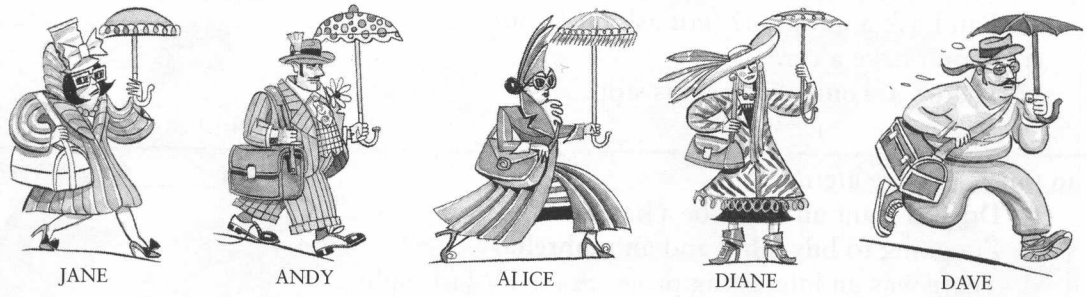
65.1 Look at the family tree. Write sentences about the people in the family.



Blanca and Pedro are married.
They have a son, Alberto, and a daughter, Julia.
Julia is married to Paul. Julia and Paul have a son, Daniel.

1. (Pedro / husband) *Pedro is Blanca's husband.*
2. (Julia / mother) *Julia is Daniel's mother.*
3. (Blanca / wife) Blanca is _____ wife.
4. (Alberto / brother) Alberto _____ _____.
5. (Alberto / uncle) _____ uncle.
6. (Julia / wife) Julia _____.
7. (Blanca / grandmother) _____ _____
8. (Julia / sister) _____
9. (Paul / husband) _____
10. (Paul / father) _____
11. (Daniel / nephew) _____ _____

65.2 Look at the pictures and answer the questions. Use only one word.



1. Whose is this? *Alice's.*

3. And this? _____

5. And this? _____

2. Whose is this? _____

4. And these? _____

6. And these? _____

65.3 Are these sentences right? Correct the sentences that are wrong.

1. I stayed at the house of my sister. *my sister's house*
2. What is the name of this town? *OK*
3. Do you like the color of this coat? _____
4. Do you know the phone number of Bill? _____
5. The job of my brother is very interesting. _____
6. Write your name at the top of the page. _____
7. For me, morning is the best part of the day. _____
8. The favorite color of Paula is blue. _____
9. When is the birthday of your mother? _____
10. The house of my parents isn't very big. _____
11. The walls of this house are very thin. _____
12. The car stopped at the end of the street. _____
13. Are you going to the party of Silvia next week? _____
14. The manager of the hotel is in a meeting right now. _____

UNIT 66

A/an . . .

A

He has **a** camera.

She's waiting for **a** taxi.

It's **a** beautiful day.

a . . . = one thing or person

- Alice works in **a bank.** (*not* in bank)
- Can I ask **a question?** (*not* ask question)
- I don't have **a car.**
- There's **a woman** at the bus stop.

B

an (*not* a) before **a/e/i/o/u**

- Do you want **an apple** or **a banana?**
- I'm going to buy **a hat** and **an umbrella.**
- There was **an interesting** program on TV last night.

Also: **an hour** ("h" is not pronounced: an ~~h~~our)
But: **a university** (pronounced *yuniversity*)
a European country (pronounced *yuropean*)

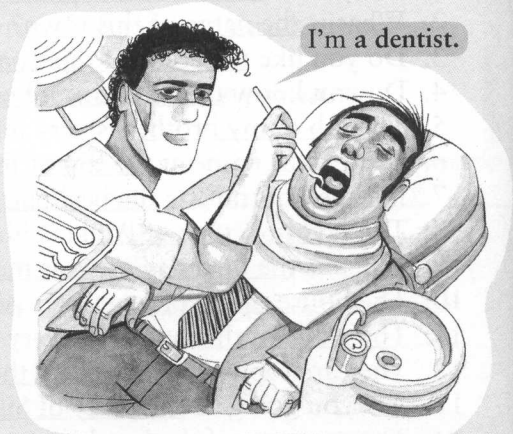
Another (= **an + other**) is one word.

- Can I have **another** cup of coffee?

C

We use **a/an . . .** when we say what a thing or a person is. For example:

- The sun is **a star.**
- Football is **a game.**
- Dallas is **a city** in Texas.
- A mouse is **an animal.** It's **a small animal.**
- Joe is **a very nice person.**



We use **a/an . . .** for jobs.

- *A:* What do you do?
  B: I'm **a dentist.** (*not* I'm dentist.)
- "What does Mark do?" "He's **an engineer.**"
- Would you like to be **a teacher?**
- Beethoven was **a composer.**
- Picasso was **a famous painter.**
- Are you **a student?**

***A car / some money* (Countable/Uncountable) Units 68–69 *A/an* and *the* Unit 70**

Exercises

66.1 Write *a* or *an*.

1. *an* old book
2. _____ window
3. _____ horse
4. _____ airport
5. _____ new airport
6. _____ organization
7. _____ university
8. _____ hour
9. _____ economic problem

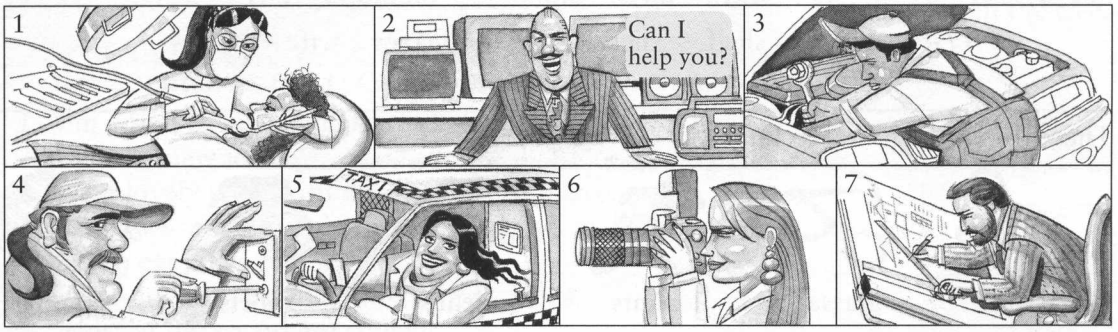
66.2 What are these things? Choose from the list.

airplane	flower	insect	planet	sport
~~bird~~	fruit	mountain	river	vegetable

1. A duck is *a bird*.
2. A carrot is _____.
3. Tennis is _____.
4. A *747* is _____.
5. Everest is _____.
6. Saturn is _____.
7. A banana is _____.
8. The Amazon is _____.
9. A rose is _____.
10. A fly is _____.

66.3 What are their jobs? Choose from the list and complete the sentences.

architect auto mechanic ~~dentist~~ electrician photographer sales clerk taxi driver



1. *She's a dentist.*
2. He's _____.
3. He _____.
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. And you? I'm _____.

66.4 Write sentences. Choose from each box. Use *a/an*.

~~I want to ask you~~	I can't ride
Lucia works in	Jim lives in
Tom never wears	My brother is
Amy wants to learn	Tonight I'm going to

+

old house	office
artist	foreign language
party	hat
~~question~~	bicycle

1. *I want to ask you a question.*
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____

UNIT 67

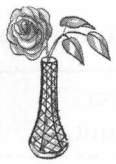
Flower(s) and *bus(es)* (Singular and Plural)

A

The plural of a noun is usually **-s**.

singular = one → *plural* = two or more

a flower	→	some **flowers**
a week	→	two **weeks**
a nice place	→	many nice **places**
this hat	→	these **hats**



a flower

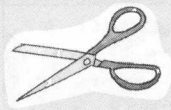
some **flowers**

Spelling (see Appendixes 5.1–5.2)

-s / -sh / -ch / -x → **-es**	bus → buses	dish → dishes	church → churches
	box → boxes	
also	potato → potatoes	tomato → tomatoes	
-y → **-ies**	baby → babies	dictionary → dictionaries	party → parties
but **-ay / -ey / -oy** → **-ys**	day → days	monkey → monkeys	boy → boys
-f / -fe → **-ves**	shelf → shelves	leaf → leaves	wife → wives

B

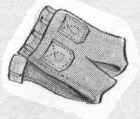
These things are plural in English:



scissors

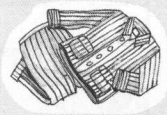
glasses

pants



jeans

shorts



pajamas

- Do you wear **glasses?**
- Where **are** the **scissors?** I need **them.**

You can also say **a pair of scissors / a pair of pants / a pair of pajamas,** etc.

- I need **a** new **pair of jeans.** *or* I need **some** new **jeans.** (*not* a new jeans)

C

Some plurals do *not* end in **-s.**

this **man** → these **men**	one **foot** → two **feet**	that **sheep** → those **sheep**
a **woman** → some **women**	a **tooth** → all my **teeth**	a **fish** → a lot of **fish**
a **child** → many **children**	a **mouse** → some **mice**	

Also: a **person** → **two people / some people / a lot of people,** etc.

- **She's** a nice **person.**
- **They** are nice **people.** (*not* nice persons)

D

People is plural (= they), so we say **people are / people have,** etc.

- A lot of **people speak** English. (*not* speaks)
- I like the **people** here. **They are** very friendly.

Police is plural.

- "The **police are** here." "Why? What **do they** want?"

Exercises

67.1 Write the plural.

1. flower *flowers*
2. boat _____
3. woman _____
4. city _____
5. umbrella _____
6. address _____
7. knife _____
8. sandwich _____
9. family _____
10. foot _____
11. holiday _____
12. potato _____

67.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.

1. There are a lot of *sheep* in the field.
2. Eric is brushing his _____.
3. There are three _____ at the bus stop.
4. Kim has two _____.
5. There are a lot of _____ in the river.
6. The _____ are falling from the tree.

67.3 Are these sentences right? Correct the sentences that are wrong.

1. I'm going to buy some flowers. *OK*
2. I need a new jeans. *a new pair of jeans* OR *some new jeans*
3. It's a lovely park with a lot of beautiful tree. _____
4. There was a woman in the car with two mens. _____
5. Sheep eat grass. _____
6. Fernando is married and has three childs. _____
7. Most of my friend are student. _____
8. He put on his pajama and went to bed. _____
9. We went fishing, but we didn't catch many fish. _____
10. Do you know many persons in this town? _____
11. I like your pant. Where did you get it? _____
12. Montreal is usually full of tourist. _____
13. I don't like mice. I'm afraid of them. _____
14. This scissor isn't very sharp. _____

67.4 Which is right? Complete the sentences.

1. It's a nice place. Many people *go* there on vacation. (go *or* goes?)
2. Some people _____ always late. (is *or* are?)
3. Their president is not popular. The people _____ like him. (don't *or* doesn't?)
4. A lot of people _____ television every day. (watch *or* watches?)
5. Three people _____ injured in the accident. (was *or* were?)
6. How many people _____ in that house? (live *or* lives?)
7. _____ the police carry guns in your country? (Do *or* Does?)
8. The police _____ looking for the stolen car. (is *or* are?)
9. I need my glasses, but I can't find _____. (it *or* them?)
10. I'm going to buy _____ new jeans today. (a *or* some?)

UNIT 68

A car, some money (Countable and Uncountable 1)

A noun can be *countable* or *uncountable*.

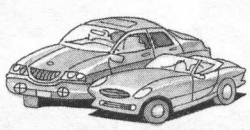
A

Countable nouns

For example: (a) **car** (a) **man** (a) **key** (a) **house** (a) **flower** (an) **idea** (an) **accident**

You can use **one/two/three** (etc.) + *countable nouns* (you can count them)

one **car**


two **cars**

three **men**

four **houses**

Countable nouns can be *singular* (= one) or *plural* (= two or more).

singular	**a car, the car, my car,** etc.
plural	**cars, the cars, his cars, two cars, some cars, many cars,** etc.

- I've got **a car.**
- New **cars** are very expensive.
- There aren't **many cars** in the parking lot.

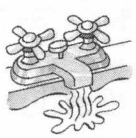
You can't use the singular (**car/house/key,** etc.) alone. You need **a/an** (Unit 66).

- We can't get in without **a key.** (*not* without key)

B

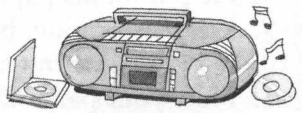
Uncountable nouns

For example: **water** **air** **rice** **salt** **plastic** **money** **music** **tennis**


water

salt

money


music

You can't say **one/two/three** (etc.) + *uncountable nouns* (you can't count them)

~~one water~~ ~~two musics~~

Uncountable nouns have only *one* form.

money the **money** my **money** some **money** much **money,** etc.

- I've got **some money.**
- **Money** isn't everything.
- There isn't **much money** in the box.

You can't use **a/an** + uncountable nouns: ~~a~~ money ~~a~~ music

But you can use **a piece of . . . / a glass of . . .** , etc. + uncountable nouns.

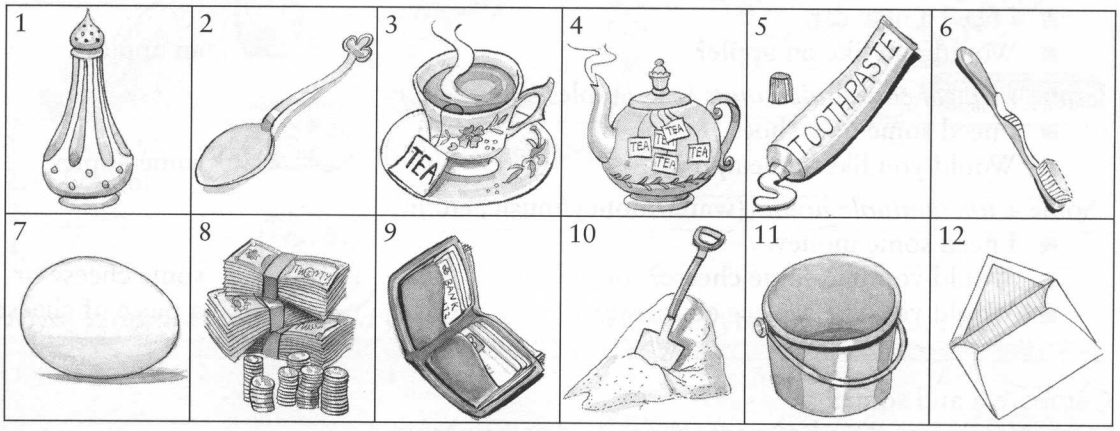
a glass of water	**a carton of** milk	**a bowl of** rice	**a piece of** candy
a cup of coffee	**a bottle of** perfume	**a can of** fruit	**a game of** tennis

A/an **Unit 66** **Countable and Uncountable 2** **Unit 69**

Exercises

68.1 What are these things? Some are countable and some are uncountable. Write *a/an* if necessary. The names of these things are:

bucket	envelope	~~salt~~	~~spoon~~	teapot	toothpaste
egg	money	sand	tea	toothbrush	wallet

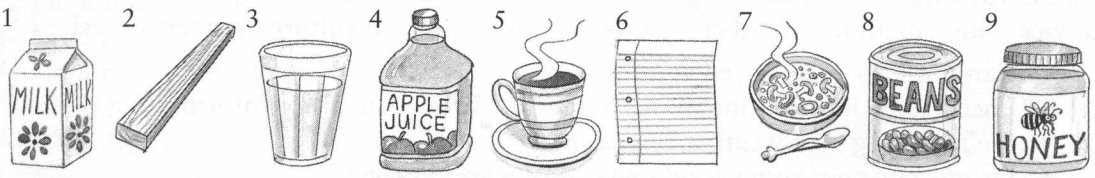


1. It's *salt*.
2. It's *a spoon*.
3. It's _____.
4. It's _____.
5. It's _____.
6. It's _____.
7. It's _____.
8. It's _____.
9. It's _____.
10. It's _____.
11. It's _____.
12. It's _____.

68.2 Some of these sentences are right, but some need *a/an*. Write *a/an* if necessary.

1. I haven't got watch. *a watch*
2. Do you like cheese? *OK*
3. Beth never wears hat. _____
4. Are you looking for job? _____
5. Eve doesn't eat meat. _____
6. Eve eats apple every day. _____
7. I'm going to concert tonight. _____
8. It was beautiful day. _____
9. Jamaica is island. _____
10. I don't need key. _____
11. Everybody needs food. _____
12. I've got good idea. _____
13. Can you drive car? _____
14. Do you want cup of tea? _____
15. I don't like tea without milk. _____
16. Don't go out without coat. _____

68.3 What are these things? Write *a . . . of . . .* for each picture. Choose from each box.



bottle	~~carton~~	jar	beans	juice	soup
bowl	cup	piece	coffee	~~milk~~	water
can	glass	piece	honey	paper	wood

1. *a carton of milk*
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____

UNIT 69

A car, some money (Countable and Uncountable 2)

A

a/an and some

A/an + *singular countable nouns* (**car/apple/shoe,** etc.):

- I need **a** new **car.**
- Would you like **an apple?**

an apple

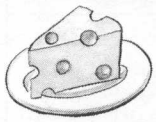
Some + *plural countable nouns* (**cars/apples/shoes,** etc.):

- I need **some** new **shoes.**
- Would you like **some apples?**

some apples

Some + *uncountable nouns* (**water/money/music,** etc.):

- I need **some money.**
- Would you like **some cheese?** *or*
- Would you like **a piece of** cheese?



some cheese *or* **a piece of** cheese

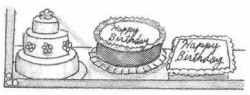
Compare **a** and **some:**

- Nicole bought **a hat, some shoes,** and **some perfume.**
- I read **a newspaper,** wrote **some letters,** and listened to **some music.**

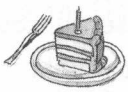
B

Many nouns are sometimes countable and sometimes uncountable. For example:

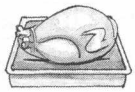
a cake



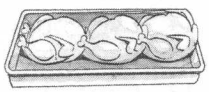
some cakes



some cake *or* **a piece of cake**



a chicken



some chickens

some chicken *or* **a piece of chicken**

- I'm going to make **a cake** tonight.
- Look! The bakery has **some** nice **cakes** today.
- Would you like **a piece of chicken?** (*or* . . . **some chicken?**)

C

Be careful with these nouns – they are usually uncountable:
advice information weather news bread hair furniture paper work

- Can I talk to you? I need **some advice.**
- I need **some information** about hotels in Mexico City. (*not* informations)
- We're having nice **weather** this year.
- Listen! I just got **some** good **news.** (*not* a good news)
- I'm going to buy **some bread.** (*not* a bread)
- Sue has very long **hair.** (*not* hairs)
- They've got **some** very nice **furniture** in their house. (*not* furnitures)
- I need **some paper / a piece of paper.** I want to make a list.
- "Do you like your job?" "Yes, but it's hard **work.**" (*not* a hard work)

We say **a job,** not "a work."

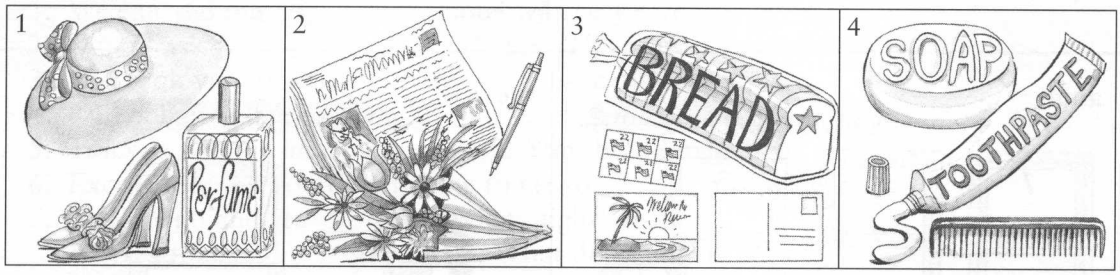
- I've got **a** new **job.** (*not* a new work)

Countable and Uncountable 1 Unit 68 ***Some/any*** Unit 77

Exercises

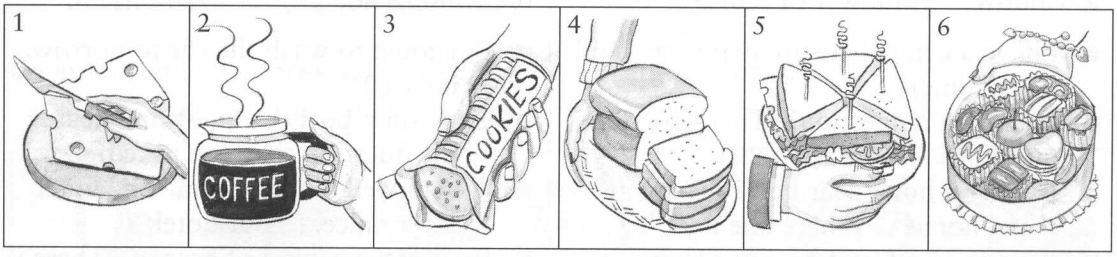
UNIT 69

69.1 What did you buy? Use the pictures and write sentences (*I bought . . .*).



1. *I bought a hat, some shoes, and some perfume.*
2. I bought _____ .
3. _____
4. _____

69.2 Write sentences with *Would you like a . . . ?* or *Would you like some . . . ?*.



1. *Would you like some cheese?*
2. Would you like _____ ?
3. Would _____ ?
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____

69.3 Write *a/an* or *some*.

1. I read *a* book and listened to *some* music.
2. I need _____ money. I want to buy _____ food.
3. We met _____ interesting people at the party.
4. I'm going to open _____ window to get _____ fresh air.
5. Ratana didn't eat much for lunch – only _____ apple and _____ bread.
6. We live in _____ big house. There's _____ nice yard with _____ beautiful trees.
7. I'm going to make a table. First I need _____ wood.
8. Listen to me. I'm going to give you _____ advice.
9. I want to write a letter. I need _____ paper and _____ pen.

69.4 Which is right?

1. I'm going to buy some new ~~shoe~~/shoes. (*shoes* is right)
2. Mark has brown eye/eyes.
3. Shu Ling has short black hair/hairs.
4. The guidebook had some information/informations about the city.
5. We're going to buy some new chair/chairs.
6. We're going to buy some new furniture/furnitures.
7. It's hard to find a work/job right now.
8. We had wonderful weather / a wonderful weather when we were on vacation.

UNIT 70

A/an and *the*

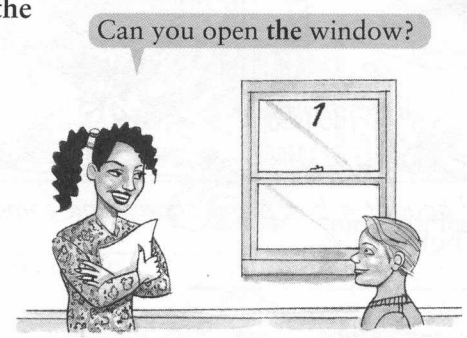
A

a/an

There are *three* windows here.
a window = window 1 or 2 or 3

- I have **a car.** (There are many cars and I have one.)
- Can I ask **a question?** (There are many questions – can I ask one?)
- Is there **a hotel** near here? (There are many hotels – is there one near here?)
- Paris is **an interesting city.** (There are many interesting cities and Paris is one.)
- Lisa is **a student.** (There are many students and Lisa is one.)

the



There is only *one* window here –
the window.

- I'm going to wash **the car** tomorrow. (= my car)
- Can you repeat **the question,** please? (= the question that you asked)
- We enjoyed our vacation. **The hotel** was very nice. (= our hotel)
- Paris is **the capital of France.** (There is only one capital of France.)
- Lisa is **the youngest student** in her class. (There is only one youngest student.)

Compare **a** and **the:**

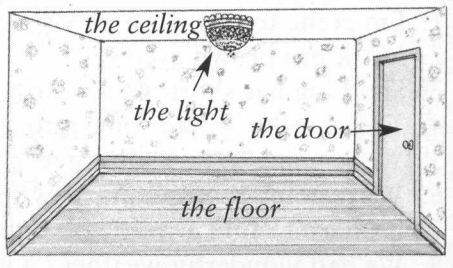
I bought **a jacket** and **a shirt**. **The jacket** was cheap, but **the shirt** was expensive.
(= **the** jacket and **the** shirt that I bought)

B

We say **the . . .** when it is clear which thing or person we mean. For example:

the door / the ceiling / the floor / the light, etc. *(of a room)*
the roof / the backyard / the kitchen / the bathroom, etc. *(of a house)*
the airport / the police station / the train station / the mayor's office, etc. *(of a city)*

- "Where's Tom?" "In **the kitchen.**" (= the kitchen of this house or apartment)
- Turn off **the light** and close **the door.** (= the light and the door of the room)
- Do you live far from **the airport?** (= the airport of your town)
- I'd like to speak to **the manager,** please. (= the manager of this store, etc.)



Exercises

70.1 Write *a/an* or *the*.

1. We enjoyed our trip. *The* hotel was very nice.
2. "Can I ask *a* question?" "Sure. What do you want to know?"
3. You look very tired. You need _____ vacation.
4. "Where's Tom?" "He's in _____ kitchen."
5. Tracy is _____ interesting person. You should meet her.
6. Excuse me, can you tell me how to get to _____ post office?
7. *A:* Let's go and see _____ movie tonight.
   B: OK, that's _____ good idea. What do you want to see?
8. It's _____ nice morning. Let's go for _____ walk.
9. Amanda is _____ student. When she finishes school, she wants to be _____ journalist. She lives in _____ apartment near _____ college where she is studying. _____ apartment is small, but she likes it.
10. Peter and Mary have two children, _____ boy and _____ girl. _____ boy is seven years old, and _____ girl is three. Peter works in _____ factory. Mary doesn't have _____ job right now.

70.2 Complete the sentences. Use *a* or *the* + one of these words:

airport cup ~~door~~ floor picture radio

70.3 Write *a/an* or *the* where necessary.

1. Don't forget to turn off light when you go out. *turn off the light*
2. Enjoy your trip, and don't forget to send me postcard. _____
3. What is name of this town? _____
4. Canada is very big country. _____
5. What is largest city in Canada? _____
6. I like this room, but I don't like color of ceiling. _____
7. "Are you OK?" "No, I've got headache." _____
8. We live in old house near station. _____
9. What is name of director of movie we saw last night? _____

UNIT 71

The . . .

A

We use **the** when it is clear which thing or person we mean.

- What is **the name** of this street? (This street has only one name.)
- Who is **the best player** on your team?
- Can you tell me **the time,** please? (= the time *now*)
- My office is on **the first floor.** (= the first floor of the building)

Don't forget to use **the.**

- Do you live near **the airport?** (*not* near airport)
- Excuse me, where is **the nearest bank?** (*not* where is nearest . . .)

B

the same . . .

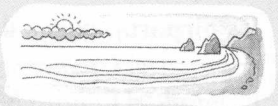
- We live on **the same street.** (*not* on same street)
- "Are these two books different?" "No, they're **the same.**" (*not* they're same)

C

We say:

the sun / the moon / the world / the sky / the ocean / the country

- **The sky** is blue and **the sun** is shining.
- Do you live in a city or in **the country?**

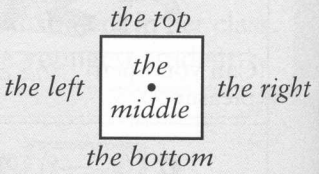


the police

- After the robbery, **the police** asked us a lot of questions.

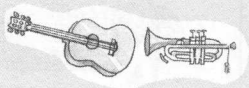
the top / the end / the middle / the left, etc.

- Write your name at **the top** of the page.
- My house is at **the end** of this block.
- The table is in **the middle** of the room.
- Do you drive on **the right** or on **the left** in your country?



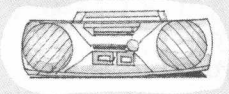
play **the piano / the guitar / the trumpet,** etc. (musical instruments)

- Paula is learning to play **the piano.**



the radio

- I listen to **the radio** a lot.



D

We do *not* use **the** with:

television/TV

- I watch **television/TV** a lot.
- What's on **television** tonight?

but ■ Can you turn off **the TV?** (= the TV set)

breakfast/lunch/dinner

- What did you have for **breakfast?** (*not* the breakfast)
- **Dinner** is ready!

next/last + week/month/year/summer/Monday, etc.

- I'm not working **next week.** (*not* the next week)
- Did you take a vacation **last summer?** (*not* the last summer)

A/an* and *the **Unit 70** ***The*** **Units 72–74** ***The oldest / the most expensive,*** **etc. Unit 91**

Exercises

71.1 Write *the* where necessary. Write *OK* if the sentence is correct.

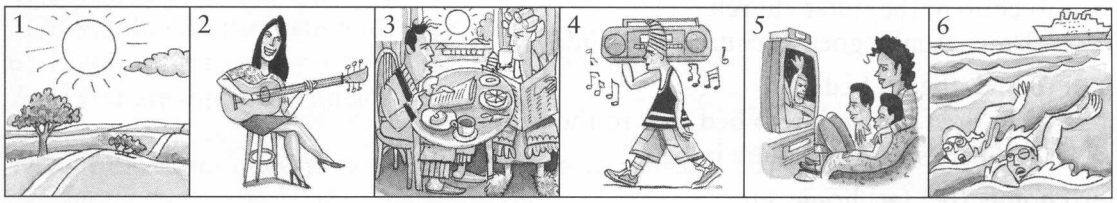
1. What is name of this street? *the name*
2. What's on television tonight? *OK*
3. Our apartment is on second floor. _____
4. Would you like to go to moon? _____
5. What's best hotel in this town? _____
6. What time is lunch? _____
7. How far is it to football stadium? _____
8. We're taking a trip at end of May. _____
9. What are you doing next weekend? _____
10. I didn't like her first time I met her. _____
11. I'm going out after dinner. _____
12. What's biggest city in world? _____
13. My sister got married last month. _____
14. My dictionary is on top shelf on right. _____
15. We live in country about five miles from nearest town. _____

71.2 Complete the sentences. Use *the same* + one of these words:

age color problem ~~street~~ time

1. I live on Water Street and you live on Water Street. We live on *the same street*.
2. I arrived at 8:30 and you arrived at 8:30. We arrived at _____.
3. Jim is 25 and Sue is 25. Jim and Sue are _____.
4. My shirt is dark blue and so is my jacket. My shirt and jacket are _____.
5. I have no money and you have no money. We have _____.

71.3 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use *the* if necessary.



1. *The sun* is shining.
2. She's playing _____.
3. They're having _____.
4. He's listening to _____.
5. They're watching _____.
6. They're swimming in _____.

71.4 Complete these sentences. Choose from the list. Use *the* if necessary.

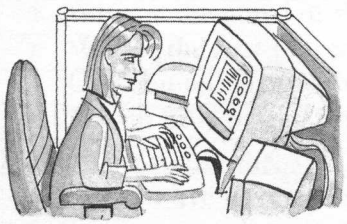
capital ~~dinner~~ police lunch middle name sky television

1. We had *dinner* at a restaurant last night.
2. We stayed at a very nice hotel, but I don't remember _____.
3. _____ is very clear tonight. You can see all the stars.
4. I watched three movies on _____ last night.
5. _____ stopped me because I was driving too fast.
6. Tokyo is _____ of Japan.
7. "What did you have for _____?" "A salad."
8. I woke up in _____ of the night.

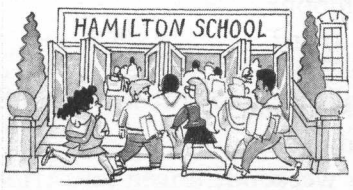
UNIT 72

Go to work go home go to the movies

A



She's **at work.**



They're going **to school.**

He's **in bed.**

We say:

(go) **to work,** (be) **at work,** start **work,** finish **work**
- Goodbye! I'm **going to work** now. (*not* to the work)
- I **finish work** at 5 o'clock every day.

(go) **to school,** (be) **at school,** start **school,** finish **school,** etc.
- What did you learn **at school** today? (*not* at the school)
- Some children don't like **school.**

(go) **to college,** (be) **in college**
- Helen wants to **go to college** when she finishes high school.
- What did you study **in college?**

(go) **to prison/jail,** (be) **in prison/jail**
- Why is he **in prison?** What did he do?

(go) **to church,** (be) **in/at church**
- Dave usually **goes to church** on Sundays.

(go) **to bed,** (be) **in bed**
- I'm tired. I'm **going to bed** (*not* to the bed)
- "Where's Kim?" "She's **in bed.**"

(go) **home,** (be) (**at**) **home,** etc.
- I'm tired. I'm **going home.** (*not* to home)
- Are you going out tonight, or are you **staying home?** (*or* staying **at** home)

B

We say:

(go to) **the bank / the post office / the hospital / the station / the airport**
- "Are you going to **the bank?**" "No, **the post office.**"
- Brian was in an accident. He had to go to **the hospital.**
- Does this bus go to **the airport?**

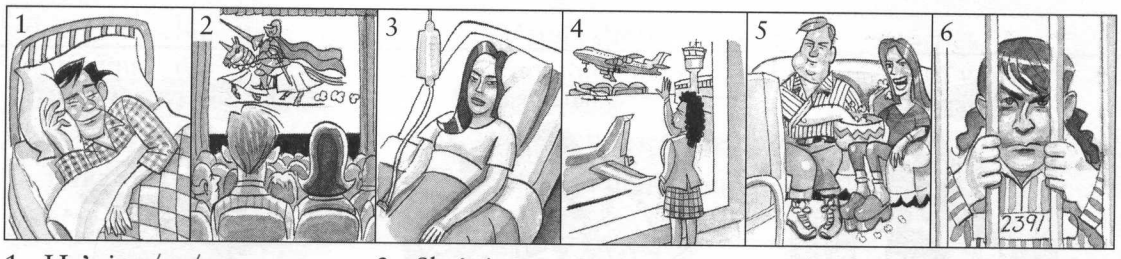
(go to) **the theater / the movies**
- I never go to **the theater,** but I go to **the movies** a lot.

(go to) **the doctor, the dentist**
- You're sick. Why don't you go to **the doctor?**
- I'm going to **the dentist** tomorrow.

The . . . **Units 70–71, 73–74** ***In/at*** **Units 101–102** ***To/in/at*** **Unit 103** ***(At) home*** **Unit 103**

Exercises

72.1 Where are these people? Complete the sentences. Sometimes you need *the*.



1. He's in *bed* .
2. They're at _____ .
3. She's in _____ .
4. She's at _____ .
5. They're at _____ .
6. He's in _____ .

72.2 Complete the sentences. Choose from the list. Use *the* if necessary.

~~bank~~ bed ~~church~~ home post office school station

1. I need some money. I have to go to *the bank* .
2. Dave usually goes to *church* on Sundays.
3. In the U.S., children start _____ at the age of five.
4. There were a lot of people at _____ waiting for the train.
5. I called you last night, but you weren't at _____ .
6. I'm going to _____ now. Good night!
7. I'm going to _____ to get some stamps.

72.3 Complete the sentences. Use *go*. Sometimes you need *the*.

1. If you want to catch a plane, you *go to the airport* .
2. If you want to see a movie, you go to _____ .
3. If you are tired and you want to sleep, you _____ .
4. If you rob a bank and the police catch you, you _____ .
5. If you have a problem with your teeth, you _____ .
6. If you want to study after you finish high school, you _____ .
7. If you are injured in an accident, you _____ .

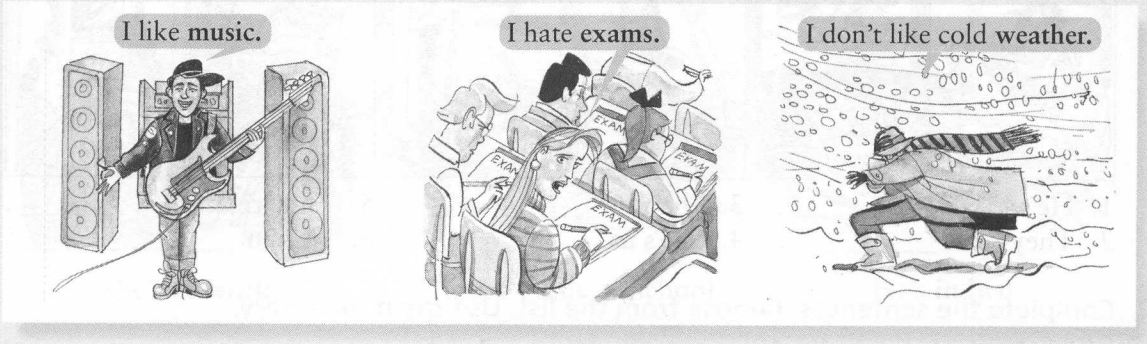
72.4 Write *the* where necessary. Write *OK* if the sentence is correct.

1. We went to movies last night. *to the movies*
2. I finish work at 5 o'clock every day. *OK*
3. Yuki wasn't feeling well yesterday, so she went to doctor. _____
4. I wasn't feeling well this morning, so I stayed in bed. _____
5. Why is Angela always late for work? _____
6. "Where are your children?" "They're at school." _____
7. We have no money in bank. _____
8. When I was younger, I went to church every Sunday. _____
9. What time do you usually get home from work? _____
10. "Where shall we meet?" "At station." _____
11. Jim is sick. He's in hospital. _____
12. Makoto takes his children to school every day. _____
13. Would you like to go to college? _____
14. Would you like to go to theater tonight? _____

UNIT 73

I like music. I hate exams.

A



Do not use **the** for general ideas.

- I like **music**, especially **classical music.** (*not* the music . . . the classical music)
- We don't eat **meat** very often. (*not* the meat)
- **Life** is not possible without **water.** (*not* The life . . . the water)
- I hate **exams.** (*not* the exams)
- Do you know where they sell **foreign newspapers?**
- I'm not very good at writing **letters.**

Do not use **the** for games and sports.

- My favorite sports are **tennis** and **skiing.** (*not* the tennis . . . the skiing)

Do not use **the** for languages or academic subjects (**history/geography/physics/biology,** etc.).

- Do you think **English** is difficult? (*not* the English)
- Tom's brother is studying **physics** and **chemistry.**

B

Flowers or **the flowers?**

Compare:

- **Flowers** are beautiful. (= flowers in general)
- I don't like **cold weather.** (= cold weather in general)
- We don't eat **fish** very often. (= fish in general)
- Are you interested in **history?** (= history in general)

- I love your garden! **The flowers** are beautiful. (= the flowers in this garden)
- **The weather** isn't very good today. (= the weather today)
- We had a great meal last night. **The fish** was excellent. (= the fish we ate last night)
- Are you interested in **the history** of your country?

Exercises

73.1 What do you think about these things?

dogs	big cities	fishing	TV quiz shows	exams	parties
museums	tea	basketball	computer games	loud music	hard work

Choose seven things from the box. Write sentences beginning:

I like **I don't like** **I love** **I hate** **I don't mind** (= it's OK)

1. *I hate exams.*
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____

73.2 Are you interested in these things? Write sentences with:

I'm (very) interested in . . .	I know a lot about . . .	I don't know much about . . .
I'm not interested in . . .	I know a little about . . .	I don't know anything about . . .

1. (history) *I'm very interested in history.*
2. (politics) I _____ .
3. (sports) _____
4. (art) _____
5. (astronomy) _____
6. (economics) _____

73.3 Which is right?

1. My favorite sport is tennis / ~~the tennis~~. (*tennis* is right)
2. I like this hotel. ~~Rooms~~ / The rooms are very nice. (*The rooms* is right)
3. Everybody needs friends / the friends.
4. Tracy doesn't go to parties / the parties very often.
5. I went shopping this morning. Stores / The stores were very crowded.
6. "Where's milk / the milk?" "It's in the fridge."
7. I don't like milk / the milk. I never drink it.
8. "Do you play any sports?" "Yes, I play football / the football."
9. These days a lot of people use computers / the computers.
10. We went for a swim. Water / The water was very cold.
11. I don't like swimming in cold water / the cold water.
12. Excuse me, can you pass salt / the salt, please?
13. I like this town. I like people / the people here.
14. Vegetables / The vegetables are good for you.
15. I can't sing this song. I don't know words / the words.
16. I enjoy taking pictures / the pictures. It's my hobby.
17. Look at pictures / the pictures that I took when I was on vacation.
18. English / The English is used a lot in international business / the international business.
19. Money / The money doesn't always bring happiness / the happiness.

UNIT 74

The . . . (Names of Places)

A

Places (continents, countries, states, islands, cities, etc.)

In general we do not use **the** + names of places.

- **Bangkok** is the capital of **Thailand.**
- **Easter Island** is in the Pacific.
- **Peru** is in **South America.**
- **Quebec** is a province of **Canada.**

But we use **the** in names with **republic/states/kingdom.**

the Dominican **Republic** — **the** United **States** of America (**the** USA)
the Czech **Republic** — **the** United **Kingdom** (**the** UK)

B

the -s (plural names)

We use **the** + plural names of countries/islands/mountains.

the Netherlands — **the** Canary Islands
the Philippines — **the** Andes

C

Oceans, rivers, etc.

We use **the** + names of oceans/seas/rivers/canals.

the Pacific (Ocean) — **the** Amazon (River)
the Mediterranean (Sea) — **the** Panama Canal

D

Places in towns (streets, buildings, etc.)

In general we do not use **the** + names of streets, squares, etc.

- Kevin lives on **Central Avenue.**
- **Times Square** is in New York.
- Where is **Main Street,** please?

We do not use **the** + names + airports/stations/universities/parks, etc.

Kennedy Airport — **McGill University**
Pennsylvania Station — **Yosemite** (National **Park**)

But we use **the** + names of universities with **of** (see Section E).

We generally use **the** with names of hotels, restaurants, theaters, museums, monuments.

the Milton (Hotel) — **the** New Broadway (Theater)
the Millhouse (Restaurant) — **the** Metropolitan (Museum)
the Springfield Cineplex (movie theater) — **the** Lincoln Memorial

E

the . . . of . . .

We use **the** + names with **of . . . .**

the University **of** California — **the** Great Wall **of** China
the Bank **of** Nova Scotia — **the** Tower **of** London

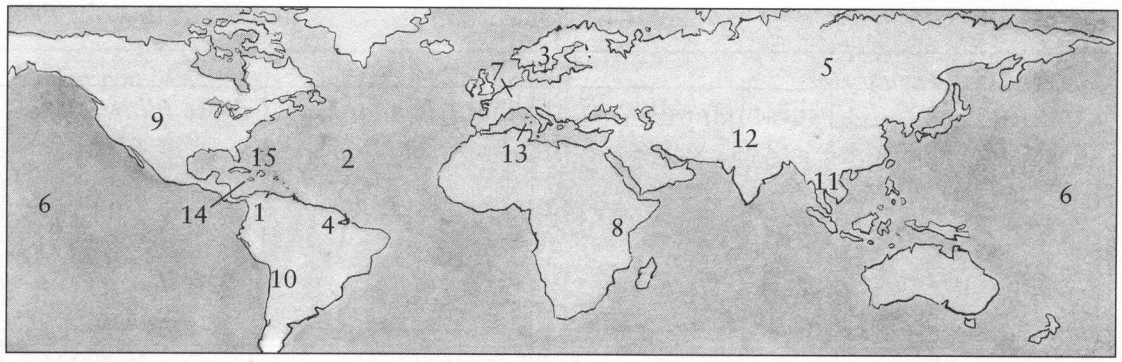
F

the north / the south / the east / the west

- "Which part of Canada did you go to?" "To **the west/north.**"

Exercises

74.1 Answer these geography questions. Choose from the box. Use *The* if necessary.



1. *Bogota* is the capital of Colombia.
2. *The Atlantic* is between Africa and the Americas.
3. _____ is a country in northern Europe.
4. _____ is a river in South America.
5. _____ is the largest continent in the world.
6. _____ is the largest ocean.
7. _____ is a river in Europe.
8. _____ is a country in East Africa.
9. _____ is between Canada and Mexico.
10. _____ are mountains in South America.
11. _____ is the capital of Thailand.
12. _____ are mountains in Asia.
13. _____ is between Europe and Africa.
14. _____ is an island in the Caribbean.
15. _____ are a group of islands near Florida.

Amazon
Andes
Asia
~~Atlantic~~
Bahamas
Bangkok
~~Bogota~~
Himalayas
Jamaica
Kenya
Mediterranean
Pacific
Rhine
Sweden
United States

74.2 Write *the* where necessary. If the sentence is correct, write *OK*.

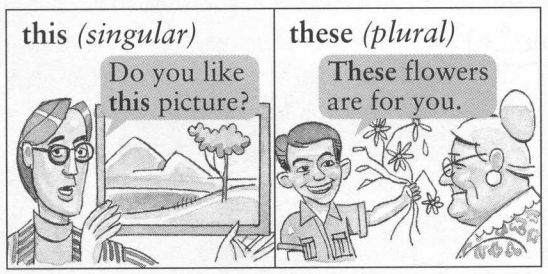
1. Kevin lives on Central Avenue. *OK*
2. We went to see a play at National Theater. *at the National Theater*
3. Have you ever been to China? _____
4. Have you ever been to Philippines? _____
5. Can you tell me where Westside Cineplex is? _____
6. Can you tell me where Fifth Street is? _____
7. Can you tell me where Museum of Modern Art is? _____
8. I'll meet you in front of Washington Monument. _____
9. The sun rises in east and sets in west. _____
10. Europe is bigger than Australia. _____
11. Which river is longer – Mississippi or Nile? _____
12. We stayed at Park Hotel near Central Park. _____
13. How far is it from Times Square to Penn Station? _____
14. Rocky Mountains are in North America. _____
15. Texas is famous for oil and cowboys. _____
16. Panama Canal joins Atlantic Ocean and Pacific Ocean. _____
17. I hope to go to United States next year. _____
18. Alan went to University of Michigan. _____

Additional Exercises 31–32 (pages 257–258)

UNIT 75

This/these and *that/those*

A



this picture
(= this picture *here*)

these flowers
(= these flowers *here*)

that picture
(= that picture *there*)

those people
(= those people *there*)

B

We use **this/these/that/those** with a *noun* (**this picture / these girls,** etc.) or without a noun.

with a noun

- **This hotel** is expensive, but it's very nice.
- Do you like **these shoes?** I bought them last week.
- "Who's **that girl?**" "I don't know."
- **Those apples** look good. Can I have one?

without a noun

- **This** is a nice hotel, but it's very expensive.
- "Excuse me, is **this** your bag?" "Oh yes, thank you."
- Who's **that?** (= Who is that person?)
- Which shoes do you like better – **these** or **those?**

C

That = something that *has happened*

- "I'm sorry, I forgot to call you." "**That's** all right."
- **That** was a really nice meal. Thank you very much.

That = what somebody *has just said*

- "You're a teacher, aren't you?" "Yes, **that's** right."
- "Mark has a new job." "He does? I didn't know **that.**"
- "I'm going on vacation next week." "Oh, **that's** nice."

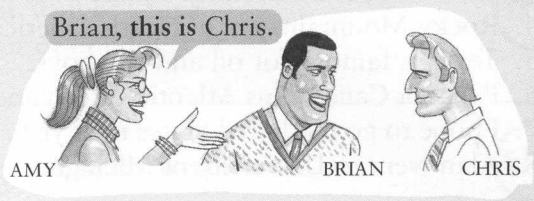
D

We use **this is . . .** and **is this . . . ?** on the telephone.

- Hello, **this is** Dave. (= the speaker)
- **Is this** Sarah? (= the other person)

We use **this is . . .** to introduce people.

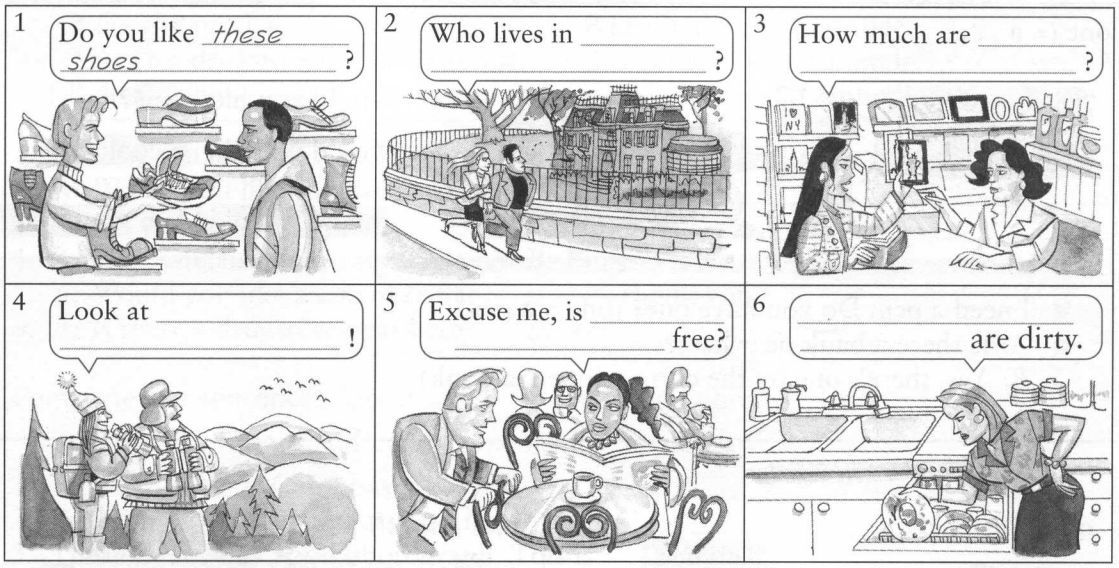
- *Amy:* Brian, **this is** Chris.
  Brian: Hi, Chris. Nice to meet you.
  Chris: Hi, Brian.



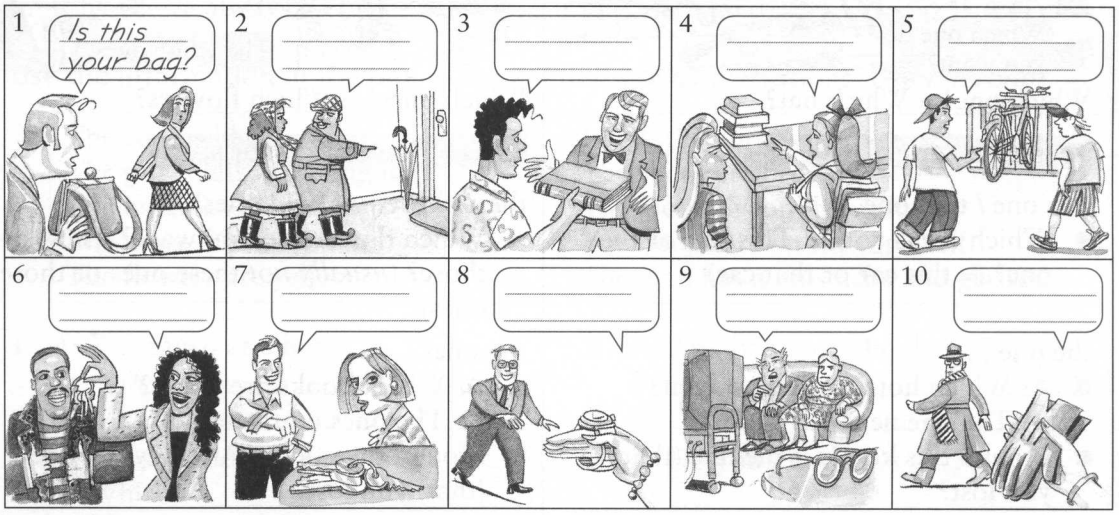
Exercises

75.1 Complete the sentences. Use *this/these/that/those* + one of these words:

birds dishes house postcards chair ~~shoes~~



75.2 Write questions: *Is this/that your . . . ?* or *Are these/those your . . . ?*



75.3 Complete the sentences with *this is* or *that's* or *that.*

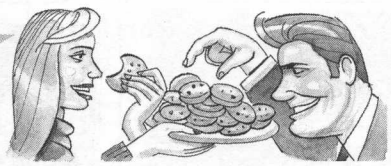
1. *A:* I'm sorry I'm late.
   B: That's all right.
2. *A:* I can't come to the party tomorrow.
   B: Oh, _____ too bad. Why not?
3. *(on the telephone)*
   Sue: Hello, Kim. _____ Sue.
   Kim: Oh, hi, Sue. How are you?
4. *A:* You're lazy!
   B: _____ not true!
5. *A:* Beth plays the piano very well.
   B: Really? I didn't know _____ .
6. *(Mark meets Paul's sister Amy.)*
   Paul: Mark, _____ my sister Amy.
   Mark: Hi, Amy.
7. *A:* I'm sorry I was angry yesterday.
   B: _____ OK. Forget it!
8. *A:* You're a friend of John's, aren't you?
   B: Yes, _____ right.

UNIT 76

One/ones

A

one (= a . . .)



Would you like **one**?
= Would you like **a cookie**?

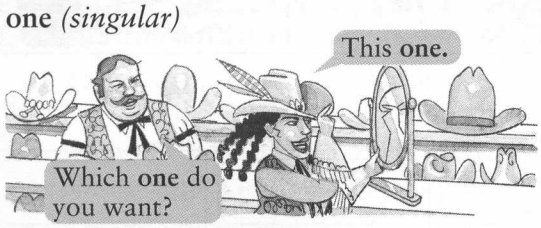
one = a cookie / an apple, etc.

- I need **a pen.** Do you have **one?** (**one** = **a pen**)
- *A:* Is there **a bank** near here?
  B: Yes, there's **one** on the corner. (**one** = **a bank**)

B

one and ones

one *(singular)*



Which **one?** = Which **hat?**

one = hat/car/girl, etc.

this one / that one

- Which **car** is yours? **This one** or **that one?** (= this car or that car)

the one . . .

- *A:* Which **hotel** did you stay at?
  B: **The one** near the airport.
- I found this **key.** Is it **the one** (that) you lost?

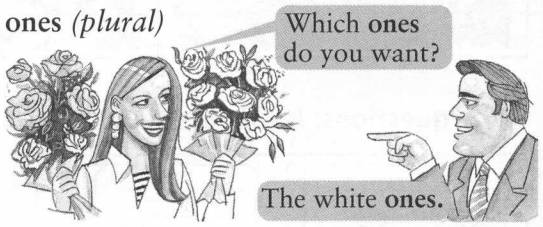
the . . . one

- I don't like the black **coat,** but I like **the red one.**
- Don't buy that **camera.** Buy **the other one.**

a/an . . . one

- This **cup** is dirty. Can I have **a clean one?**
- That cookie was good. I'm going to have **another one.**

ones *(plural)*



Which **ones?** = Which **flowers?**

ones = flowers/cars/girls, etc.

these/those (*without* ones)

- Which flowers do you want? **These** or **those?** (*usually not* these ones or those ones)

the ones . . .

- *A:* Which **books** are yours?
  B: **The ones** on the table.
- I found these **keys.** Are they **the ones** (that) you lost?

the . . . ones

- I don't like the black **shoes,** but I like **the brown ones.**
- Don't buy those **apples.** Buy **the other ones.**

some . . . ones

- These **cups** are dirty. Can we have **some clean ones?**
- My **shoes** are old. I'm going to buy **some new ones.**

Which . . . ? **Unit 48** ***Another*** **Unit 66** ***This/that,*** **etc. Unit 75**

Exercises

76.1 **A asks B some questions. Use the information in the box to write B's answers. Use *one* (not *a/an . . .*) in the answers.**

B doesn't need a car.	B just had a cup of coffee.
There's a drugstore on First Avenue.	B is going to buy a bicycle.
~~B doesn't have a pen.~~	B doesn't have an umbrella.

1. *A:* Can you lend me a pen? *B:* I'm sorry, *I don't have one* .
2. *A:* Would you like to have a car? *B:* No, I don't _____ .
3. *A:* Do you have a bicycle? *B:* No, but _____ .
4. *A:* Can you lend me an umbrella? *B:* I'm sorry, but _____ .
5. *A:* Would you like a cup of coffee? *B:* No, thank you. _____
6. *A:* Is there a drugstore near here? *B:* Yes, _____ .

76.2 **Complete the sentences. Use *a/an . . . one*. Use the words in the list.**

better **big** ~~**clean**~~ **different** **new** **old**

1. This cup is dirty. Can I have *a clean one* ?
2. I'm going to sell my old car and buy _____ .
3. That's not a very good photograph. This is _____ .
4. I want today's newspaper. This is _____ .
5. This box is too small. I need _____ .
6. Why do we always go to the same restaurant? Let's go to _____ .

76.3 **Use the information in the box to complete these conversations. Use *one/ones*.**

The coat is black.	I took the photos at the beach last week.
The girl is tall with long hair.	The shoes are brown.
~~The hotel is near the airport.~~	The picture is on the wall.
The house has a red door.	The books are on the top shelf.
The flowers are yellow.	The man has a mustache and glasses.

1. *A:* We stayed at a hotel.
   B: *Which one* ?
   A: *The one near the airport.*
2. *A:* Those shoes are nice.
   B: Which _____ ?
   A: The _____ ones.
3. *A:* That's a nice house.
   B: _____ ?
   A: _____ with _____ .
4. *A:* I like that coat.
   B: _____ ?
   A: _____
5. *A:* I like that picture.
   B: _____ ?
   A: _____
6. *A:* Are those your books?
   B: _____ ?
   A: _____
7. *A:* Do you know that girl?
   B: _____ ?
   A: _____
8. *A:* Those flowers are beautiful.
   B: _____ ?
   A: _____
9. *A:* Who's that man?
   B: _____ ?
   A: _____
10. *A:* Have you seen my photos yet?
    B: _____ ?
    A: _____

UNIT 77

Some and *any*

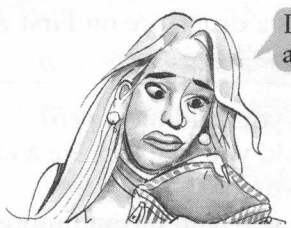
A

some

Use **some** in *positive* sentences.

- I'm going to buy **some** clothes.
- There's **some** milk in the fridge.
- We made **some** mistakes.

any



Use **any** in *negative* sentences.

- I'm **not** going to buy **any** clothes.
- There **isn't any** orange juice in the fridge.
- We **didn't** make **any** mistakes.

B

any and **some** in questions

In most questions (but not all) we use **any** (*not* **some**).

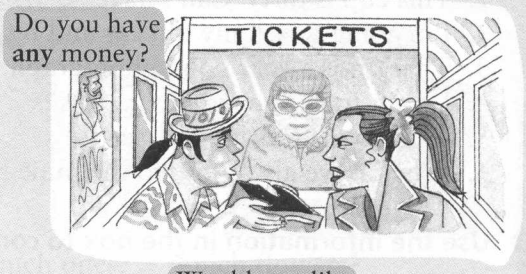
- Is there **any** milk in the fridge?
- Does he have **any** friends?
- Do you need **any** help?

We normally use **some** (not **any**) when we *offer* things (**Would you like . . . ?**)

- *A:* Would you like **some** coffee?
  B: Yes, please.

or when we *ask for* things (**Can I have . . . ?**, etc.).

- *A:* Can I have **some** soup, please?
  B: Yes. Help yourself.
- *A:* Can you lend me **some** money?
  B: Sure. How much do you need?



C

some and **any** without a *noun*

- I didn't take any pictures, but Amy took **some.** (= some pictures)
- You can have some coffee, but I don't want **any.** (= any coffee)
- I just made some coffee. Would you like **some?** (= some coffee)
- "Where's your luggage?" "I don't have **any.**" (= any luggage)
- "Are there any cookies?" "Yes, there are **some** in the kitchen." (= some cookies)

D

something/somebody (*or* **someone**)

- She said **something.**
- I saw **somebody** (*or* **someone**).
- Would you like **something** to eat?
- **Somebody's** at the door.

anything/anybody (*or* **anyone**)

- She **didn't** say **anything.**
- I **didn't** see **anybody** (*or* **anyone**).
- Are you doing **anything** tonight?
- Where's Amy? Has **anybody** seen her?

A/some **Unit 69** ***Somebody/anything,*** **etc. Unit 80**

Exercises

77.1 Write *some* or *any*.

1. I bought *some* cheese, but I didn't buy *any* bread.
2. I'm going to the post office. I need _____ stamps.
3. There aren't _____ gas stations in this part of town.
4. Eric and Alice don't have _____ children.
5. Have you got _____ brothers or sisters?
6. There are _____ beautiful flowers in the park.
7. Do you know _____ good hotels in Miami?
8. "Would you like _____ coffee?" "Yes, please."
9. When we were on vacation, we visited _____ very interesting places.
10. Don't buy _____ rice. We don't need _____ .
11. I went out to buy _____ oranges, but they didn't have _____ at the store.
12. I'm thirsty. Can I have _____ water, please?

77.2 Complete the sentences. Use *some* or *any* + one of these words:

air	friends	help	letters	pictures
batteries	fruit	languages	milk	~~shampoo~~

1. I want to wash my hair. Is there *any shampoo* ?
2. This evening I'm going to write _____ .
3. I don't have my camera, so I can't take _____ .
4. Do you speak _____ foreign _____ ?
5. Last night I went to a restaurant with _____ of mine.
6. Can I have _____ in my coffee, please?
7. That clock isn't working. There aren't _____ in it.
8. It's hot in this office. I'm going out for _____ fresh _____ .
9. "Would you like _____ ?" "No, thank you. I'm not hungry right now."
10. I can do this job alone. I don't need _____ .

77.3 Complete the sentences. Use *some* or *any*.

1. Min Fang didn't take any pictures, but *I took some* . (I / take)
2. "Where's your luggage?" " *I don't have any* ." (I / not / have)
3. "Do you need any money?" "No, thank you. _____ ." (I / have)
4. "Can I borrow some money?" "Sorry, _____ ." (I / not / have)
5. The tomatoes weren't very good, so _____ . (I / not / buy)
6. There were some nice oranges at the store, so _____ . (I / buy)

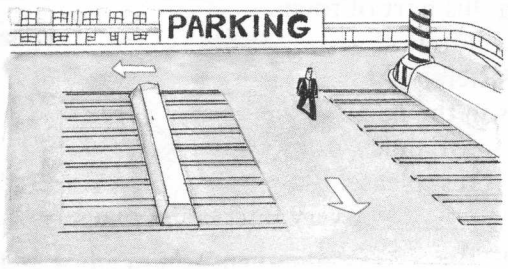
77.4 Write *something/somebody/anything/anybody*.

1. Luis said *something* to me, but I didn't understand it.
2. "What's wrong?" "There's _____ in my eye."
3. Do you know _____ about politics?
4. I went to the store, but I didn't buy _____ .
5. _____ broke the window. I don't know who.
6. There isn't _____ in the bag. It's empty.
7. I'm looking for my keys. Has _____ seen them?
8. Would you like _____ to drink?
9. I didn't eat _____ because I wasn't hungry.
10. This is a secret. Please don't tell _____ .

UNIT 78

Not + any, no, and none

A



The parking lot is empty.

There **aren't any** cars / There are **no** cars } in the parking lot.

How many cars are there in the parking lot? **None.**

not (-n't) + any

- There **aren't any** cars in the parking lot.
- Karen and Steve **don't** have **any** children.
- You can have some coffee, but I **don't** want **any.**

no + *noun* (**no cars / no garage,** etc.)

no . . . = not + any *or* **not + a**

- There are **no cars** in the parking lot. (= there **aren't any** cars)
- We have **no coffee.** (= we **don't have any** coffee)
- It's a nice house, but there's **no garage.** (= there **isn't a** garage)

We use **no . . .** especially after **have/has** and **there is/are.**

negative verb + **any** = *positive verb* + **no**

- They **don't** have **any** children. *or* They **have no** children. (*not* They don't have no children)
- There **isn't any** sugar in your coffee. *or* **There's no** sugar in your coffee.

B

Compare **no** and **none:**

Use **no** + *noun* (**no money / no children,** etc.).

- We have **no money.**
- Everything was OK. There were **no problems.**

Use **none** alone (*without* a noun).

- "How much money do you have?" "**None.**" (= no money)
- "Were there any problems?" "No, **none.**" (= no problems)

C

none and **no one**

none = 0 (zero)
no one = **nobody**

None is an answer for **How much? / How many?** (things or people).

- "**How much** money do you have?" "**None.**" (= no money)
- "**How many** people did you meet?" "**None.**" (= no people)

No one is an answer for **Who?.**

- "**Who** did you meet?" "**No one.**" *or* "**Nobody.**"

Negatives Unit 44 ***Some/any*** Unit 77 ***Anybody/nobody/nothing,* etc.** Units 79–80

Exercises

78.1 **Write these sentences again with *no*.**

1. We don't have any money. *We have no money.*
2. There aren't any stores near here. There are _____.
3. Carol doesn't have any free time. _____
4. There isn't a light in this room. _____

Write these sentences again with *any*.

5. We have no money. *We don't have any money.*
6. There's no gas in the car. _____
7. There are no buses today. _____
8. Marcos has no brothers or sisters. _____

78.2 **Write *no* or *any*.**

1. There's *no* sugar in your coffee.
2. My brother is married, but he doesn't have _____ children.
3. Sue doesn't speak _____ foreign languages.
4. I'm afraid there's _____ coffee. Would you like some tea?
5. "Look at those birds!" "Birds? Where? I can't see _____ birds."
6. "Do you know where Jessica is?" "No, I have _____ idea."

Write *no, any,* or *none*.

7. There aren't _____ pictures on the wall.
8. The weather was cold, but there was _____ wind.
9. I wanted to buy some oranges, but they didn't have _____ at the store.
10. Everything was correct. There were _____ mistakes.
11. "How much luggage have you got?" "_____."
12. "How much luggage have you got?" "I haven't got _____."

78.3 **Complete the sentences. Use *any* or *no* + one of these words:**

air conditioning	difference	friends	money	~~problems~~
answer	film	furniture	photographs	questions

1. Everything was OK. There were *no problems*.
2. They want to take a vacation, but they have _____.
3. I'm not going to answer _____.
4. He's always alone. He has _____.
5. There is _____ between these two machines. They're exactly the same.
6. There wasn't _____ in the room. It was completely empty.
7. I tried to call you yesterday, but there was _____.
8. The house is hot because there isn't _____.
9. I can't take _____. There's _____ in the camera.

78.4 **Write short answers (one or two words) to these questions. Use *None* where necessary.**

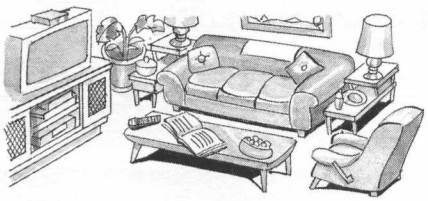
1. How many letters did you write yesterday? *Two.* OR *A lot.* OR *None.*
2. How many sisters do you have? _____
3. How much coffee did you drink yesterday? _____
4. How many pictures have you taken today? _____
5. How many legs does a snake have? _____

UNIT 79

Not + anybody/anyone/anything and *nobody/no one/nothing*

A

not + anybody / anyone
nobody / no one
(for *people*)



There **isn't** { **anybody** / **anyone** } in the room.

There **is** { **nobody** / **no one** } in the room.

A: **Who** is in the room?
B: **Nobody. / No one.**

-body and **-one** are the same:
anybody = anyone **nobody = no one**

not + anything
nothing
(for *things*)

There **isn't anything** in the bag.

There **is nothing** in the bag.

A: **What's** in the bag?
B: **Nothing.**

B

not + anybody/anyone
- I **don't** know **anybody** (*or* **anyone**) here.

nobody = not + anybody
no one = not + anyone
- I'm lonely. I have **nobody** to talk to. (= I **don't** have **anybody.**)
- The house is empty. There is **no one** in it. (= There **isn't anyone** in it.)

not + anything
- I **can't** remember **anything.**

nothing = not + anything
- She said **nothing.** (= She **didn't** say **anything.**)
- There's **nothing** to eat. (= There **isn't anything** to eat.)

C

You can use **nobody / no one / nothing** at the beginning of a sentence or alone (to answer a question).

- The house is empty. **Nobody** lives there. (*not* Anybody lives there)
- "Who did you speak to?" **"No one."**
- **Nothing** happened. (*not* Anything happened)
- "What did you say?" **"Nothing."**

D

Remember: *negative verb* + **anybody/anyone/anything**
positive verb + **nobody/no one/nothing**

- He **doesn't** know **anything.** (*not* he doesn't know nothing)
- **Don't** tell **anybody.** (*not* don't tell nobody)
- There **is nothing** to do in this town. (*not* there isn't nothing)

Some/any **Unit 77** ***Any* and *no*** **Unit 78** ***Somebody/anything/nowhere,* etc.** **Unit 80**

Exercises

79.1 **Write these sentences again with *nobody / no one* or *nothing*.**

1. There isn't anything in the bag. *There's nothing in the bag.*
2. There isn't anybody in the office. There's _____.
3. I don't have anything to do. I _____.
4. There isn't anything on TV. _____
5. There wasn't anyone at home. _____
6. We didn't find anything. _____

79.2 **Write these sentences again with *anybody/anyone* or *anything*.**

1. There's nothing in the bag. *There isn't anything in the bag.*
2. There was nobody on the bus. There wasn't _____.
3. I have nothing to read. _____
4. I have no one to help me. _____
5. Sarai heard nothing. _____
6. We have nothing for dinner. _____

79.3 **Answer these questions with *nobody / no one* or *nothing*.**

1a. What did you say? *Nothing.*
2a. Who saw you? *Nobody.*
3a. What do you want? _____
4a. Who did you meet? _____
5a. Who knows the answer? _____
6a. What did you buy? _____
7a. What happened? _____
8a. Who was late? _____

Now answer the same questions with full sentences. Use *nobody / no one / nothing* or *anybody / anyone / anything*.

1b. *I didn't say anything.*
2b. *Nobody saw me.*
3b. I don't _____.
4b. I _____.
5b. _____ the answer.
6b. _____
7b. _____
8b. _____

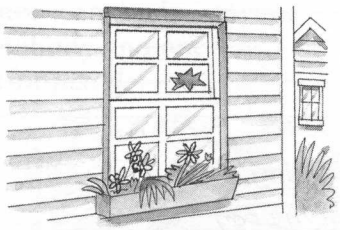
79.4 **Complete the sentences. Use *nobody / no one / nothing / anybody / anyone / anything*.**

1. That house is empty. *Nobody* lives there.
2. Brian has a bad memory. He can't remember *anything*.
3. Be quiet! Don't say _____.
4. I didn't know about the meeting. _____ told me.
5. "What did you have to eat?" "_____. I wasn't hungry."
6. I didn't eat _____. I wasn't hungry.
7. Jenny was sitting alone. She wasn't with _____.
8. I'm sorry I can't help you. There's _____ I can do.
9. I don't know _____ about car engines.
10. The museum is free. It doesn't cost _____ to go in.
11. I heard a knock on the door, but when I opened it, there was _____ there.
12. Antonio spoke very fast. I didn't understand _____.
13. "What are you doing tonight?" "_____. Why?"
14. Helen is out of town. _____ knows where she is. She didn't tell _____ where she was going.

UNIT 80

Somebody, anything, nowhere, etc.

A



Somebody (*or* **someone**) has broken the window.

somebody/someone = a person, but we don't know who

She has **something** in her mouth.

something = a thing, but we don't know what

Tom lives **somewhere** near Toronto.

somewhere = in/to a place, but we don't know where

B

People (**-body** *or* **-one**)

somebody *or* **someone**
anybody *or* **anyone**
nobody *or* **no one**

- There is **somebody** (*or* **someone**) at the door.
- Is there **anybody** (*or* **anyone**) at the door?
- There **isn't anybody** (*or* **anyone**) at the door.
- There is **nobody** (*or* **no one**) at the door.

-body and **-one** are the same: **somebody = someone, nobody = no one,** etc.

Things (**-thing**)

something
anything
nothing

- Holly said **something,** but I didn't understand her.
- Are you doing **anything** this weekend?
- I was angry, but I **didn't** say **anything.**
- "What did you say?" "**Nothing.**"

Places (**-where**)

somewhere
anywhere
nowhere

- Ruth's parents live **somewhere** in Southern California.
- Did you go **anywhere** interesting on vacation?
- I'm staying here. I'm **not** going **anywhere.**
- I don't like this town. There is **nowhere** to go.

C

something/anybody, etc. + *adjective* (**big/cheap/interesting,** etc.)

- Did you meet **anybody interesting** at the party?
- We always go to the same place. Let's go **somewhere new.**
- "What's in that letter?" "It's **nothing important.**"

D

something/anybody, etc. + **to . . .**

- I'm hungry. I want **something to eat.** (= something that I can eat)
- Tony doesn't have **anybody to talk to.** (= anybody that he can talk to)
- There is **nowhere to go** in this town. (= no place where people can go)

Some/any **Unit 77** ***Any* and *no*** **Unit 78** ***Anybody/nothing,* etc.** **Unit 79** ***Everything/-body/-where*** **Unit 81**

Exercises

80.1 Write *somebody* (or *someone*) / *something* / *somewhere*.

1. Holly said *something*.
2. I lost _____ this morning.
3. Sue and Tom have gone _____.
4. I'm going to call _____.

What did she say?
What did you lose?
Where have they gone?
Who are you going to call?

80.2 Write *nobody* (or *no one*) / *nothing* / *nowhere*.

1a. What did you say?
2a. Where are you going?
3a. What do you want?
4a. Who are you looking for?

Nothing.

Answer the same questions with full sentences. Use *not* + *anybody/anything/anywhere*.

1b. *I didn't say anything.*
2b. I'm not _____.
3b. _____
4b. _____

80.3 Write *somebody/anything/nowhere*, etc.

1. It's dark. I can't see *anything*.
2. Jay lives *somewhere* near Toronto.
3. Do you know _____ about computers?
4. "Listen!" "What? I can't hear _____."
5. "What are you doing here?" "I'm waiting for _____."
6. We need to talk. There's _____ I want to tell you.
7. "Did _____ see the accident?" "No, _____."
8. We weren't hungry, so we didn't eat _____.
9. "What's going to happen?" "I don't know. _____ knows."
10. "Do you know _____ in Tokyo?" "Yes, a few people."
11. "What's in that suitcase?" "_____. It's empty."
12. I'm looking for my glasses. I can't find them _____.
13. I don't like cold weather. I want to live _____ warm.
14. Is there _____ interesting on TV tonight?
15. Have you ever met _____ famous?

80.4 Complete the sentences. Choose from the boxes.

You can use these words more than once:

something	anything	nothing
somewhere	anywhere	nowhere

Use these words once:

do	eat	play	sit
drink	~~go~~	read	stay

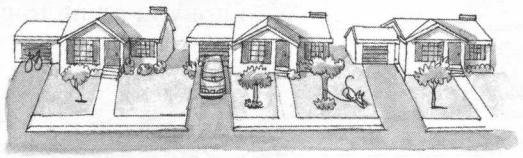
1. We don't go out very much because there's *nowhere to go*.
2. There isn't any food in the house. We don't have _____.
3. I'm bored. I have _____.
4. "Why are you standing?" "Because there isn't _____."
5. "Would you like _____?" "Yes, please – a glass of water."
6. All the hotels were full. There was _____.
7. I want _____. I'm going to buy a magazine.
8. We're going to buy a house with a yard. Our boys need _____.

UNIT 81

Every and *all*

A

every



Every **house** on the street is the same.

every house on the street =
all the houses on the street

We use **every** + *singular noun* (**every house / every country,** etc.).

- Alice has been to **every country** in Europe.
- **Every summer** we take a vacation at the beach.
- She looks different **every time** I see her.

Use a *singular verb* after **every.**

- **Every house** on the street **is** the same. (*not* are the same)

Compare **every** and **all:**

- **Every student** in the class passed the exam.
- **Every country has** a national flag.

- **All the students** in the class passed the exam.
- **All countries have** a national flag.

B

every day and **all day**

every day = on all days

how often?

SUN | MON | TUE | WED | THU | FRI | SAT

every day

- It rained **every day** last week.
- Bill watches TV for about two hours **every evening.** (= on all evenings)

Also: **every morning/night/summer,** etc.

all day = the complete day

how long?

beginning of the day — *end of the day*

all day

- Yesterday it rained **all day.**
- On Monday, I watched TV **all evening.** (= the complete evening)

Also: **all morning/night/summer,** etc.

C

everybody (or **everyone**) / **everything** / **everywhere**

everybody or **everyone** *(people)*
everything *(things)*
everywhere *(places)*

- **Everybody** (*or* **Everyone**) needs friends. (= all people need friends)
- Have you got **everything** you need? (= all the things you need)
- I lost my watch. I've looked **everywhere** for it. (= I've looked in all places)

Use a *singular verb* after **everybody/everyone/everything.**

- **Everybody has** problems. (*not* everybody have)

Exercises

81.1 Complete the sentences. Use *every* + one of these words:

day room ~~student~~ time word

1. *Every student* in the class passed the exam.
2. My job is very boring. _____ is the same.
3. Kate is a very good tennis player. When we play, she wins _____.
4. _____ in the hotel has a color TV.
5. "Did you understand what she said?" "Most of it but not _____."

81.2 Complete the sentences with *every day* or *all day*.

1. Yesterday it rained *all day*.
2. I buy a newspaper _____, but sometimes I don't read it.
3. I'm not going out tomorrow. I'll be at home _____.
4. I drink about four cups of coffee _____.
5. Paula was sick yesterday, so she stayed in bed _____.
6. Last year we went to the beach for a week, and it rained _____.
7. I'm tired because I've been working hard _____.

81.3 Write *every* or *all*.

1. Bill watches TV for about two hours *every* evening.
2. Barbara gets up at 6:30 _____ morning.
3. The weather was nice yesterday, so we sat outside _____ afternoon.
4. I'm leaving town on Monday. I'll be away _____ week.
5. "How often do you go skiing?" "_____ year. Usually in March."
6. *A:* Were you at home at 10 A.M. yesterday?
   B: Yes, I was home _____ morning. I went out after lunch.
7. My sister likes new cars. She buys one _____ year.
8. I saw Brian at the party, but he didn't speak to me _____ evening.
9. We take a vacation for two or three weeks _____ summer.

81.4 Write *everybody/everything/everywhere*.

1. *Everybody* needs friends.
2. Chris knows _____ about computers.
3. I like the people here. _____ is very friendly.
4. This is a nice hotel. It's comfortable and _____ is very clean.
5. Kevin never uses his car. He goes _____ on his motorcycle.
6. Let's have dinner. _____ is hungry.
7. Sue's house is full of books. There are books _____.
8. You're right. _____ you say is true.

81.5 Write a verb (one word).

1. Everybody *has* problems.
2. Are you ready yet? Everybody _____ waiting for you.
3. Eric is very popular. Everyone _____ him.
4. This town is completely different. Everything _____ changed.
5. I got home very late. I came in quietly because everyone _____ asleep.
6. Everybody _____ mistakes!

UNIT 82

All, most, some, any, and *no/none*

A

Compare:

children/money/books, etc. (in general)

- **Children** like to play. (= children in general)
- **Money** isn't everything. (= money in general)
- I enjoy reading **books.**
- Everybody needs **friends.**

the children / **the** money / **these** books, etc.

- Where are **the children?** (= our children)
- I want to buy a car, but I haven't got **the money.** (= the money for a car)
- Have you read **these books?**
- I often go out with **my friends.**

B

most / most of / some / some of, etc.

all

most

some

any

no / none / not + any

most/some, etc. + noun

all most some any no	~~of~~	cities children books money

- **Most children** like to play. (= children in general)
- I don't want **any money.**
- **Some books** are better than others.
- He has **no friends.**
- **All cities** have the same problems. (= cities in general)

Do not use **of** in these sentences:

- **Most people** drive too fast. (*not* most of people)
- **Some birds** can't fly. (*not* some of birds)

most of / some of, etc. + **the/this/my,** etc.

all	(of)	the this/that these/those my/your, etc.
most some any none	of	

- **Most of the children in this school** are under 11 years old.
- I don't want **any of this money.**
- **Some of these books** are very old.
- **None of my friends** can ski.

But we say **all the . . . / all my . . .,** etc. (with or without **of**).

- **All the students in our class** passed the exam. (*or* **All of the students . . .**)
- Silvia has lived in Miami **all her life.** (*or* . . . **all of her life.**)

C

all of it / most of them / none of us, etc.

all most some any none	of	it them us you

- We can have **some of this cake** but not **all of it.**
- *A:* Do you know those people?
  B: **Most of them,** but not **all of them.**
- **Some of us** are going out tonight. Why don't you come with us?
- I have a lot of history books, but I haven't read **any of them.**
- "How many of these books have you read?" **"None of them."**

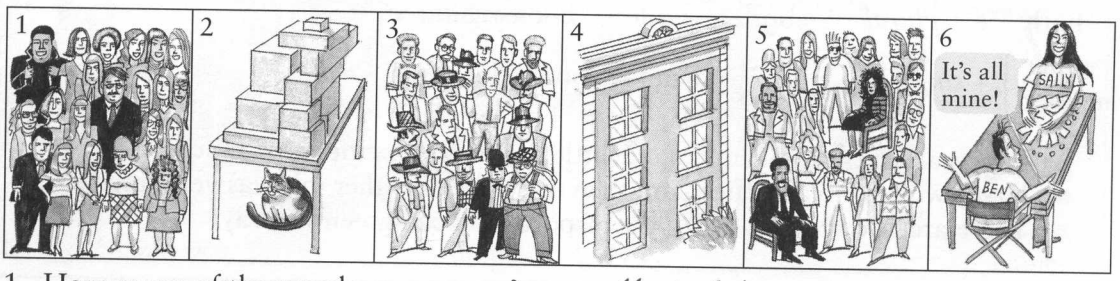
***The (children / the children,* etc.) Unit 73** **Some/any Unit 77** **No/none/any Unit 78** **Every and all Unit 81**

Exercises

82.1 **Complete the sentences. Use the word in parentheses (*some/most*, etc.). Sometimes you need *of* (*some of / most of*, etc.).**

1. Most children like to play. (most)
2. Some of this money is yours. (some)
3. _____ people never stop talking. (some)
4. _____ the stores downtown close at 6:00. (most)
5. You can change your money in _____ banks. (some)
6. I don't like _____ the pictures in the living room. (any)
7. He's lost _____ his money. (all)
8. _____ my friends are married. (none)
9. Do you know _____ the people in this photograph? (any)
10. _____ birds can fly. (most)
11. I enjoyed _____ the film, but I didn't like the ending. (most)
12. _____ sports are very dangerous. (some)
13. We can't find anywhere to stay. _____ the hotels are full. (all)
14. Try _____ this cheese. It's delicious. (some)
15. The weather was bad when we were on vacation. It rained _____ the time. (most)

82.2 **Look at the pictures and answer the questions. Use *all/most/some/none + of them / of it.***



1. How many of the people are women? Most of them.
2. How many of the boxes are on the table?
3. How many of the men are wearing hats?
4. How many of the windows are open?
5. How many of the people are standing?
6. How much of the money is Ben's?

82.3 **Right or wrong? Correct the sentences that are wrong. Write *OK* if the sentence is correct.**

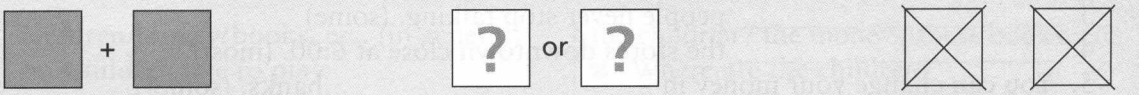
1. Most of children like to play. Most children
2. All the students failed the exam. OK
3. Some of people work too hard.
4. Some of questions on the exam were very easy.
5. I haven't seen any of those people before.
6. All of insects have six legs.
7. Have you read all these books?
8. Most of students in our class are very nice.
9. Most of my friends are going to the party.
10. I'm very tired this morning – I was awake most of night.

UNIT 83

Both, either, and *neither*

A

We use **both/either/neither** to talk about two things or people.



both | **either** | **neither (not + either)**

- Rosemary has two children. **Both** are married. (**both** = the two children)
- Would you like tea or coffee? You can have **either.** (**either** = tea or coffee)
- *A:* Do you want to go to the movies or the theater?
  B: **Neither.** I want to stay home. (**neither** = not the movies *or* the theater)

Compare **either** and **neither:**

- "Would you like **tea or coffee?**" { "**Either.** It doesn't matter." (= tea or coffee) / "**I don't** want **either.**" (*not* I don't want neither) / "**Neither.**" (= not tea *or* coffee) }

B

Both/either/neither + *noun*

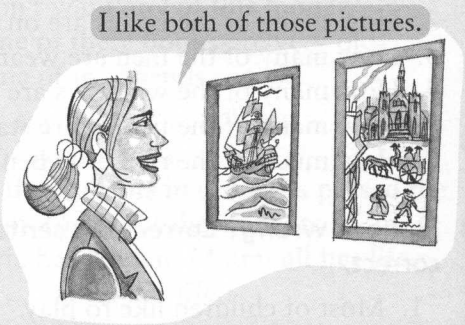
both + *plural*	**both**	**windows/books/children,** etc.
either / **neither** } + *singular*	**either** / **neither**	**window/book/child,** etc.

- Last year I went to Miami and Seattle. I liked **both cities** very much.
- First I worked in an office, and then in a store. **Neither job** was very interesting.
- There are two ways to get to the airport. You can go **either way.**

C

both of . . . / either of . . . / neither of . . .

both / **either** / **neither**	**of**	**the** / **these/those** / **my/your/Amy's,** etc.



- **Neither of my parents** is Canadian.
- I haven't read **either of these books.**

You can say **both (of) the . . . / both (of) those . . . / both (of) my . . .**, etc. (with or without **of**).

- I like **both of those pictures.** *or* I like **both those pictures.**
- **Both of Amy's sisters** are married. *or* **Both Amy's sisters** are married.

D

both of them / neither of us, etc.

both / **either** / **neither**	**of**	**them** / **us** / **you**

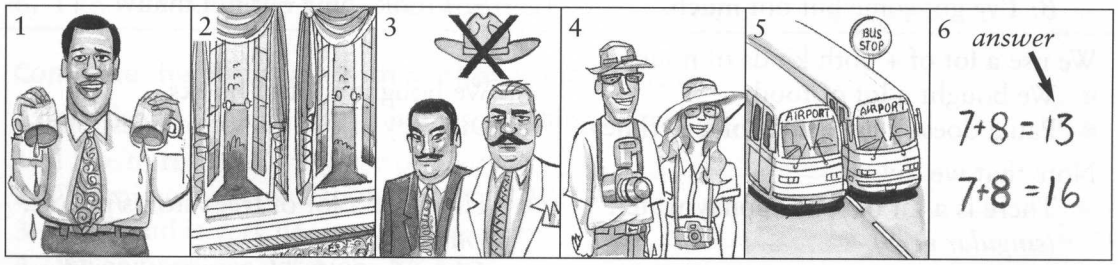
- Tiffany has two sisters. **Both of them** are married.
- Tom and I didn't eat anything. **Neither of us** was hungry.
- Who are those two people? I don't know **either of them.**

Exercises

83.1 Write *both/either/neither.* Use *of* where necessary.

1. Last year I went to Miami and Seattle. I liked *both* _____ cities very much.
2. There were two pictures on the wall. I didn't like *either of* _____ them.
3. It was a good football game. _____ teams played well.
4. It wasn't a good football game. _____ team played well.
5. "Is your friend Canadian or American?" "_____ . She's Australian."
6. We went away for two days, but the weather was bad. It rained _____ days.
7. *A:* I bought two newspapers. Which one do you want?
   B: _____ . It doesn't matter which one.
8. I invited Diana and Mike to the party, but _____ them came.
9. "Do you go to work by car or by bus?" "_____ . I always walk."
10. "Which hat do you like, this one or that one?" "I don't like _____ them."
11. "Do you work, or are you a student?" "_____ . I work and I'm a student, too."
12. Paula and I didn't know the time because _____ us had a watch.
13. Lee has two sisters and a brother. _____ sisters are married.
14. Lee has two sisters and a brother. I know her brother, but I haven't met _____ her sisters.

83.2 Complete the sentences for the pictures. Use ***Both . . .*** or ***Neither . . . .***



1. *Both cups are* _____ empty.
2. _____ are open.
3. _____ wearing a hat.
4. _____ cameras.
5. _____ to the airport.
6. _____ right.

83.3 A man and a woman answered some questions. Their answers were the same. Write sentences with ***Both of them / Neither of them . . . .***

Are you married?	No	No
How old are you?	21	21
Are you a student?	Yes	Yes
Do you have a car?	No	No
Where do you live?	Boston	Boston
Do you like to cook?	Yes	Yes
Can you play the piano?	No	No
Do you read the newspaper?	Yes	Yes
Are you interested in sports?	No	No

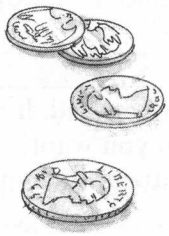
1. *Neither of them is married.*
2. *Both of them are 21.*
3. _____ students.
4. _____ a car.
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____

UNIT 84

A lot, much, and *many*

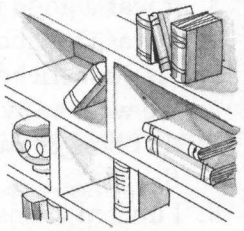
A

a lot of money



not much money

a lot of books



not many books

We use **much** + *uncountable noun* (**much food / much money,** etc.).

- Did you buy **much food?**
- We don't have **much luggage.**
- How **much money** do you want?
- *A:* Have you got any **money?**
  B: I've got some but **not much.**

We use **many** + *plural noun* (**many books / many people,** etc.).

- Did you buy **many books?**
- We don't know **many people.**
- How **many pictures** did you take?
- *A:* Did you take any **pictures?**
  B: I took some but **not many.**

We use **a lot of** + both kinds of noun.

- We bought **a lot of food.**
- Paula doesn't have **a lot of** free **time.**
- We bought **a lot of books.**
- Did they ask you **a lot of questions?**

Note that we say:

- There **is** a lot of **food/money/water.** *(singular verb)*
- There **are** a lot of **trees/stores/people.** *(plural verb)*
- A lot of **people like** soccer. (*not* likes)

B

We use **much** in *questions* and *negative sentences.*

- **Do** you **drink much** coffee?
- I **don't drink much** coffee.

But we do not often use **much** in *positive sentences.*

- I **drink a lot** of coffee. (*not* I drink much coffee)
- "Do you drink much coffee?" "Yes, **a lot.**" (*not* Yes, much)

We use **many** and **a lot of** in all kinds of sentences (question/positive/negative).

- **Do** you **have many** friends / **a lot** of friends?
- We **have many** friends / **a lot of** friends.
- We don**'t have many** friends / **a lot of** friends.

C

much and **a lot** without a noun

- Diane spoke to me, but she didn't say **much.**
- "Do you watch TV **much?**" "No, **not much.**" (= not often)
- We like films, so we go to the movies **a lot.** (*not* much – see section B)
- I don't like him very **much.**

Exercises

84.1 Write *much* or *many*.

1. Did you buy *much* food?
2. There aren't _____ hotels in this town.
3. We don't have _____ gas.
4. Were there _____ people on the train?
5. Did _____ students fail the exam?
6. Paula doesn't have _____ money.
7. I wasn't hungry, so I didn't eat _____.
8. I haven't seen Eric for _____ years.

Write *How much* or *How many*.

9. _____ people are coming to the party?
10. _____ milk should I get at the store?
11. _____ bread did you buy?
12. _____ players are there on a football team?

84.2 Complete the sentences. Use *much* or *many* with one of these words:

~~books~~ countries luggage people time times

1. I don't read very much. I don't have *many books*.
2. Hurry up! We don't have _____.
3. Do you travel a lot? Have you been to _____?
4. Tina hasn't lived here very long, so she doesn't know _____.
5. "Do you have _____?" "No, only this suitcase."
6. I know Tokyo very well. I've been there _____.

84.3 Complete the sentences with *a lot of* + one of these:

accidents ~~books~~ fun interesting things traffic

1. I like to read. I have *a lot of books*.
2. We enjoyed our visit to the museum. We saw _____.
3. This road is very dangerous. There are _____ here.
4. We enjoyed our vacation. We had _____.
5. It took me a long time to drive here. There was _____.

84.4 In some of these sentences, *much* is not natural. Change the sentences or write *OK*.

1. Do you drink much coffee? *OK*
2. I drink much tea. *a lot of tea*
3. It was a cold winter. We had much snow. _____
4. There wasn't much snow last winter. _____
5. It costs much money to travel around the world. _____
6. This pen was cheap. It didn't cost much. _____
7. Do you know much about computers? _____
8. "Do you have any luggage?" "Yes, much." _____

84.5 Write sentences about these people. Use *much* and *a lot*.

1. Jim loves movies. (go to the movies) *He goes to the movies a lot.*
2. Nicole thinks TV is boring. (watch TV) *She doesn't watch TV much.*
3. Tina is a good tennis player. (play tennis) She _____.
4. Mark doesn't like to drive. (use his car) He _____.
5. Paul spends most of his time at home. (go out) _____
6. Sue has been all over the world. (travel) _____

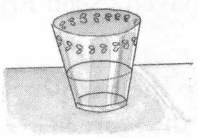
UNIT 85

A little / a few and *little / few*

A

(a) **little** + *uncountable noun*

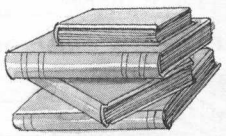
(a) **little water**
(a) **little money**
(a) **little time**
(a) **little soup**



a little water

(a) **few** + *plural noun*

(a) **few books**
(a) **few questions**
(a) **few people**
(a) **few days**



a few books

B

a little = some but not much

- She didn't eat anything, but she drank **a little water.**
- I speak **a little Spanish.** (= some Spanish but not much)
- *A:* Can you speak Spanish?
  B: **A little.**

a few = some but not many

- Last night I wrote **a few letters.**
- We're going away for **a few days.**
- I speak **a few words** of Spanish.
- *A:* Do you have any stamps?
  B: **A few.** Do you want one?

C

~~a~~ **little** (without **a**) = almost no *or* almost nothing

- There was **little food** in the fridge. It was almost empty.

You can say **very little.**

- Dan is very thin because he eats **very little.** (= almost nothing)

~~a~~ **few** (without **a**) = almost no

- There were **few people** in the theater. It was almost empty.

You can say **very few.**

- Your English is very good. You make **very few mistakes.**

D

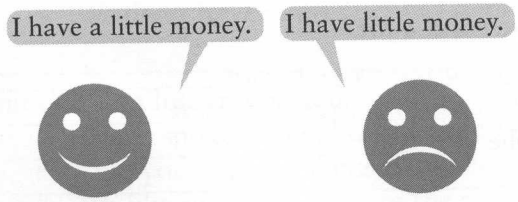
little and **a little**

A little is a *positive* idea.

- They have **a little** money, but they're not rich. (= they have some money)

Little (or **very little**) is a *negative* idea.

- They are very poor. They have (**very**) **little** money. (= almost no money)



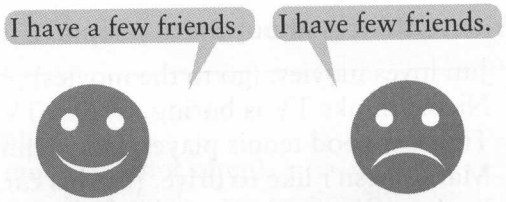
few and **a few**

A few is a *positive* idea.

- I have **a few** friends, so I'm not lonely. (= I have some friends)

Few (or **very few**) is a *negative* idea.s

- I'm sad and I'm lonely. I have (**very**) **few** friends. (= almost no friends)



Exercises

85.1 Answer the questions with *a little* or *a few.*

1. "Do you have any money?" "Yes, *a little* ."
2. "Do you have any envelopes?" "Yes, _____ ."
3. "Do you want sugar in your coffee?" "Yes, _____ , please."
4. "Did you take any pictures when you were on vacation?" "Yes, _____ ."
5. "Does your friend speak English?" "Yes, _____ ."
6. "Are there any good restaurants in this town?" "Yes, _____ ."

85.2 Write *a little* or *a few* + one of these words:

chairs days fresh air friends ~~letters~~ milk Russian times

1. Last night I wrote *a few letters* to my family and friends.
2. Can I have _____ in my coffee, please?
3. "When did Julia leave?" " _____ ago."
4. "Do you speak any foreign languages?" "I can speak _____ ."
5. "Are you going to the movies alone?" "No, I'm going with _____ ."
6. "Have you ever been to Mexico?" "Yes, _____ ."
7. There wasn't much furniture in the room – just a table and _____ .
8. I'm going out for a walk. I need _____ .

85.3 Complete the sentences. Use *very little* or *very few* + one of these words:

coffee hotels ~~mistakes~~ people rain time work

1. Your English is very good. You make *very few mistakes* .
2. I drink _____ . I don't like it much.
3. The weather here is very dry in the summer. There is _____ .
4. It's difficult to find a place to stay in this town. There are _____ .
5. Hurry up. There's _____ before the movie starts.
6. The town is very quiet at night. _____ go out.
7. Some people in my office are very lazy. They do _____ .

85.4 Write *very little / a little / very few / a few.*

1. There was *very little* food in the fridge. It was almost empty.
2. "When did Sarah go out?" " _____ minutes ago."
3. I can't decide now. I need _____ time to think about it.
4. There was _____ traffic, so we got there early.
5. Let's take a taxi. There are _____ buses after 9 o'clock at night.
6. "Would you like more soup?" "Yes, _____ , please."
7. They sent us a map, so we had _____ trouble finding their house.

85.5 Right or wrong? Correct the sentences that are wrong. Write *OK* if the sentence is correct.

1. We're going away for few days next week. *for a few days*
2. Everybody needs little luck. _____
3. I can't talk to you now – I've got few things to do. _____
4. I eat very little meat – I don't like it very much. _____
5. Excuse me, can I ask you few questions? _____
6. There were little people on the bus – it was almost empty. _____

UNIT 86

Old, nice, interesting, etc. (Adjectives)

A

Adjective + *noun* (**nice day / blue eyes,** etc.)

adjective + *noun*

It's a **nice**	**day** today.
Laura has **brown**	**eyes.**
There's a very **old**	**church** in this town.
Do you like **Italian**	**food?**
I don't speak any **foreign**	**languages.**
There are some **beautiful yellow**	**flowers** in the garden.

The adjective is *before* the noun.

- They live in a **modern house.** (*not* a house modern)
- Have you met any **famous people?** (*not* people famous)

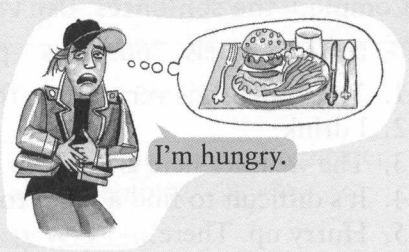
The ending of an adjective is always the same.

a **different** place **different** places (*not* differents)

B

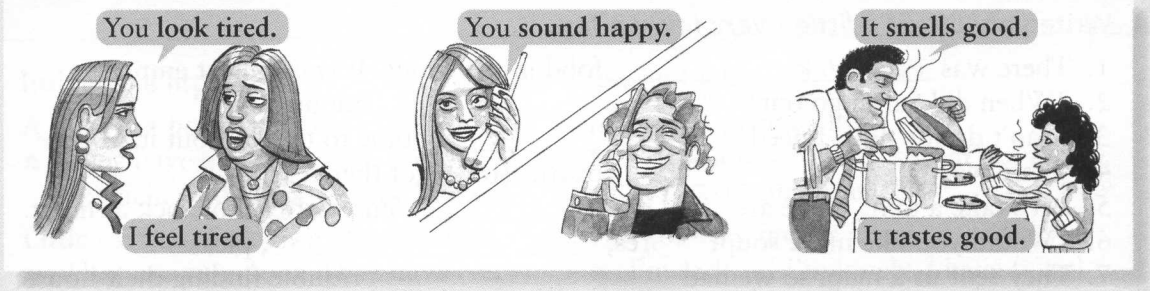
be (**am/is/was,** etc.) + adjective

- The weather **is nice** today.
- These flowers **are** very **beautiful.**
- **Are** you **cold?** Should I close the window?
- **I'm hungry.** Can I have something to eat?
- The movie **wasn't** very **good.** It **was boring.**
- Please **be quiet.** I'm studying.



C

look/feel/smell/taste/sound + adjective



- "You **look tired.**" "Yes, I **feel tired.**"
- Eric told me about his new job. It **sounds** very **interesting.**
- I'm not going to eat this fish. It doesn't **smell good.**

Compare:

He	is feels looks	tired.	They	are look sound	happy.	It	is smells tastes	good.

Get + Adjective (*get hungry/tired,* etc.) Unit 57 **Something/anybody + Adjective** Unit 80

Exercises

86.1 **Put the words in the right order.**

1. (new / live in / house / they / a) *They live in a new house.*
2. (like / jacket / I / that / green) I _____.
3. (music / like / do / classical / you?) Do _____?
4. (had / wonderful / a / I / trip) _____
5. (went to / restaurant / a / Chinese / we) _____

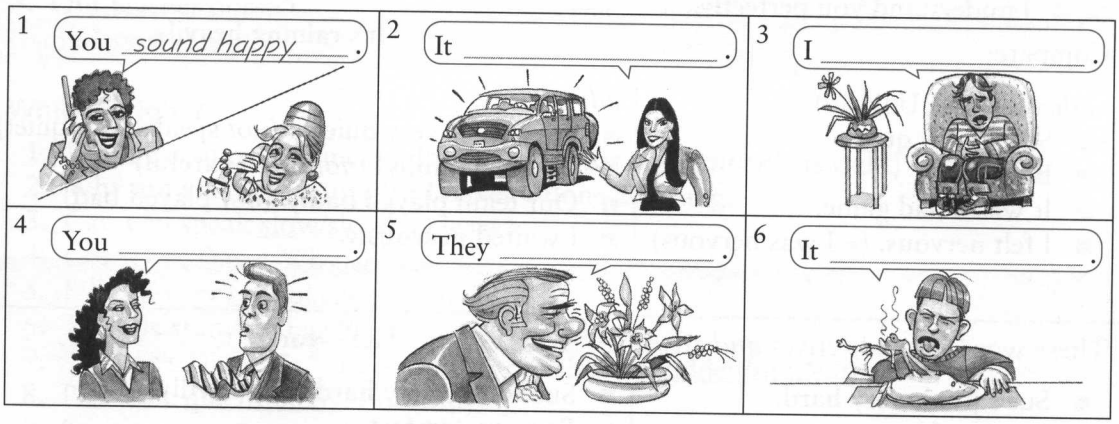
86.2 **The words in the box are adjectives (*dark, foreign,* etc.) or nouns (*air, job,* etc.). Use an adjective and a noun to complete each sentence.**

air	dangerous	~~foreign~~	hot	knife	long	vacation
clouds	dark	fresh	job	~~languages~~	sharp	water

1. Do you speak any *foreign languages*?
2. Look at those _____. It's going to rain.
3. Sue works very hard, and she's very tired. She needs a _____.
4. You need _____ to make tea.
5. Can you open the window? We need some _____.
6. I need a _____ to cut these onions.
7. Fire fighting is a _____.

86.3 **Write sentences for the pictures. Choose from the boxes.**

feel(s)	look(s)	~~sound(s)~~	~~happy~~	nice	surprised
look(s)	smell(s)	taste(s)	new	sick	terrible



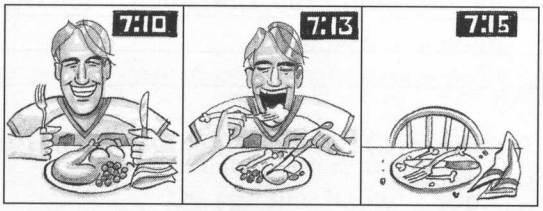
86.4 **A and B don't agree. Complete B's sentences. Use the word in parentheses ( ).**

A	B	
1. You look tired.	I do? I *don't feel tired*.	(feel)
2. This is a new coat.	Really? It _____.	(look)
3. I'm American.	You are? You _____.	(sound)
4. You look cold.	Really? I _____.	(feel)
5. These bags are heavy.	They are? They _____.	(look)
6. The soup looks good.	Really? It _____.	(taste)

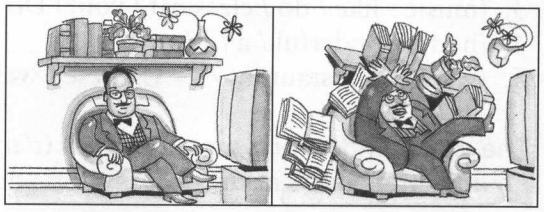
UNIT 87

Quickly, badly, suddenly, etc. (Adverbs)

A



He ate his dinner very **quickly.**



Suddenly, the shelf fell down.

Quickly and **suddenly** are adverbs.

Adjective + -ly → *adverb*

adjective	**quick**	**bad**	**sudden**	**careful**	**heavy**	etc.
adverb	**quickly**	**badly**	**suddenly**	**carefully**	**heavily**	etc.

Spelling (see Appendix 5.2): easy → easily heavy → heavily

B

Adverbs tell you *how* something happens or *how* somebody does something.

- The train **stopped suddenly.**
- I **opened** the door **slowly.**
- Please **listen carefully.**
- I **understand** you **perfectly.**

It's **raining heavily.**

Compare:

adjective (see Unit 86)	*adverb*
Sue **is** very **quiet.**	Sue **speaks** very **quietly.** (*not* speaks very quiet)
Be careful!	**Listen carefully!** (*not* listen careful)
It was **a bad game.**	Our team **played badly.** (*not* played bad)
I **felt nervous.** (= I was nervous)	I **waited nervously.**

C

These words are adjectives *and* adverbs: **hard** **fast** **late** **early**

Sue's job **is** very **hard.**	Sue **works** very **hard.** (*not* hardly)
Ben is **a fast runner.**	Ben can **run fast.**
The bus **was late/early.**	I **went** to bed **late/early.**

D

good *(adjective)* → **well** *(adverb)*

Your English **is** very **good.**	You **speak** English very **well.** (*not* very good)
It was **a good game.**	Our team **played well.**

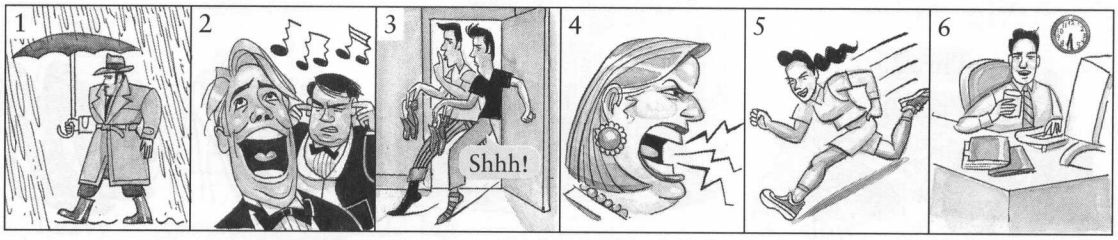
But **well** is also an adjective (= not sick, in good health).

- "How are you?" "I'm very **well,** thank you. And you?"

Exercises

87.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with one of these adverbs:

angrily badly early fast ~~heavily~~ quietly



1. It's raining *heavily* .
2. He sings very _____ .
3. They came in _____ .
4. She shouted at me _____ .
5. She can run very _____ .
6. He got to work _____ .

87.2 Complete the sentences. Choose from the boxes.

come	know	sleep	win
explain	~~listen~~	think	work

+

~~carefully~~	clearly	hard	well
carefully	easily	quickly	well

1. I'm going to tell you something very important, so please *listen carefully* .
2. Amy! _____ ! Run!
3. They _____ . At the end of the day, they're always tired.
4. I'm tired this morning. I didn't _____ last night.
5. You play tennis much better than me. When we play, you always _____ .
6. _____ before you answer this question.
7. I've met Alice a few times, but I don't _____ her very _____ .
8. Our teacher doesn't _____ things very _____ . We never understand him.

87.3 Which is right?

1. Don't eat so ~~quick~~/quickly. It's not good for you. (*quickly* is right)
2. Why are you angry/angrily? I haven't done anything.
3. Can you speak slow/slowly, please?
4. Come on, Dave! Why are you always so slow/slowly?
5. Bill is a very careful/carefully driver.
6. Tracy is studying hard/hardly for her exams.
7. "Where's Diane?" "She was here, but she left sudden/suddenly."
8. Please be quiet/quietly. I'm studying.
9. Some companies pay their workers very bad/badly.
10. That jacket looks nice/nicely. Are you going to buy it?

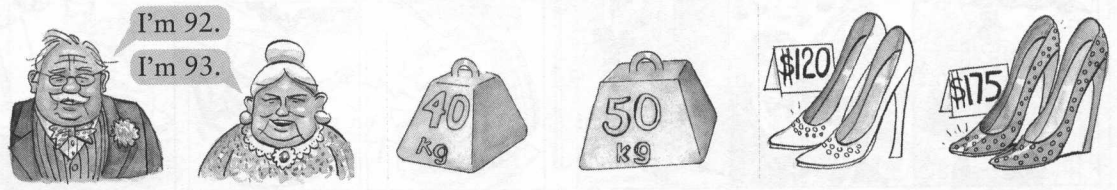
87.4 Write *good* or *well*.

1. Your English is really *good* . You speak it very *well* .
2. Jackie did very _____ on her exams.
3. The food was very _____ . I enjoyed it a lot.
4. Mark has a difficult job, but he does it _____ .
5. How are your parents? Are they _____ ?
6. Did you have a _____ vacation? Was the weather _____ ?

UNIT 88

Old/older and *expensive / more expensive*

A



old **older** heavy **heavier** expensive **more expensive**

Older / **heavier** / **more expensive** are *comparative* forms.
The comparative is **-er** (**older**) or **more . . .** (**more expensive**).

B

-er (**older, heavier,** etc.)

Short words (1 syllable) → **-er**
old → **older** slow → **slower** cheap → **cheaper**
nice → **nicer** late → **later** big → **bigger**

Spelling (see Appendix 5): big → bigger hot → hotter thin → thinner

Words ending in **-y** → **-ier**
easy → **easier** heavy → **heavier** early → **earlier**

- Rome is **old,** but Athens is **older.** (*not* more old)
- Is it **cheaper** to go by car or by train? (*not* more cheap)
- Helen wants a **bigger** car.
- This coat is OK, but I think the other one is **nicer.**
- Don't write a letter. It's **easier** to call. (*not* more easy)

far → farther

- "How **far** is it to the station? A mile?" "No, it's **farther.** About two miles."

C

more . . .

Long words (2/3/4 syllables) → **more . . .**
careful → **more** careful polite → **more** polite
expensive → **more** expensive interesting → **more** interesting

- You should be **more careful.**
- I don't like my job. I want to do something **more interesting.**
- Is it **more expensive** to go by car or by train?

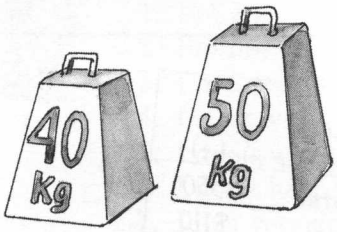
D

good/well → **better** bad → **worse**

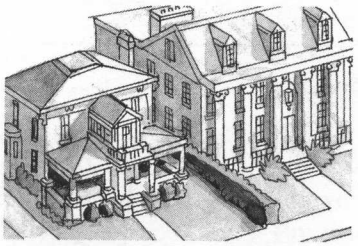
- The weather wasn't very **good** yesterday, but it's **better** today.
- "Do you feel **better** today?" "No, I feel **worse.**"
- Which is **worse** – a headache or a toothache?

Exercises

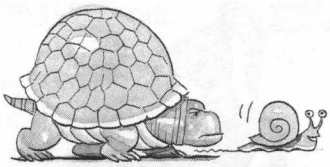
88.1 Look at the pictures and write the comparative (*older / more interesting,* etc.).



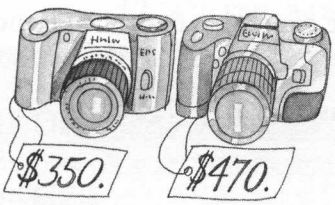
1. heavy *heavier*



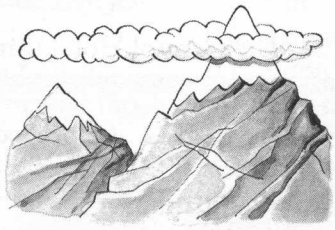
2. big _____



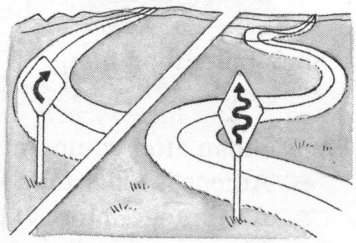
3. slow _____



4. expensive _____



5. high _____



6. dangerous _____

88.2 Write the comparative.

1. old *older*
2. strong _____
3. happy _____
4. modern _____
5. important _____
6. good _____
7. large _____
8. serious _____
9. pretty _____
10. crowded _____

88.3 Write the opposite.

1. younger *older*
2. colder _____
3. cheaper _____
4. better _____
5. nearer _____
6. easier _____

88.4 Complete the sentences. Use a comparative.

1. Helen's car isn't very big. She wants a *bigger* one.
2. My job isn't very interesting. I want to do something *more interesting*.
3. You're not very tall. Your brother is _____.
4. David doesn't work very hard. I work _____.
5. My chair isn't very comfortable. Yours is _____.
6. Your idea isn't very good. My idea is _____.
7. This house isn't very nice. Our house is _____.
8. My suitcase isn't very heavy. Your suitcase is _____.
9. I'm not very interested in art. I'm _____ in history.
10. It isn't very warm today. It was _____ yesterday.
11. These tomatoes don't taste very good. The other ones tasted _____.
12. Britain isn't very big. France is _____.
13. Los Angeles isn't very beautiful. San Francisco is _____.
14. This knife isn't very sharp. Do you have a _____ one?
15. People today aren't very polite. In the past, they were _____.

UNIT 89

Older than . . . and *more expensive than . . .*

A

She's **taller than** him.

HOTEL PRICES (per person, per night)	
Capitol Hotel	$350
Grand Hotel	$110
Western Hotel	$195

The Capitol Hotel is **more expensive than** the Grand.

We use **than** after comparatives (**older than . . . / more expensive than . . .**, etc.).

- Athens is **older than** Rome.
- Are oranges **more expensive than** bananas?
- It's **easier** to call **than** to write a letter.
- "How are you today?" "Not bad. **Better than** yesterday."
- The restaurant is **more crowded than** usual.

B

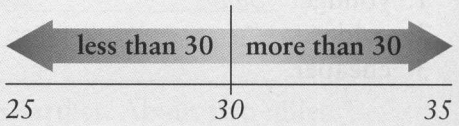
We usually say: than **me** / than **him** / than **her** / than **us** / than **them.** You can say:

- I can run faster **than him.** *or* I can run faster **than he can.**
- You are a better singer **than me.** *or* You are a better singer **than I am.**
- I got up earlier **than her.** *or* I got up earlier **than she did.**

C

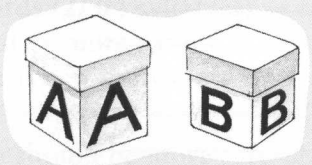
more/less than . . .

- *A:* How much are those shoes? Fifty dollars?
  B: No, **more than** that. (= **more than** $50)
- The film was very short – **less than** an hour.
- They've got **more money than** they need.
- You go out **more than** me.

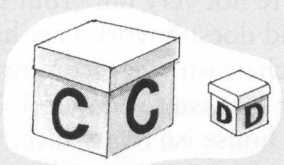


D

a little older / much older, etc.



Box A is **a little bigger** than Box B.



Box C is **much bigger** than Box D.

a little **much**	bigger older better more difficult more expensive	than . . .

- Canada is **much bigger** than France.
- Emma is **a little older** than Gary – she's 26 and he's 24.
- The hotel was **much more expensive** than I expected.
- You go out **much more** than me.

Old/older, expensive / more expensive **Unit 88** ***Not as old as*** **Unit 90**

Exercises

89.1 Write sentences about Liz and Ben. Use *than*.

LIZ

1. I'm 26.
2. I'm not a good swimmer.
3. I'm 5 feet, 10 inches tall.
4. I start work at 8 o'clock.
5. I don't work very hard.
6. I don't have much money.
7. I'm a very good driver.
8. I'm not very patient.
9. I'm not a very good dancer.
10. I'm very intelligent.
11. I speak French very well.
12. I don't go to the movies much.

1. I'm 24.
2. I'm a very good swimmer.
3. I'm 5 feet, 8 inches tall.
4. I start work at 8:30.
5. I work very hard.
6. I have a lot of money.
7. I'm not a very good driver.
8. I'm very patient.
9. I'm a good dancer.
10. I'm not very intelligent.
11. I don't speak French well.
12. I go to the movies a lot.

BEN

1. Liz *is older than Ben* .
2. Ben *is a better swimmer than Liz* .
3. Liz is _____ .
4. Liz starts _____ Ben.
5. Ben _____ .
6. Ben has _____ .
7. Liz is a _____ .
8. Ben _____ .
9. Ben _____ .
10. Liz _____ .
11. Liz _____ .
12. Ben _____ .

89.2 Complete the sentences. Use *than*.

1. He isn't very tall. You *'re taller than him* OR *'re taller than he is* .
2. She isn't very old. You're _____ .
3. I don't work very hard. You work _____ .
4. He doesn't watch TV very much. You _____ .
5. I'm not a very good cook. You _____ .
6. We don't know many people. You _____ .
7. They don't have much money. You _____ .
8. I can't run very fast. You can _____ .
9. She hasn't been here very long. You _____ .
10. They didn't get up very early. You _____ .
11. He wasn't very surprised. You _____ .

89.3 Complete the sentences with *a little* or *much* + a comparative (*older/better*, etc.).

1. Emma is 26. Gary is 24.
   Emma *is a little older than Gary* .
2. Brian's mother is 52. His father is 69.
   Brian's mother _____ .
3. My camera cost $100. Yours cost $96.
   My camera _____ .
4. Yesterday I felt terrible. Today I feel great.
   I feel _____ .
5. Today the temperature is 12 degrees Celsius. Yesterday it was 10 degrees.
   It's _____ .
6. Amy is an excellent tennis player. I'm not very good.
   Amy _____ .

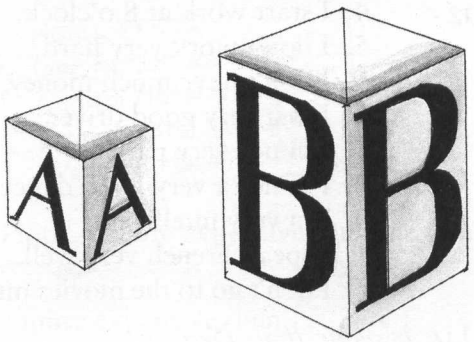
UNIT 90

Not as . . . as

A

not as . . . as

She's old, but she's **not as old as** he is.



Box A **isn't as big as** Box B.

- Rome is **not as old as** Athens. (= Athens is **older**)
- The Grand Hotel **isn't as expensive as** the Western. (= the Western is **more expensive**)
- I **don't** play tennis **as often as** you. (= you play **more often**)
- The weather is better than it was yesterday. It **isn't as cold.** (= as cold **as it was yesterday**)

B

not as much as . . . / not as many as . . .

- I haven't got **as much money as** you. (= you've got **more money**)
- I don't know **as many people as** you. (= you know **more people**)
- I don't go out **as much as** you. (= you go out **more**)

C

Compare **not as . . . as** and **than:**

- Rome is **not as old as** Athens.
  Athens is **older than** Rome. (*not* older as Rome)
- Tennis **isn't as popular as** soccer.
  Soccer is **more popular than** tennis.
- I **don't** go out **as much as** you.
  You go out **more than** me.

D

We usually say: as **me** / as **him** / as **her,** etc. You can say:

- She's not as old **as him.** *or* She's not as old **as he is.**
- You don't work as hard **as me.** *or* You don't work as hard **as I do.**

E

We say **the same as . . . .**

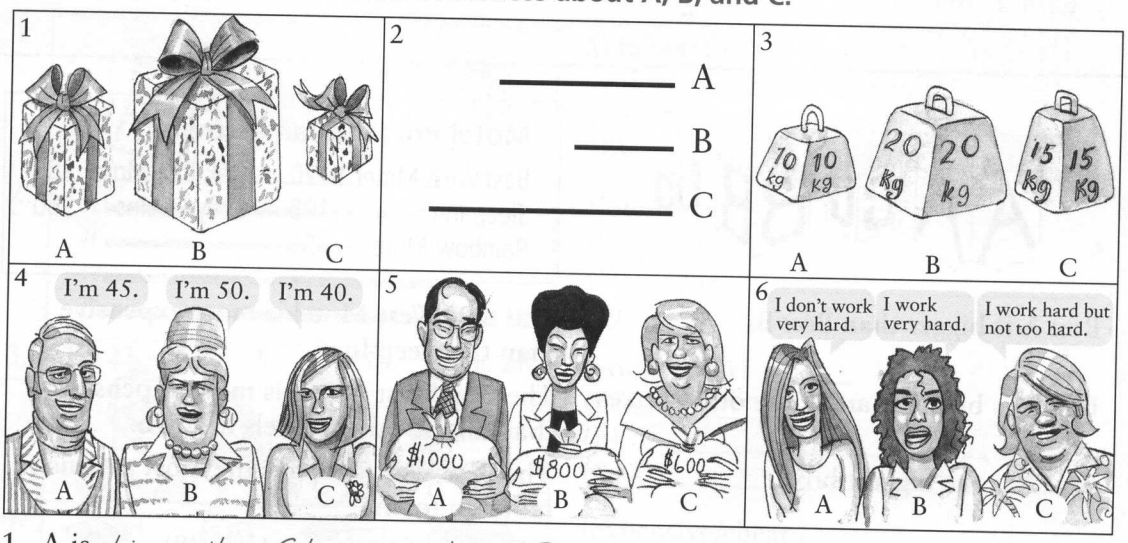
- The weather today is **the same as** yesterday.
- Your son's hair is **the same color as** yours.
- I arrived at **the same time as** Tim.

Much/many **Unit 84** ***Older than / more expensive than*** **Unit 89**

Exercises

UNIT 90

90.1 Look at the pictures and write sentences about A, B, and C.



1. A is *bigger than C but not as big as B* .
2. A is _____ B but not _____ C.
3. C is _____ A but _____ .
4. A is _____ but _____ .
5. B has _____ .
6. C works _____ .

90.2 Write sentences with *as . . . as . . . .*

1. Athens is older than Rome. Rome *isn't as old as Athens* .
2. My room is bigger than yours. Your room isn't _____ .
3. You got up earlier than me. I didn't _____ .
4. We played better than them. They _____ .
5. I've been here longer than you. You _____ .
6. She's more nervous than him. He _____ .

90.3 Write *as* or *than*.

1. Athens is older *than* Rome.
2. I don't watch TV as much _____ you.
3. You eat more _____ me.
4. I feel better _____ I felt yesterday.
5. Jim isn't as intelligent _____ he thinks.
6. Belgium is smaller _____ Switzerland.
7. Brazil isn't as big _____ Canada.
8. I can't wait more _____ an hour.

90.4 Complete the sentences about Lee, Ed, and Kim. Use *the same age / the same street,* etc.

LEE

I'm 22.
I live on Hill Street.
I got up at 7:15.
I haven't got a car.

ED

I'm 24.
I live on Oak Street.
I got up at 7:15.
My car is black.

KIM

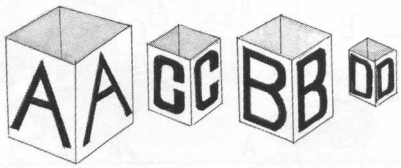
I'm 24.
I live on Hill Street.
I got up at 7:45.
I have a car. It's black.

1. (age) *Ed is the same age as Kim.*
2. (street) Lee lives _____ .
3. (time) Lee got up _____ .
4. (color) Ed's _____ .

UNIT 91

The oldest and *the most expensive*

A



Motel Prices in Jamestown

Best West Motel	$120	Oak Tree Motel	$85
Sleep Inn	$105	Cozy Cabins	$60
Rainbow Motel	$95		

Box A is **bigger than** Box B.

Box A is **bigger than** all the other boxes.

Box A is **the biggest** box.

The Best West Motel is **more expensive than** the Sleep Inn.

The Best West Motel is **more expensive than** all the other motels in town.

The Best West Motel is **the most expensive** motel in town.

Bigger / older / more expensive, etc., are *comparative* forms. (see Unit 88)
Biggest / oldest / most expensive, etc., are *superlative* forms.

B

The superlative form is **-est** (**oldest**) *or* **most . . .** (**most expensive**).

Short words (**old/cheap/nice,** etc.) → **the -est**
old → **the oldest** cheap → **the cheapest** nice → **the nicest**
but good → **the best** bad → **the worst**

Spelling (see Appendix 5): big → the biggest hot → the hottest

Words ending in **-y** (**easy/heavy,** etc.) → **the -iest**
easy → **the easiest** heavy → **the heaviest** pretty → **the prettiest**

Long words (**careful/expensive/interesting,** etc.) → **the most . . .**
careful → **the most careful** interesting → **the most interesting**

C

We say: **the** oldest . . . / **the** most expensive . . . , etc. (with **the**).

- The church is very old. It's **the oldest** building in the town.
  (= it is **older than** all the other buildings)
- What is **the longest** river in the world?
- Money is important, but it isn't **the most important** thing in life.
- Excuse me, where is **the nearest** bank?

D

You can use **the oldest / the best / the most expensive,** etc., without a noun.

- Ken is a good player, but he isn't **the best** on the team. (= the best player)

E

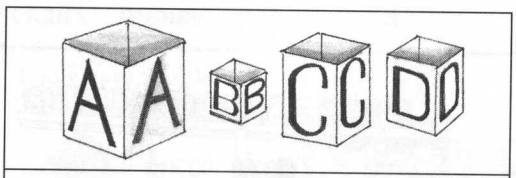
Superlative + **I've ever . . . / you've ever . . . ,** etc.

- The movie was very bad. I think it's **the worst** movie **I've ever seen.**
- What is **the most unusual** thing **you've ever done?**

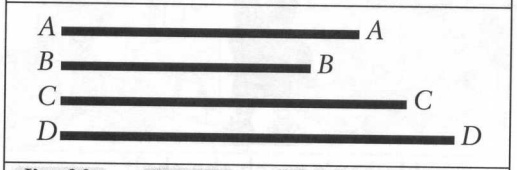
Present Perfect + *ever* Unit 16 ***Older / more expensive*** Units 88–89

Exercises

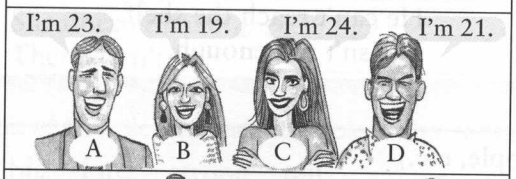
91.1 Write sentences with comparatives (*older,* etc.) and superlatives (*the oldest,* etc.).

1. 

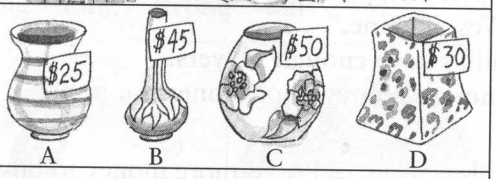
(big/small)
(A/D) *A is bigger than D.*
(A) *A is the biggest.*
(B) *B is the smallest.*

2. 

(long/short)
(C/A) C is _____ A.
(D) D is _____ .
(B) B _____ .

3. 

(young/old)
(D/C) D _____ .
(B) _____
(C) _____

4. 

(expensive/cheap)
(D/A) _____
(C) _____
(A) _____

5. *Restaurant A excellent*
Restaurant B good
Restaurant C OK
Restaurant D terrible

(good/bad)
(A/C) _____
(A) _____
(D) _____

91.2 Complete the sentences. Use a superlative + a noun (*the oldest building,* etc.).

1. This building is very old. It's *the oldest building* in town.
2. It was a very happy day. It was _____ of my life.
3. It's a very good movie. It's _____ I've ever seen.
4. She's a very popular singer. She's _____ in the country.
5. It was a very bad mistake. It was _____ I've ever made.
6. It's a very pretty city. It's _____ I've ever seen.
7. It was a very cold day. It was _____ of the year.
8. He's a very boring person. He's _____ I've ever met.

91.3 Write sentences with a superlative (*the longest,* etc.). Choose from the boxes.

~~Alaska~~	Jupiter
Brazil	the Nile
Everest	Sydney

high
large
long

city	planet
country	river
mountain	~~state~~

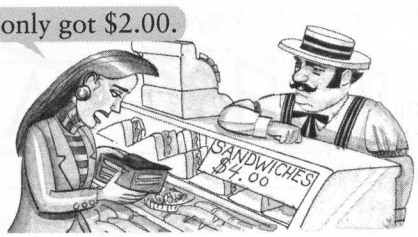
Africa	South America
Australia	~~the USA~~
the solar system	the world

1. *Alaska is the largest state in the USA.*
2. Brazil _____ .
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____

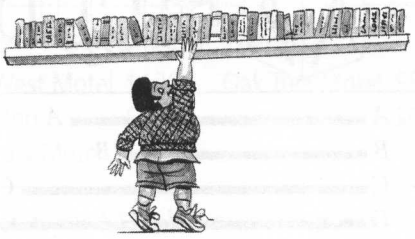
UNIT 92

Enough

A



She can't buy a sandwich.
She doesn't have **enough money.**



He can't reach the shelf.
He isn't **tall enough.**

B

enough + *noun* (**enough money / enough people,** etc.)

- "Is there **enough salt** in the soup?" "Yes, it's fine."
- We wanted to play football, but we didn't have **enough players.**
- Why don't you buy a car? You have **enough money.** (*not* money enough)

enough without a noun

- I've got some money, but not **enough** to buy a car. (= I need more money to buy a car)
- "Would you like some more cake?" "No, thanks. I've had **enough.**"
- You're always at home. You don't go out **enough.**

C

Adjective + **enough** (**good enough / tall enough,** etc.)

- "Do you want to go swimming?" "No, it isn't **warm enough.**" (*not* enough warm)
- Can you hear the radio? Is it **loud enough** for you?
- Don't buy that coat. It's nice, but it isn't **long enough.** (= it's too short)

Remember:

enough + noun *but* adjective + **enough**

enough money	tall **enough**
enough time	good **enough**
enough people	old **enough**

D °

We say:

enough for somebody/something	■ This sweater isn't **big enough for me.** ■ I don't have **enough money for a car.**
enough to do something	■ I don't have **enough money to buy** a car. (*not* for buy a car) ■ Is your English **good enough to have** a conversation? (*not* for have)
enough for somebody/something **to do** something	■ There aren't **enough chairs for everybody to sit** down.

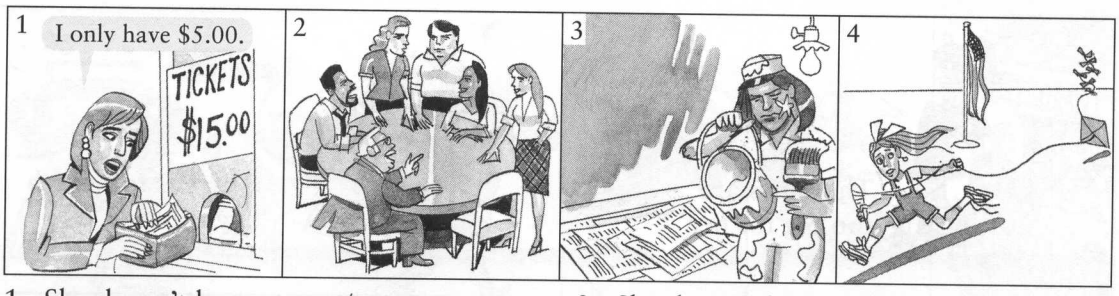
To* and *for **Unit 55** ***Too*** **Unit 93**

Exercises

UNIT 92

92.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use *enough* + one of these words:

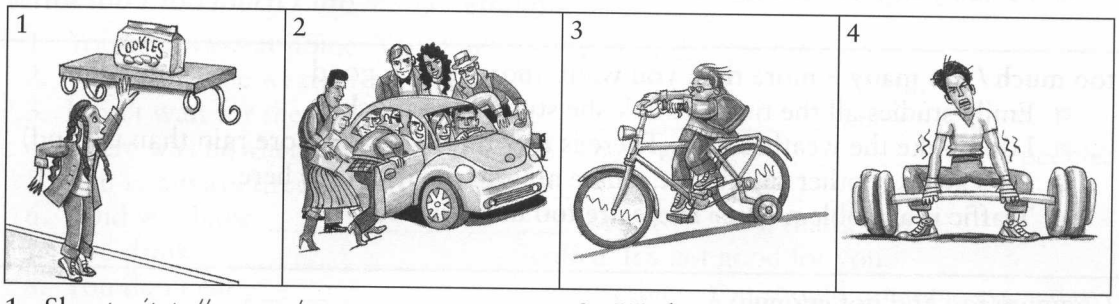
chairs ~~money~~ paint wind



1. She doesn't have *enough money* .
2. There aren't _____ .
3. She doesn't have _____ .
4. There isn't _____ .

92.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use one of these adjectives + *enough:*

big long strong ~~tall~~



1. She *isn't tall enough* .
2. The car _____ .
3. His legs _____ .
4. He _____ .

92.3 Complete the sentences. Use *enough* with one of these words:

big eat fruit ~~loud~~ old practice ~~sugar~~ time tired

1. "Is there *enough salt* in the soup?" "Yes, it's fine."
2. Can you hear the radio? Is it *loud enough* for you?
3. He can quit school if he wants – he's _____ .
4. Did you have _____ to answer all the questions on the exam?
5. This house isn't _____ for a large family.
6. Tina is very thin. She doesn't _____ .
7. Lisa isn't a very good tennis player because she doesn't _____ .
8. You don't eat _____ . You should eat a banana every day.
9. It's late, but I don't want to go to bed. I'm not _____ to sleep.

92.4 Complete the sentences. Use *enough* with the words in parentheses ( ).

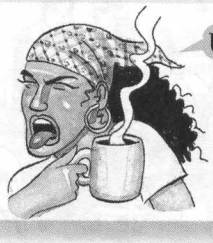
1. We haven't got *enough money to buy* a car. (money / buy)
2. This knife isn't _____ tomatoes. (sharp / cut)
3. The water wasn't _____ swimming. (warm / go)
4. Do we have _____ sandwiches? (bread / make)
5. We played well but not _____ the game. (well / win)
6. I don't have _____ the newspaper. (time / read)

UNIT 93

Too

A

The shoes are **too big** for her.



There is **too much** sugar in it.

B

too + *adjective/adverb* (**too big / too hard,** etc.)

- Can you turn the radio down?
  It's **too loud.** (= louder than I want)
- I can't work. I'm **too tired.**
- I think you work **too hard.**

C

too much / too many = more than you want, more than is good

- Emily studies all the time. I think she studies **too much.**
- I don't like the weather here. There is **too much rain.** (= more rain than is good)
- Let's go to another restaurant. There are **too many people** here.
- Traffic is a problem here. There are **too many cars.**

D

Compare **too** and **not enough:**

too big

- The hat is **too big** for him.
- The radio is **too loud.** Can you turn it down, please?
- There's **too much sugar** in my coffee. (= more than I want)
- I don't feel well. I ate **too much.**

not big enough

- The hat **isn't big enough** for him. (= it's **too small**)
- The radio **isn't loud enough.** Can you turn it up, please?
- There's **not enough sugar** in my coffee. (= I want more sugar)
- You're very thin. You **don't** eat **enough.**

E

We say:

too . . . for somebody/something	■ These shoes are **too big for me.** ■ It's a small house – **too small for a large family.**
too . . . to do something	■ I'm **too tired to go** out. (*not* for go out) ■ It's **too cold to sit** outside.
too . . . for somebody/something **to do** something	■ She speaks **too fast for me to understand.**

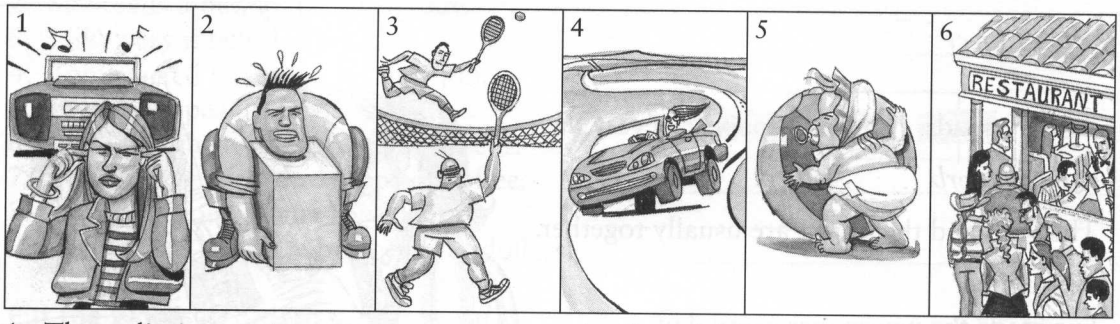
To* and *for **Unit 55** ***Much/many*** **Unit 84** ***Enough*** **Unit 92**

Exercises

UNIT 93

93.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use *too* + one of these words:

big crowded fast heavy ~~loud~~ low



1. The radio is *too loud* .
2. The box is _____ .
3. The net is _____ .
4. She's driving _____ .
5. The ball is _____ .
6. The restaurant is _____ .

93.2 Write *too / too much / too many / enough.*

1. You're always at home. You don't go out *enough* .
2. I don't like the weather here. There's *too much* rain.
3. I can't wait for them. I don't have _____ time.
4. There was nowhere to sit on the beach. There were _____ people.
5. You're always tired. I think you work _____ hard.
6. "Did you have _____ to eat?" "Yes, thank you."
7. You drink _____ coffee. It's not good for you.
8. You don't eat _____ vegetables. You should eat some every day.
9. I don't like the weather here. It's _____ cold.
10. Our team didn't play well. We made _____ mistakes.
11. "Would you like some ice in your tea?" "Yes, but not _____ ."

93.3 Complete the sentences. Use *too* or *enough* with the words in parentheses ( ).

1. I couldn't work. I *was too tired* . (tired)
2. Can you turn the radio up, please? It *isn't loud enough* . (loud)
3. I don't want to walk home. It's _____ . (far)
4. Don't buy anything at that store. It _____ . (expensive)
5. You can't put all your things in that bag. It _____ . (big)
6. I couldn't do the exercise. It _____ . (hard)
7. Your work needs to be better. It _____ . (good)
8. Sorry, I can't talk now. I _____ . (busy)
9. I thought the movie was boring. It _____ . (long)

93.4 Complete the sentences. Use *too* + adjective + *to* do something.

1. I'm not going out. *It's too cold to go out* . (cold)
2. I'm not going to bed. It's _____ . (early)
3. They're not getting married. They're _____ . (young)
4. Nobody swims here. It's _____ . (dangerous)
5. Don't call her now. It's _____ . (late)
6. I didn't say anything. I was _____ . (surprised)

UNIT 94

He speaks English very well. (Word Order 1)

A

Verb + object

Sue **reads** **the newspaper** every day.
subject *verb* *object*

The verb and the object are usually together.

We say:

Sue **reads the newspaper** every day.
(*not* Sue reads every day the newspaper)

SUE *(subject)* THE NEWSPAPER *(object)*

	verb	+ *object*	
He	**speaks**	**English**	very well. (*not* He speaks very well English)
I	**like**	**Italian food**	very much. (*not* I like very much . . .)
Did you	**watch**	**television**	all evening?
We	**invited**	**a lot of people**	to the party.
Paul often	**wears**	**a black hat.**	
I	**opened**	**the door**	slowly.
I always	**make**	**the same mistake.**	
I'm going to	**borrow**	**some money**	from the bank.

B

Place and time

We went **to a party** **last night** .
place *time*

Place is usually before time. We say:

We went **to a party last night.** (*not* last night to a party)

	place (where?)	+	*time (when? how long? how often?)*
Liz walks	**to work**		**every day.** (*not* every day to work)
Will you be	**at home**		**tonight?** (*not* tonight at home?)
I usually go	**to bed**		**early.** (*not* early to bed)
We arrived	**at the airport**		**at 7 o'clock.**
They've lived	**in the same house**		**for 20 years.**
Jim's father has been	**in the hospital**		**since June.**

Word Order in Questions Units 45–46 ***Always/usually/often,* etc.** Unit 95

Exercises

94.1 Right or wrong? Correct the sentences that are wrong.

1. Did you watch all evening television? *Did you watch television all evening?*
2. Sue reads a newspaper every day. *OK*
3. I like very much this picture.
4. Tom started last week his new job.
5. I want to speak English fluently.
6. April bought for her friend a present.
7. I drink every day three cups of coffee.
8. Don't eat your dinner too quickly!
9. I borrowed from my brother fifty dollars.

94.2 Put the words in order.

1. (the door / opened / I / slowly) *I opened the door slowly.*
2. (two letters / I / this morning / wrote) I _____.
3. (entered / quietly / the house / the thief) _____
4. (Megan / very well / French / doesn't speak) _____
5. (a lot of work / did / I / yesterday) _____
6. (Mary / do you know / well?) _____
7. (we / enjoyed / very much / the party) _____
8. (the problem / carefully / I / explained) _____
9. (we / at the airport / some friends / met) _____
10. (did you buy / in Canada / that jacket?) _____
11. (every day / do / the same thing / we) _____
12. (football / don't like / very much / I) _____

94.3 Put the words in order.

1. (to work / every day / walks / Liz) Liz *walks to work every day*.
2. (at the hotel / I / early / arrived) I _____.
3. (goes / every year / to Puerto Rico / Julia) Julia _____.
4. (we / since 1998 / here / have lived) We _____.
5. (in Montreal / Sue / in 1980 / was born) Sue _____.
6. (didn't go / yesterday / Paul / to work) Paul _____.
7. (to the bank / yesterday afternoon / went / Megan) Megan _____.
8. (I / in bed / this morning / had breakfast) I _____.
9. (next September / Barbara / to college / is going) Barbara _____.
10. (I / a beautiful bird / this morning / in the yard / saw) I _____.
11. (many times / have been / my parents / to Tokyo) My _____.
12. (my umbrella / I / last night / left / in the restaurant) I _____.
13. (to the movies / tomorrow / are you going?) Are _____?
14. (the children / I / took / this morning / to school) I _____.

UNIT 95

Always/usually/often, etc. (Word Order 2)

A

We often use these words with the verb in the middle of a sentence.

always	often	ever	rarely	also	already	all
usually	sometimes	never	seldom	just	still	both

- My brother **never speaks** to me.
- She**'s always** late.
- Do you **often go** to restaurants?
- I **sometimes eat** too much. (*or* **Sometimes** I eat too much.)
- I don't want to go to the movies. I**'ve already** seen that film.
- I've got three sisters. They**'re all** married.

B

Always/never, etc., usually go *before* the verb.

	verb
always often never (etc.)	go play feel (etc.)

- I **always go** to work by car. (*not* I go always)
- Megan **often plays** tennis. (*not* Megan plays often tennis)
- You **sometimes look** unhappy.
- They **usually have** dinner at 7 o'clock.
- We **rarely** (*or* **seldom**) **watch** television.
- Richard is a good swimmer. He **also plays** tennis and volleyball. (*not* He plays also tennis)
- I've got three sisters. They **all live** in the same city.

Always/never, etc., go *after* **am/is/are/was/were.**

am is are was were	always often never (etc.)

- I **am never** sick. (*not* I never am sick)
- They **are usually** at home in the evening.
- It **is often** very cold here in the winter.
- When I was a child, I **was always** late for school.
- "**Is** Nicole **still** here?" "No, she went home."
- I've got two brothers. They**'re both** doctors.

C

Always/never, etc., go *between* two verbs (**have . . . been / can . . . find,** etc.).

verb 1		*verb 2*
will can do (etc.)	always often never (etc.)	go find remember (etc.)
have has		gone been (etc.)

- I **will always remember** you.
- It **doesn't often rain** here.
- Do you **usually drive** to work?
- I **can never find** my keys.
- **Have** you **ever been** to Egypt?
- Nicole isn't here. She **just went** out.
- The children **have all finished** their homework.

***Always/never* + Simple Present Unit 5** ***Just/already* + Present Perfect and Simple Past Unit 20**
***All* Units 81–82** ***Both* Unit 83** ***Still* Unit 96**

Exercises

95.1 Look at Paul's answers. Write sentences with *often/never,* etc.

PAUL

1.	Do you ever play tennis?	Yes, often.
2.	Do you get up early?	Yes, always.
3.	Are you ever late for work?	No, never.
4.	Do you ever get angry?	Sometimes.
5.	Do you go swimming much?	No, rarely.
6.	Are you home in the evening much?	Yes, usually.

Paul often plays tennis.
He _____.
He _____.
_____
_____
_____

95.2 Write these sentences with the words in parentheses ( ).

1. My brother calls me. (never) *My brother never calls me.*
2. Susan is polite. (always) Susan _____.
3. Kim started a new job. (just) Kim _____.
4. I go to bed before midnight. (rarely) _____
5. The bus isn't late. (usually) _____
6. I don't eat fish. (often) _____
7. I will forget what you said. (never) _____
8. Have you lost your passport? (ever) _____
9. Do you work in the same place? (still) _____
10. They stay at the same hotel. (always) _____
11. Diane doesn't work on Saturday. (usually) _____
12. Is Tina here? (already) _____
13. What do you have for breakfast? (usually) _____
14. I can remember his name. (never) _____

95.3 Write sentences with ***also.*** Use the words in parentheses ( ).

1. Do you play football? (tennis) *Yes, and I also play tennis.*
2. Do you speak Spanish? (Russian) Yes, and I _____.
3. Are you tired? (hungry) Yes, and _____.
4. Have you been to England? (Ireland) Yes, _____.
5. Did you buy any clothes? (some books) _____

95.4 Write sentences with ***both*** and ***all.***

I live in Buenos Aires.
I play soccer.
I'm a student.
I have a car.

I live in Buenos Aires.
I play soccer.
I'm a student.
I have a car.

1. *They both live in Buenos Aires.*
They _____ soccer.
They _____ students.
_____ cars.

I'm married. I was born in England. I live in Toronto.

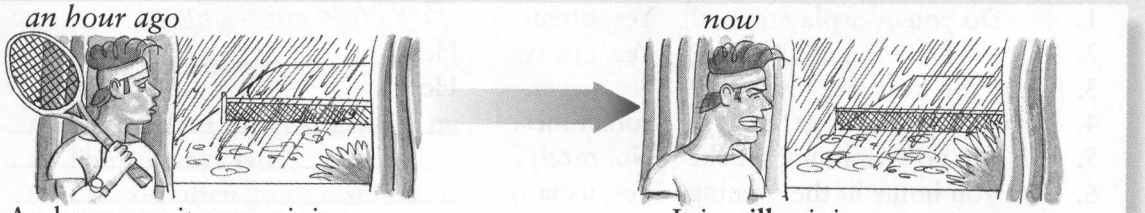
2. They _____ married.
They _____ England.
_____

UNIT 96

Still, yet, and *already*

A

still

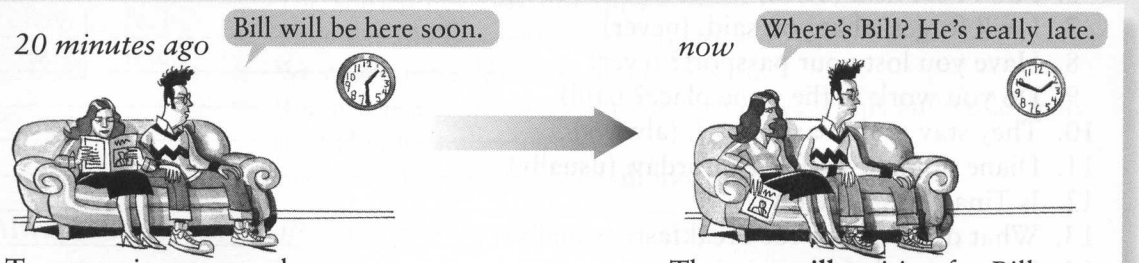


still = something is the same as before

- I had a lot to eat but I'm **still** hungry. (= I was hungry before and I'm hungry now)
- "Did you sell your car?" "No, I **still** have it."
- "Do you **still** live in Vancouver?" "No, I live in Montreal now."

B

yet



yet = until now

We use **yet** in *negative* sentences (He **hasn't** come yet.) and in *questions* (**Has he** come yet?). **Yet** is usually at the end of a sentence.

- "Where's Diane?" "She **isn't** here **yet.**" (= she will come later)
- "What are you doing tonight?" "I **don't** know **yet.**" (= I will know later)
- "Are you ready to go **yet?**" "**Not yet.** In a minute." (= I will be ready, but I'm not ready now)
- "Have you decided what to do **yet?**" "No, I'm still thinking about it."

Compare **yet** and **still:**

- She hasn't left **yet.** = She's **still** here. (*not* she's yet here)
- I haven't finished my homework **yet.** (= I'm **still** doing it)

C

already = earlier than expected

- "What time is John coming?" "He's **already** here."
- "I want to tell you what happened." "That's OK. I **already** know."
- Megan doesn't want to go to the movies. She's **already** seen the film.

Already/yet* + Present Perfect / Simple Past** Unit 20 **Word Order *(still/already) Unit 95

Exercises

96.1 **You meet Lisa. The last time you saw her was two years ago. You ask her some questions with *still*.**

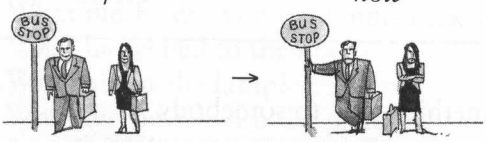
LISA *two years ago*

I play the piano.
I have an old car.
I'm a student.
I'm studying Japanese.
I go to the movies a lot.
I want to be a teacher.

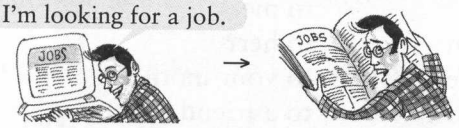
1. *Do you still play the piano?*
2. Do you _____?
3. Are _____?
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____

96.2 **Write three sentences for each situation. Look at the example carefully.**

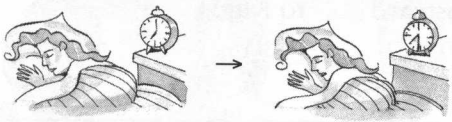
before *now*

1. 

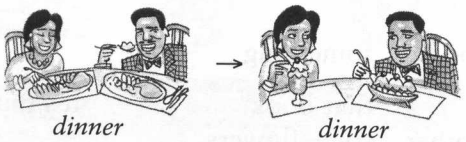
(*before*) *They were waiting for the bus.*
(still) *They are still waiting.*
(yet) *The bus hasn't come yet.*

2. I'm looking for a job.


(*before*) He was _____.
(still) He _____.
(yet) _____ yet.

3. 

(*before*) She _____.
(still) _____
(yet) _____

4. 

dinner *dinner*

(*before*) They _____.
(still) _____
(yet) _____

96.3 **Write questions with *yet*.**

1. You and Sue are going out together. You are waiting for her to get ready. Maybe she is ready now. You ask Sue: *Are you ready yet?*
2. You are waiting for Megan to arrive. She wasn't here ten minutes ago. Maybe she is here now. You ask somebody: _____ Megan _____?
3. Mary had a blood test and is waiting for the report. Maybe she has gotten the report now. You ask her: _____ you _____?
4. A few days ago you spoke to Tom. He couldn't decide where to go on vacation. Maybe he has decided now. You ask him: _____?

96.4 **Complete the sentences. Use *already*.**

1. What time is John coming?
2. Do you and Joe want to see the movie?
3. I have to see Julie before she leaves.
4. Do you need a pen?
5. Should I pay the bill?
6. Should I tell Paul about the meeting?

He *'s already* _____ here.
No, we *'ve already seen* _____ it.
It's too late. She _____.
No thanks. I _____ one.
No, it's OK. I _____.
No, he _____. I told him.

UNIT 97

Give me that book! Give it to me!

A

give/lend/pass/send/show

After these verbs, there are two possible structures:

(give) something to somebody

- I gave **the keys to Liz.**

(give) somebody something

- I gave **Liz the keys.**

I *the keys* LIZ

B

(give) something to somebody

		something	to somebody
That's my book.	**Give**	it	to me.
These are Sue's keys. Can you	**give**	them	to her?
Can you	**give**	these flowers	to your mother?
I	**lent**	my car	to a friend of mine.
Did you	**send**	a postcard	to Kate?
We've seen these photos. You	**showed**	them	to us.

C

(give) somebody something

		somebody	something	
	Give	me	that book.	It's mine.
Tom	**gave**	his mother	some flowers.	
I	**lent**	John	some money.	
How much money did you	**lend**	him?		
I	**sent**	you	a postcard.	
Nicole	**showed**	us	her vacation photos.	
Can you	**pass**	me	the salt,	please?

You can also say: **buy/get** somebody something.

- I **bought** my mother some flowers. (= I bought some flowers **for** my mother)
- Can you **get** me a newspaper when you go out? (= get a newspaper **for** me)

D

Compare:

- I **gave** the keys **to Liz.**
  I **gave Liz** the keys. (*but not* I gave to Liz the keys)
- That's my book. Can you **give** it **to me?**
  Can you **give me** that book? (*but not* give to me that book)

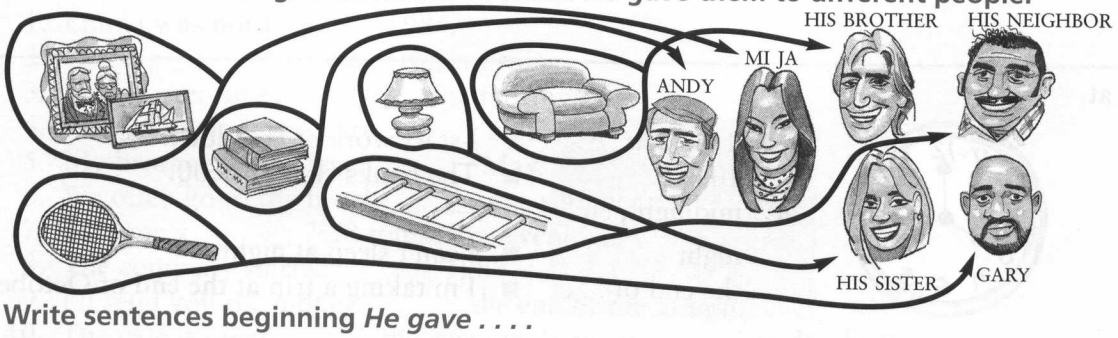
We prefer the first structure (**give** something **to** somebody) when the *thing* is **it** or **them.**

- I gave **it to her.** (*not* I gave her it)
- Here are the keys. Give **them to your father.** (*not* Give your father them)

***I/him/them*, etc. Unit 60**

Exercises

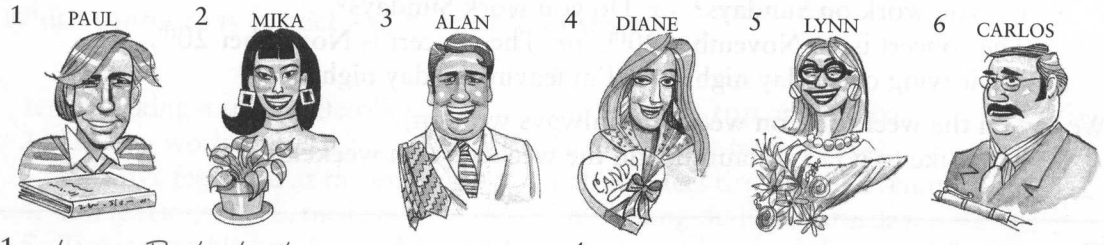
97.1 Mark had some things that he didn't want. He gave them to different people.



Write sentences beginning *He gave . . . .*

1. What did Mark do with the armchair? *He gave it to his brother.*
2. What did he do with the tennis racket? He gave _____.
3. What happened to the books? He _____.
4. What about the lamp? _____
5. What did he do with the pictures? _____
6. And the ladder? _____

97.2 You gave some gifts to these people. Write a sentence for each person.



1. *I gave Paul a book.*
2. I gave _____.
3. I _____.
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____

97.3 Write questions beginning *Can you give me . . . ? / Can you pass me . . . ?*, etc.

1. (you want the salt – pass) *Can you pass me the salt?*
2. (you need an umbrella – lend) Can you _____?
3. (you want my address – give) Can _____ your _____?
4. (you need ten dollars – lend) _____
5. (you want some information – send) _____
6. (you want to see the letter – show) _____
7. (you want some stamps – get) _____

97.4 Which is right?

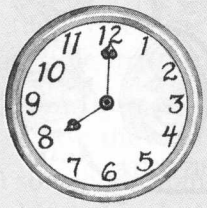
1. ~~I gave to Liz the keys.~~ / I gave Liz the keys. (*I gave Liz the keys* is right.)
2. I'll lend to you some money if you want. / I'll lend you some money if you want.
3. Did you send the letter me? / Did you send the letter to me?
4. I want to buy for you a present. / I want to buy you a present.
5. Can you pass to me the sugar, please? / Can you pass me the sugar, please?
6. This is Megan's bag. Can you give it to her? / Can you give her it?
7. I showed to the officer my driver's license. / I showed the officer my driver's license.

UNIT 98

At 8 o'clock, on Monday, in April, etc.

A

at



at	8 o'clock 10:30 midnight, etc.
	night the end of . . .

- I start work **at 8 o'clock.**
- The banks close **at 5:00.**
- I can't sleep **at night.**
- I'm taking a trip **at the end of** October.

B

on

(on)	Sunday(s), Monday(s), etc. April 25, June 6, etc. Monday morning, Tuesday afternoon, Friday night, etc.

You can say:

- Goodbye! See you **on Friday.** *or* See you **Friday.** (with or without **on**)
- Do you work **on Sundays?** *or* Do you work **Sundays?**
- The concert is **on November 20th.** *or* The concert is **November 20th.**
- I'm leaving **on Friday night.** *or* I'm leaving **Friday night.**

We say **on the weekend / on weekends** (always with **on**).

- They like to go to restaurants **on the weekend / on weekends.**

C

in

in	April, June, etc. 2005, 1990, etc.
	the spring/summer/fall/winter the morning/afternoon/evening

- I'm taking a trip **in October.**
- Emma was born **in 1984.**
- The park is beautiful **in the fall.**
- Do you often go out **in the evening?**

D

We do not use **at/on/in** before **next/last/this/every.**

- I'm going to Chicago **next Monday.** (*not* on next Monday)
- We go on vacation **every summer. Last summer** we went to Europe.
- What are you doing **this weekend?**

E

in five minutes / in a few days / in six weeks / in two years, etc.

now **in five minutes**

- Hurry! The train leaves **in five minutes.** (= it leaves five minutes from now)
- Goodbye! I'll see you **in a few days.** (= a few days from now)

Exercises

98.1 Write *at* or *in*.

1. Emma was born *in* 1984.
2. I got up _____ 8 o'clock this morning.
3. I like to get up early _____ the morning.
4. I like to look at the stars _____ night.
5. My brother got married _____ May.
6. We often go to the beach _____ the summer.
7. Let's meet _____ 7:30 tomorrow evening.
8. The company started _____ 1989.
9. I'll send you the money _____ the end of the month.
10. The café is open _____ the evening. It closes _____ midnight.

98.2 Write *at/in/on*.

1.	*in* April	6.	_____ September	11.	_____ Friday morning
2.	*on* June 6	7.	_____ September 24th	12.	_____ Saturday night
3.	_____ half past two	8.	_____ the weekend	13.	_____ night
4.	_____ 1987	9.	_____ 11:45	14.	_____ the end of the day
5.	_____ Wednesday	10.	_____ the morning	15.	_____ the winter

98.3 Which sentence is correct – A, B, or both of them?

	A	B	
1.	I'm taking a trip in October.	I'm taking a trip on October.	*A*
2.	Do you work Sundays?	Do you work on Sundays?	*both*
3.	I always feel tired at the evening.	I always feel tired in the evening.	_____
4.	I'm leaving next Saturday.	I'm leaving on next Saturday.	_____
5.	Tim started his new job on May 18th.	Tim started his new job May 18th.	_____
6.	Laura finished high school in 1998.	Laura finished high school 1998.	_____
7.	We meet on every Tuesday.	We meet every Tuesday.	_____
8.	We don't often go out in night.	We don't often go out at night.	_____
9.	I can't meet you Thursday.	I can't meet you on Thursday.	_____
10.	Lisa saw Sam Monday night.	Lisa saw Sam at Monday night.	_____
11.	I'm leaving in the end of this month.	I'm leaving at the end of this month.	_____
12.	Tim goes to the gym on Fridays.	Tim goes to the gym Fridays.	_____

98.4 Write sentences with *in*.

1. It's 5:25 now. The train leaves at 5:30.
   The train leaves in five minutes.
2. It's Monday today. I'll call you on Thursday.
   I'll _____.
3. Today is June 14th. My exam is June 28th.
   My _____.
4. It's 3 o'clock now. Tom will be here at 3:30.
   Tom _____.

UNIT 99

From . . . to, until, since, and *for*

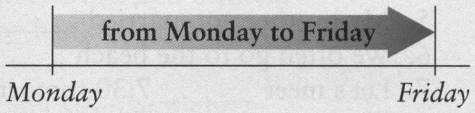
A

from . . . to . . .

- We lived in Canada **from** 1982 **to** 1990.
- I work **from** Monday **to** Friday.

You can also say **from . . . until . . . .**

- We lived in Canada **from** 1982 **until** 1990.

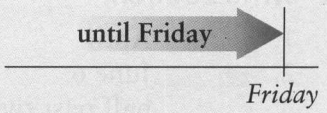


B

until + the end of a period of time

until	Friday December 3 o'clock I come back

- They're going away tomorrow. They'll be away **until Friday.**
- I went to bed early, but I wasn't tired. I read a book **until 3 A.M.**
- Wait here **until I come back.**



You can also say **till** (= **until**).

- Wait here **till** I come back.

Compare:

- "**How long** will you be away?" "**Until** Monday."
- "**When** are you coming back?" "**On** Monday."

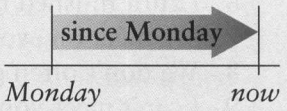
C

since + a time in the past (to now)

We use **since** after the *present perfect* (**have been / have done,** etc.).

since	Monday 1998 2:30 I arrived

- John is in the hospital. He has been there **since Monday.** (= from Monday to now)
- Mr. and Mrs. Han have been married **since 1988.** (= from 1988 to now)
- It's been raining **since I arrived.**



Compare:

- We lived in Canada **from** 1982 **to** 1990.
  We lived in Canada **until** 1990.
- Now we live in Japan. We came to Japan **in** 1990.
  We've lived in Japan **since** 1990. (= from 1990 until now)

We use **for** (not **since**) + a period of time (**three days / ten years / a long time,** etc.).

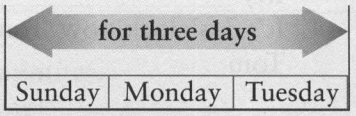
- We've lived in Japan for a long time. (*not* since a long time)

D

for + a period of time

for	three days ten years ten minutes a long time

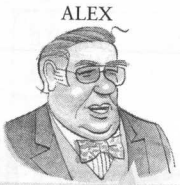
- Ed stayed with us **for three days.**
- She's been married **for ten years.**
- I'm going away **for a few weeks.**
- I'm going away **for the weekend.**



Present Perfect + *for/since* **Unit 18** **Present Perfect *(I have done)* and Simple Past *(I did)*** **Unit 21**

Exercises

99.1 Read the information and complete the sentences. Use *from . . . to / until / since.*



I live in Japan now.
I lived in Canada before.
I came to Japan in 1990.

JIN SOOK

I live in Australia now.
I lived in Korea before.
I came to Australia in 2001.

BETH

I work in a restaurant now.
I worked in a hotel before.
I started work in the restaurant in 2000.

ADAM

I'm a salesman now.
I was a teacher before.
I started work as a salesman in 1999.

1. (Alex / Canada / 1982–1990) Alex lived *in Canada from 1982 to 1990*.
2. (Alex / Canada / → 1990) Alex lived in Canada _____ 1990.
3. (Alex / Japan / 1990 →) Alex has lived in Japan _____.
4. (Jin Sook / Korea / → 2001) Jin Sook lived in _____.
5. (Jin Sook / Australia / 2001 →) Jin Sook has lived in _____.
6. (Beth / a hotel / 1999–2000) Beth worked _____ 1999 _____.
7. (Beth / a restaurant / 2000 →) Beth has worked _____.
8. (Adam / a teacher / 1995–1999) Adam was a _____.
9. (Adam / a salesman / 1999 →) Adam has been _____.

Now write sentences with *for.*

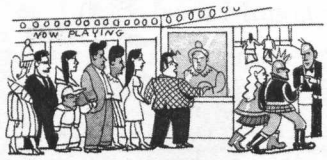
10. (Alex / Canada) *Alex lived in Canada for eight years.*
11. (Alex / Japan) Alex has lived in Japan _____.
12. (Jin Sook / Australia) Jin Sook has _____.
13. (Beth / a hotel) Beth worked _____.
14. (Beth / restaurant) Beth _____.
15. (Adam / a teacher) Adam _____.
16. (Adam / a salesman) Adam _____.

99.2 Write *until/since/for.*

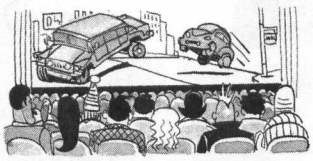
1. Mr. and Mrs. Han have been married *since* 1988.
2. I was tired this morning. I stayed in bed _____ 10 o'clock.
3. We waited for Sue _____ half an hour, but she didn't come.
4. "How long have you been here?" "_____ seven-thirty."
5. "How long did you stay at the party last night?" "_____ midnight."
6. David and I are good friends. We have known each other _____ ten years.
7. I'm tired. I'm going to lie down _____ a few minutes.
8. *(in an airplane that's landing)* Please stay in your seats _____ the plane stops at the gate.
9. This is my house. I've lived here _____ I was seven years old.
10. Ampol is out of town. He'll be away _____ Wednesday.
11. Next week I'm going to Los Angeles _____ three days.
12. I usually finish work at 5:30, but sometimes I work _____ six.
13. "How long have you known Amy?" "_____ we were in high school."
14. Where have you been? I've been waiting for you _____ twenty minutes.

UNIT
100 *Before, after, during,* and *while*

A before, during, and after



before the movie

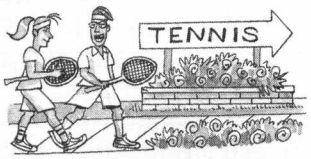


during the movie

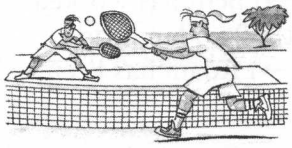
after the movie

- Everybody is nervous **before exams.**
- I fell asleep **during the movie.**
- We were tired **after our visit** to the museum.

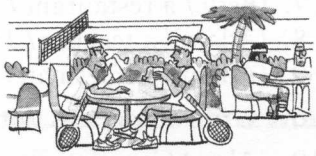
B before, while, and after



before we played



while we were playing



after we played

- Don't forget to close the window **before you go** out.
- I often fall asleep **while I'm reading.**
- They watched TV **after they did** the dishes.

C during, while, and for

We use **during** + *noun* (during **the movie**). We use **while** + *verb* (while **I'm watching**).

- We didn't speak **during the meal.** *but*
- We didn't speak **while we were eating.** (*not* during we were eating)

Use **for** (*not* during) + *a period of time* (**three days / two hours / a year,** etc.).

- We played tennis **for two hours.** (*not* during two hours)
- I lived in London **for a year.** (*not* during a year)

D

You can use **before/after + -ing** (**before going / after eating,** etc.).

- I always have breakfast **before going** to work. (= before I go to work)
- **After doing** the dishes, they watched TV. (= after they did)

Do not say "before to go," "after to do," etc.

- **Before eating** the apple, I washed it carefully. (*not* before to eat)
- I started work **after reading** the newspaper. (*not* after to read)

***I was -ing* (Past Continuous) Units 13–14 *For* Unit 99 Preposition + *-ing* Unit 107**
***Before/after/while/when* Unit 112**

Exercises

100.1 Complete the sentences. Choose from the boxes.

after	during
before	while

+

lunch	the end	they went to Australia
the concert	the exam	you're waiting
the course	the night	

1. Everybody was nervous *before the exam*.
2. I usually work four hours in the morning and another three hours _____.
3. The movie was really boring. We left _____.
4. Anne went to night school to learn German. She learned a lot _____.
5. My aunt and uncle lived in London _____.
6. *A:* Somebody broke a window _____. Did you hear anything?
   B: No, I was asleep.
7. Would you like to sit down _____?
8. "Are you going home _____?" "Yes, we have to get up early tomorrow."

100.2 Write *during/while/for.*

1. We didn't speak *while* _____ we were eating.
2. We didn't speak *during* _____ the meal.
3. Eric called _____ you were out.
4. I stayed in Rome _____ five days.
5. Karen wrote a lot of letters _____ she was on vacation.
6. The students looked very bored _____ the class.
7. I fell out of bed _____ I was asleep.
8. Last night I watched TV _____ six hours.
9. I don't usually watch TV _____ the day.
10. Do you ever watch TV _____ you're having dinner?

100.3 Complete the sentences. Use *-ing* (*doing*, etc.).

1. After *doing* _____ the dishes, they watched TV.
2. I felt sick after _____ too much chocolate.
3. I'm going to ask you a question. Think carefully before _____ it.
4. I felt terrible when I got up this morning. I felt better after _____ a shower.
5. After _____ my work, I left the office and went home.
6. Before _____ to a foreign country, you should learn a little of the language.

100.4 Write sentences with *before* + *-ing* and *after* + *-ing*.

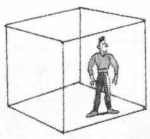
1. They did the dishes. Then they watched TV.
   After *doing the dishes, they watched TV*.
2. John finished high school. Then he worked in a department store for two years.
   John worked _____.
3. I read for a few minutes. Then I went to sleep.
   Before _____.
4. We walked for three hours. We were very tired.
   After _____.
5. Let's have a cup of coffee. Then we'll go out.
   Let's _____.

UNIT 101

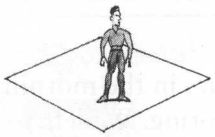
In, at, and *on* (Places 1)

A

in



in a room
in a store
in a car
in the water

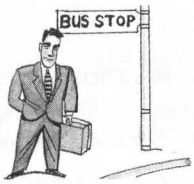


in a yard
in a town
in a park
in Brazil

- "Where's David?" "**In the kitchen. / In the back yard. / In Tokyo.**"
- What's **in that box / in that bag / in that closet?**
- Angela works **in a store / in a bank / in a factory.**
- I went for a swim **in the river / in the pool / in the ocean.**
- Milan is **in northern Italy.**
- I live **in a city,** but I'd like to live **in the country.**

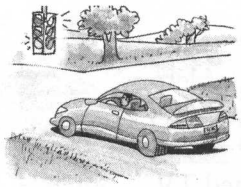
B

at

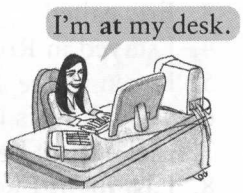


at the bus stop

at the door



at the traffic light



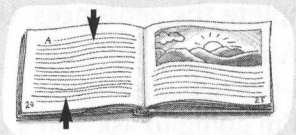
at her desk

- There's somebody **at the bus stop / at the door.**
- The car is waiting **at the traffic light.**
- Julia is working **at her desk.**

Also: **at the top / at the bottom / at the end** (of . . .)

- Write your name **at the top of the page.**
- My house is **at the end of the block.**

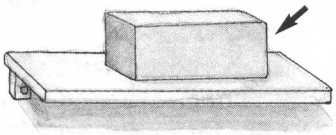
at the top (of the page)



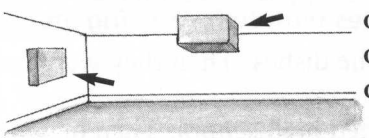
at the bottom (of the page)

C

on



on a shelf
on a plate
on a balcony
on the floor, etc.

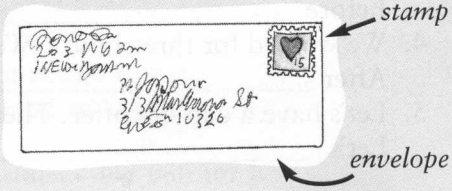


on a wall
on the ceiling
on a door, etc.

- There are some books **on the shelf** and some pictures **on the wall.**
- There are a lot of apples **on those trees.**
- Don't sit **on the grass.** It's wet.
- There's a stamp **on the envelope.**

Also: **on a horse / on a bicycle / on a motorcycle**

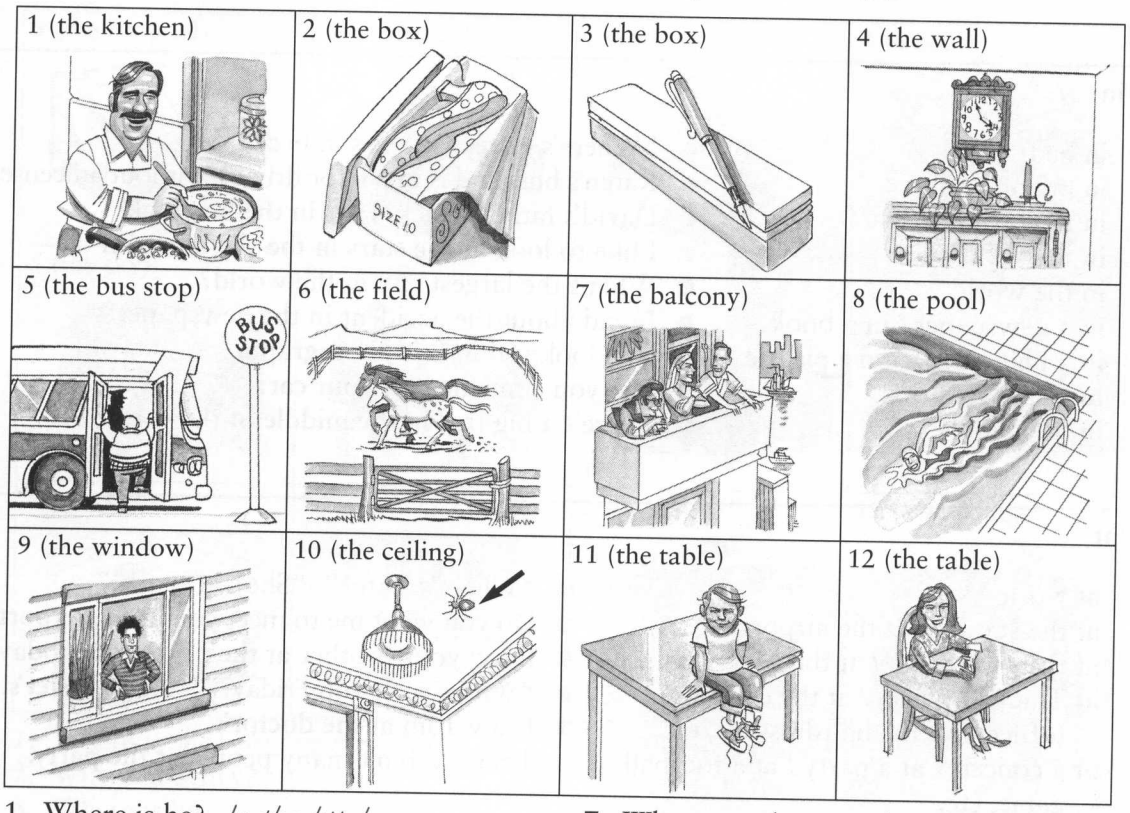
- Who's that man **on the motorcycle?**



***In/at/on* (Places 2) Unit 102** ***The top / the bottom,* etc. Unit 71** ***At/on/in* (Time) Unit 98**

Exercises

101.1 Answer the questions. Use *in/at/on* + the words in parentheses ( ).



1. Where is he? *In the kitchen.*
2. Where are the shoes? _____
3. Where is the pen? _____
4. Where is the clock? _____
5. Where is the bus? _____
6. Where are the horses? _____
7. Where are they standing? _____
8. Where is she swimming? _____
9. Where is he standing? _____
10. Where is the spider? _____
11. Where is he sitting? _____
12. Where is she sitting? _____

101.2 Write *in/at/on*.

1. Don't sit *on* the grass. It's wet.
2. What do you have _____ the bag?
3. Look! There's a man _____ the roof. What's he doing?
4. There are a lot of fish _____ this river.
5. Our house is number 45 – the number is _____ the door.
6. "Is the post office near here?" "Yes, turn left _____ the traffic light."
7. I have a small vegetable garden _____ the back yard.
8. My sister lives _____ Mexico City.
9. There's a small park _____ the top of the hill.
10. I think I heard the doorbell. There's somebody _____ the door.
11. Munich is a large city _____ southern Germany.
12. There's a gas station _____ the end of the block.
13. It's difficult to carry a lot of things _____ a bicycle.
14. I looked at the list of names. My name was _____ the bottom of the list.
15. There's a mirror _____ the wall _____ the living room.

UNIT 102

In, at, and *on* (Places 2)

A

in

in bed
in prison / jail
in the hospital
in the sky
in the world
in a newspaper / **in** a book
in a photograph / **in** a picture
in a car / **in** a taxi
in the middle (of . . .)

- "Where's Kate?" "She's **in bed.**"
- Karen's husband is **in jail** for driving without a license.
- David's father is sick. He's **in the hospital.**
- I like to look at the stars **in the sky** at night.
- What's the largest city **in the world?**
- I read about the accident **in the newspaper.**
- You look sad **in this photograph.**
- Did you come here **in your car?**
- There's a big tree **in the middle** of the yard.

B

at

at work
at the station / **at** the airport
at the post office / **at** the supermarket
at Tracy's (house) / **at** the doctor's (office) / **at** the hairdresser's, etc.
at a concert / **at** a party / **at** a football game, etc.

- "Where's Kate?" "She's **at work.**"
- Do you want me to meet you **at the airport?**
- I saw your brother **at the post office** today.
- "Where were you Friday?" "**At my sister's.**"
- I saw Tom **at the doctor's.**
- There weren't many people **at the party.**

You can say **be/stay at home** or **be/stay home** (with or without **at**).

- Is Tom **at home?** *or* Is Tom **home?**

You can often use **in** or **at** for hotels and restaurants.

- We stayed **at** a nice hotel. *or* We stayed **in** a nice hotel.

C

You can say **in school** or **at school,** but there is a difference.

She's **at** school = she is there now

- "Where's your sister? Is she home?" "No, she's **at school.**"

She's **in** school = she is a student (in high school / college / medical school, etc.)

- "Does your sister have a job?" "No, she's still **in school.**"

D

on

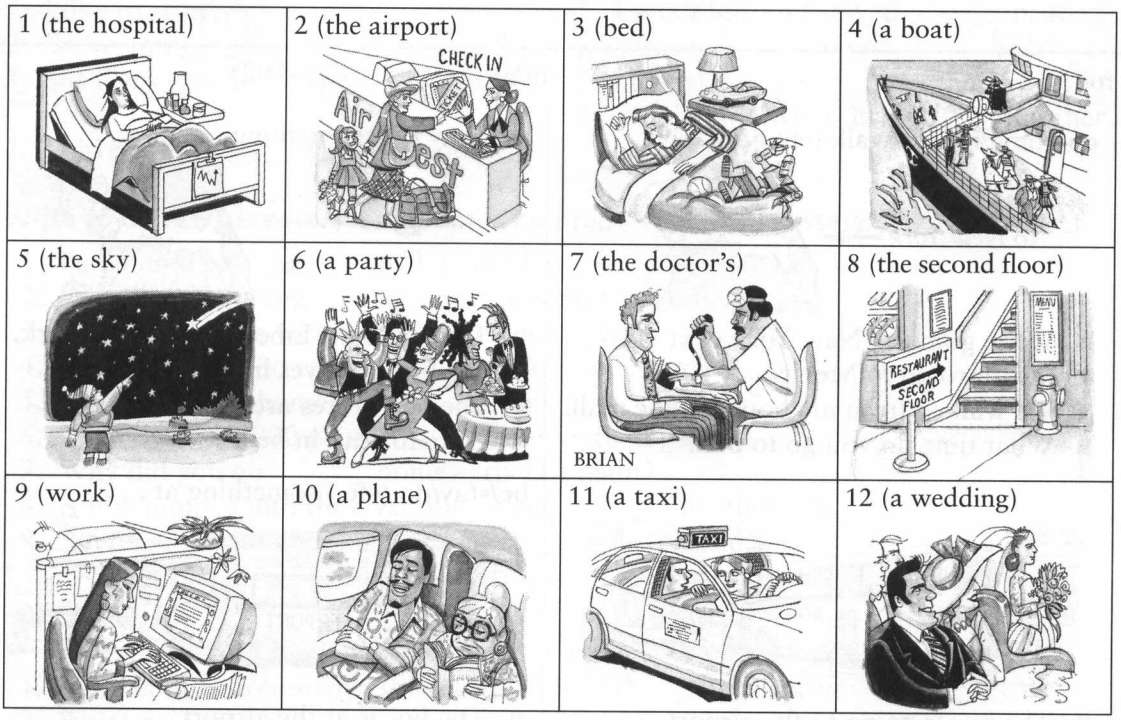
on a bus / **on** a train / **on** a plane / **on** a boat
on the first floor (*or* ground floor) / **on** the second floor, etc.
on a street
on the way (to . . .) / **on the way** home

- Did you come here **on the bus?**
- The office is **on the first floor.** (*not* in the first floor)
- My brother lives **on a** nice **street.**
- I met Lee **on the way** to work / **on my way** home.

***In/at/on* (Places 1) Unit 101 *To/in/at* Unit 103 *On the left/right* Unit 104

Exercises

102.1 Answer the questions. Use *in/at/on* + the words in parentheses ( ).



1. Where is she? *In the hospital.*
2. Where are they? _____
3. Where is he? _____
4. Where are they? _____
5. Where are the stars? _____
6. Where are they? _____
7. Where is Brian? _____
8. Where is the restaurant? _____
9. Where is she? _____
10. Where are they? _____
11. Where are they? _____
12. Where are they? _____

102.2 Write *in/at/on*.

1. "Where's your sister? Is she home?" "No, she's *at* school."
2. There was a big table _____ the middle of the room.
3. What is the longest river _____ the world?
4. Were there many people _____ the concert last night?
5. Will you be _____ home tomorrow afternoon?
6. Who is the man _____ this photograph? Do you know him?
7. "Is your son going to get married soon?" "No, he's still _____ college."
8. Eric is coming by train. I'm going to meet him _____ the station.
9. Charlie is _____ the hospital. He had an operation yesterday.
10. How many pages are there _____ that book?
11. "Are you hungry after your trip?" "No, I ate _____ the plane."
12. I'm sorry I'm late. My car broke down _____ the way.
13. "Is Tom here?" "No, he's _____ his brother's."
14. Don't believe everything you see _____ the newspaper!
15. I walked to work, but I came home _____ the bus.
16. *A (on the phone):* Can I speak to Anne, please?
    B: No, sorry. She'll be _____ the university until 5:00 today.

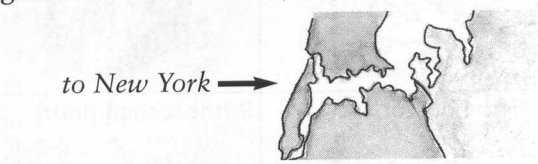
UNIT 103

To, in, and *at* (Places 3)

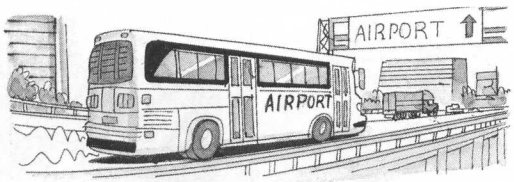
A

to **in/at** (see Units 101–102)

go/come/return/walk (etc.) **to . . .**



- We're **going to New York** next week.
- I want to **go to Mexico.**
- We **walked** from my house **to the mall.**
- What time do you **go to bed?**



- The bus is **going to the airport.**
- Karen didn't **go to work** yesterday.
- I **went to a party** last night.
- We'd like you to **come to our house.**

be / stay / do something (etc.) **in . . .**

- The Statue of Liberty **is in New York.**
- My brother **lives in Mexico.**
- The best stores **are in the mall.**
- I like **to read in bed.**

be/stay/do (etc.) something **at . . .**

- The bus **is at the airport.**
- Amy **wasn't at work** yesterday.
- I **met** her **at a party.**
- Amy **stayed at her brother's house.**

B

home

go/come/walk (etc.) ~~to~~ **home**

- I'm tired. I'm **going home.** (*not* to home)
- Did you **walk home?**

be/stay (**at**) **home** (with or without **at**)

- I'm **staying home** tonight. (*or* I'm **staying at home.**)

But: do something (**work, watch TV,** etc.) **at home**

- Dan doesn't go to an office. He works **at home.** (*not* he works home)

C

arrive and **get**

arrive in a country or town (**arrive in Mexico / arrive in Tokyo,** etc.)

- They **arrived in Brazil** last week. (*not* arrived to Brazil)

arrive at other places (**arrive at the station / arrive at work,** etc.)

- What time did you **arrive at the hotel?** (*not* arrive to the hotel)

get to (a place)

- What time did you **get to the hotel?**
- When did you **get to Tokyo?**

get home / arrive home (no *preposition*)

- I was tired when I **got home.** (*or* I was tired when I **arrived home.**)

Been to **Unit 16** ***Get (to . . .)*** **Unit 57** ***In/at*** **Units 101–102**

Exercises

103.1 Write *to* or *in*.

1. I like to read *in* bed.
2. We're going _____ Italy next month.
3. Sue is on vacation _____ Chile right now.
4. I have to go _____ the bank today.
5. I was tired, so I stayed _____ bed.
6. What time do you go _____ bed?
7. Does this bus go _____ the airport?
8. Would you like to live _____ another country?

103.2 Write *to* or *at* if necessary. Sometimes no preposition is necessary.

1. Paula didn't go *to* work yesterday.
2. I'm tired. I'm going — home. *(no preposition)*
3. Amy is sick. She went _____ the doctor.
4. Would you like to come _____ a party on Saturday?
5. "Is Liz _____ home?" "No, she went _____ work."
6. There were 20,000 people _____ the football game.
7. Why did you go _____ home early last night?
8. A boy jumped into the river and swam _____ the other side.
9. There were a lot of people waiting _____ the bus stop.
10. We had dinner _____ a restaurant, and then we went back _____ the hotel.

103.3 Write *to, at,* or *in* if necessary. Sometimes no preposition is necessary.

1. Joe is coming tomorrow. I'm meeting him *at* the airport.
2. We're going _____ a concert tomorrow night.
3. I went _____ Chile last year.
4. How long did you stay _____ Chile?
5. Next year we hope to go _____ Japan to visit some friends.
6. Do you want to go _____ the movies tonight?
7. Did you park your car _____ the airport?
8. After the accident three people were taken _____ the hospital.
9. How often do you go _____ the dentist?
10. "Is Diane here?" "No, she's _____ Amy's."
11. My house is _____ the end of the block on the left.
12. I went _____ Mary's house, but she wasn't _____ home.
13. There were no taxis, so we had to walk _____ home.
14. "Who did you see _____ the party?" "I didn't go _____ the party."

103.4 Write *to, at,* or *in* if necessary. Sometimes no preposition is necessary.

1. What time do you get _____ work?
2. What time do you get _____ home?
3. I arrived _____ the party after 9:00.
4. When did you arrive _____ Dallas?
5. The plane got _____ Paris on time.
6. We arrived _____ home very late.

103.5 Complete these sentences about yourself. Use *to/in/at.*

1. At three o'clock this morning I was *in bed*.
2. Yesterday I went _____.
3. At 11 o'clock yesterday morning I was _____.
4. Someday I'd like to go _____.
5. At 9 o'clock last night I was _____.

Additional Exercise 33 (page 258)

UNIT 104

Next to, between, under, etc.

A next to / between / in front of / in back of

- Adam is **next to** Bob.
- Bob is **between** Adam and Carla.
- Don is **in front of** Bob.
- Carla is **in back of** Don.

Also:

- Adam is **on the left.**
- Ellen is **on the right.**
- Don is **in the middle** (of the group).

B across from / in front of

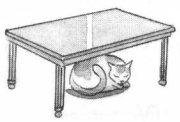
- Anne is sitting **in front of** Bruce.
- Anne is sitting **across from** Christa.
- Christa is sitting **across from** Anne.

C by (= next to)

by the window

- Our house is **by the ocean.** (= next to the ocean)
- Who is that man **by the window?**
- "Is there a pay phone here?" "Yes, **by the door.**"

D under

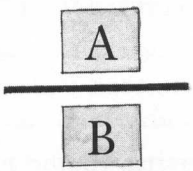


under the table

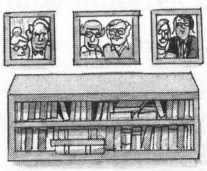
under a tree

- The cat is **under the table.**
- The girl is standing **under a tree.**
- I'm wearing a jacket **under my coat.**

E above and below



- A is **above the line.** (= higher than the line)
- B is **below the line.** (= lower than the line)

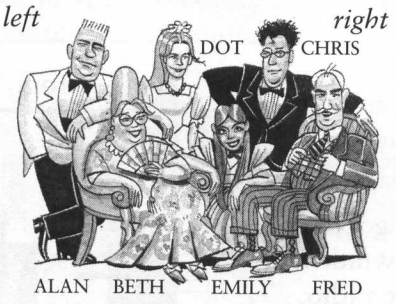


- The pictures are **above the shelves.**
- The shelves are **below the pictures.**

***Up/over/through,* etc. Unit 105** ***By* Unit 106**

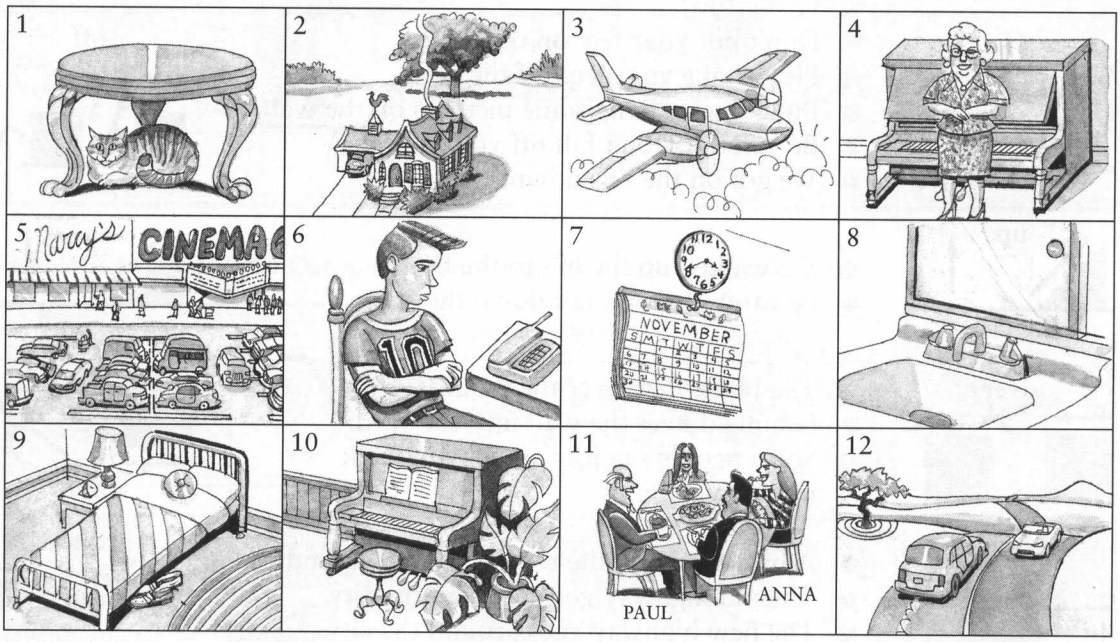
Exercises

104.1 Where are the people in the picture? Complete the sentences.



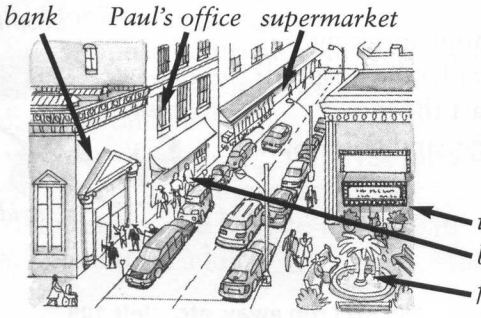
1. Dot is standing *between* Alan and Chris.
2. Chris is standing _____ Fred.
3. Beth is sitting _____ Alan.
4. Emily is sitting _____ Beth and Fred.
5. Chris is standing _____ Dot.
6. Alan is standing _____ Beth.
7. Alan is standing _____ left.
8. Fred is sitting _____ right.
9. Emily is sitting _____ middle.

104.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.



1. The cat is *under* the table.
2. There's a big tree _____ the house.
3. The plane is flying _____ the clouds.
4. She's standing _____ the piano.
5. The movie theater is _____ the right.
6. He's sitting _____ the phone.
7. The calendar is _____ the clock.
8. The cabinet is _____ the sink.
9. There are some shoes _____ the bed.
10. The plant is _____ the piano.
11. Paul is sitting _____ Anna.
12. In Japan people drive _____ the left.

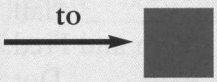
104.3 Write sentences about the picture. Use the words in parentheses ( ).



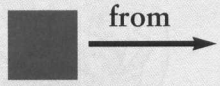
1. (next to) *The bank is next to the bookstore.*
2. (in front of) The _____.
3. (across from) _____
4. (next to) _____
5. (above) _____
6. (between) _____

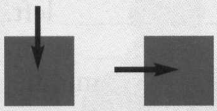
UNIT 105

Up, over, through, etc.



- Tracy is going **to** Hawaii next week.
- We walked **from** the hotel **to** the restaurant.
- A lot of English words come **from** Latin.

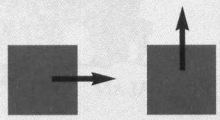


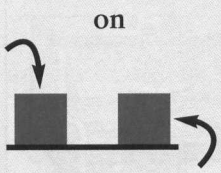


- We jumped **into** the water.
- A man came **out of** the house and got **into** a car.
- Why are you looking **out of** the window?
- I took the old batteries **out of** the radio.

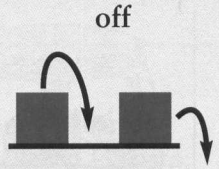
We say **put** something **in** . . . (*not usually* into).

- I **put** new batteries **in** the radio.

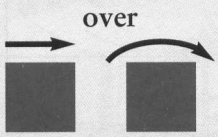




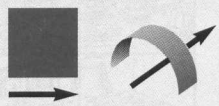
- Don't put your feet **on** the table.
- Please take your feet **off** the table.
- I'm going to hang some pictures **on** the wall.
- Be careful! Don't fall **off** your bicycle.
- We got **on** the bus downtown.

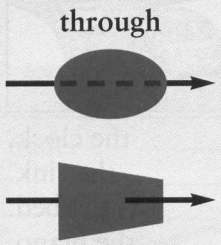


- We walked **up** the hill to the house.
- Be careful! Don't fall **down** the stairs.

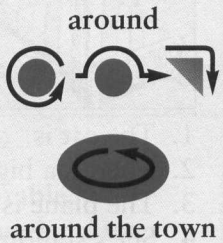


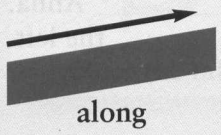
- The plane flew **over** the mountains.
- I climbed **over** the wall into the yard.
- Some people say it is unlucky to walk **under** a ladder.



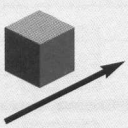


- A bird flew into the room **through** a window.
- The old highway goes **through** the city.
- The new highway goes **around** the city.
- The bus stop is just **around** the corner.
- I walked **around** the town and took some pictures.

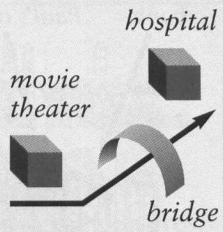




- I was walking **along** the street with my dog.
- Let's go for a walk **along** the river.
- The dog swam **across** the river.



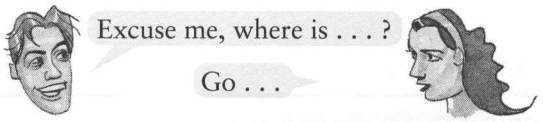
- They walked **past** me without speaking.
- *A:* Excuse me, how do I get to the hospital?
  B: Go along this street, **past** the movie theater, under the bridge, and the hospital is on the left.

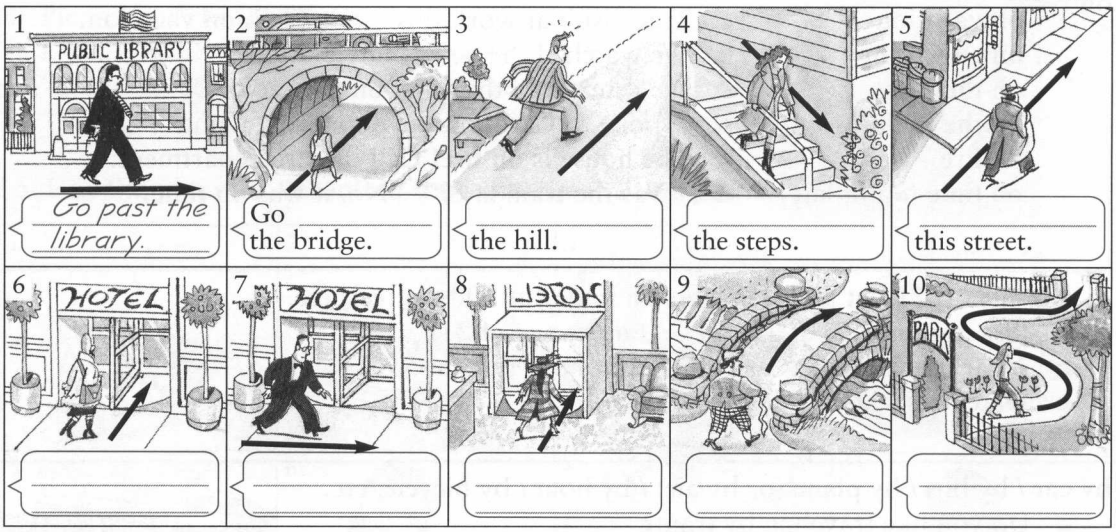


Get in/on, etc. Unit 57 **In/on** Units 101–102 **To** Unit 103 **Fall off / run away, etc.** Unit 109

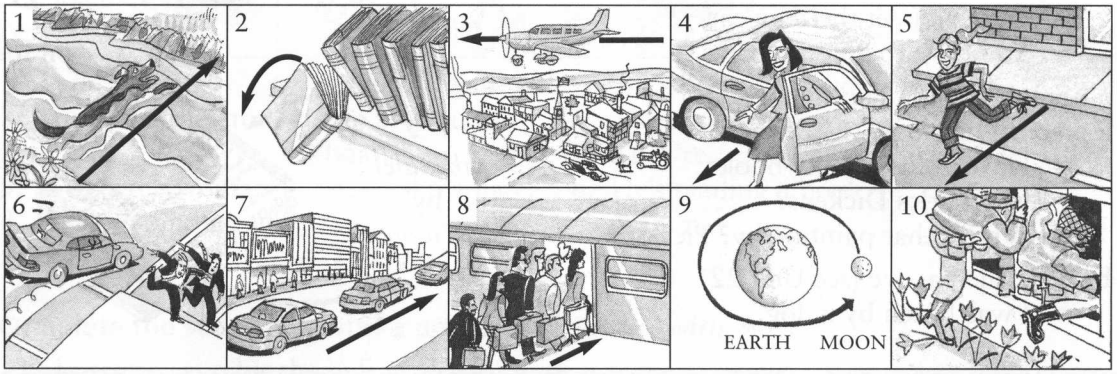
Exercises

105.1 Somebody asks you for directions. Look at the pictures and write sentences beginning *Go . . . .*





105.2 Look at the pictures. Complete the sentences with a preposition.



1. The dog swam *across* the river.
2. A book fell _____ the shelf.
3. A plane flew _____ the town.
4. A woman got _____ the car.
5. A girl ran _____ the street.
6. Suddenly a car came _____ the corner.
7. They all drove _____ the town.
8. They got _____ the train.
9. The moon travels _____ the earth.
10. They got _____ the house _____ a window.

105.3 Write a preposition (*over* / *from* / *out of*, etc.).

1. I looked _____ the window and watched the people in the street.
2. My house is very near here. It's just _____ the corner.
3. Do you know how to put film _____ this camera?
4. How far is it _____ here _____ the airport?
5. We walked _____ the museum for an hour and saw a lot of beautiful pictures.
6. You can put your coat _____ the back of the chair.
7. In tennis, you have to hit the ball _____ the net.
8. Silvia took a key _____ her bag and opened the door.

UNIT 106

On, at, by, with, and *about*

A

on

on vacation
on television
on the radio
on the phone
on fire
on time (= not late)

- Tracy isn't at work this week. She's **on vacation.**
- We watched the news **on television.**
- We listened to the news **on the radio.**
- I spoke to Carol **on the phone** last night.
- The house is **on fire!** Call the fire department.
- "Was the train late?" "No, it was **on time.**"

B

at (the age of) **21 / at 50 kilometers an hour / at 100 degrees,** etc.

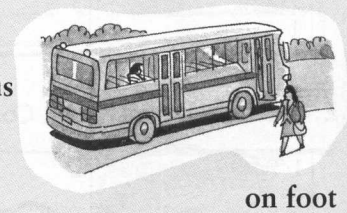
- Lisa got married **at 21.** (*or* . . . **at the age of 21**)
- A car uses more gas **at 70 miles an hour** than **at 55.**
- Water boils **at 100 degrees Celsius.**

C

by car / by bus / by plane (*or* **by air**) **/ by boat / by bicycle,** etc.

- Do you like traveling **by train?**
- Can you get there **by bike?**

by bus



But: **on foot**

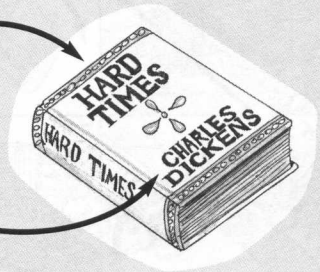
- You can't get there by car. You have to go **on foot.**

on foot

a book **by** . . . / a painting **by** . . . / a piece of music **by** . . . , etc.

- Have you read any books **by Charles Dickens?**
- **Who** is that painting **by?** Picasso?

(the title) **by** *(the writer)*



by after the passive (see Unit 22)

- I was bitten **by a dog.**

D

with/without

- Did you stay at a hotel or **with friends?**
- Wait for me. Please don't go **without me.**
- Do you like your coffee **with** or **without milk?**
- I cut the paper **with a pair of scissors.**

a man **with** a beard

a woman **with** glasses

a man / a woman / a boy / a girl **with** a beard / glasses / a mustache / a pair of jeans / a big nose / a nice smile / a sense of humor / a good memory / a lot of money / a lot of energy / a lot of patience / a lot of experience, etc.

- Do you know that man **with the beard?**
- I'd like to have a house **with a big yard.**

E

talk/speak/think/hear/know about . . .

- Some people **talk about their work** all the time.
- I don't **know** much **about cars.**

a book / a question / a program (etc.) **about . . .**

- Did you see **the program about computers** on TV last night?

By Units 22, 64, 104 **At/on** Units 98, 101–103 **Preposition + *-ing*** Unit 107

Exercises

106.1 Complete the sentences. Use *on* + one of these:

the phone ~~the radio~~ TV time vacation

1. We listened to the news *on the radio* .
2. Please don't be late. Try to be here _____ .
3. I won't be here next week. I'm going _____ .
4. "Did you see Nicole?" "No, but I talked to her _____ ."
5. "What's _____ tonight?" "There's a movie at 9 o'clock."

106.2 Look at the pictures. Complete the sentences with a preposition (*at/by,* etc.).

1. I cut the paper *with* a pair of scissors.
2. Last year, they took a trip around the world _____ boat.
3. Who's the woman _____ short hair?
4. They're talking _____ the weather.
5. That car is _____ fire!
6. She's listening to some music _____ Mozart.
7. They're _____ vacation.
8. He's reading a book _____ grammar _____ Vera P. Bull.

106.3 Complete the sentences with a preposition (*at/by/with,* etc.).

1. In tennis, you hit the ball _____ a racket.
2. It's cold today. Don't go out _____ a coat.
3. *Hamlet, Othello,* and *Macbeth* are plays _____ William Shakespeare.
4. Do you know anything _____ computers?
5. My grandmother died _____ the age of 98.
6. How long does it take to go from New York to Los Angeles _____ plane?
7. I didn't go to the football game, but I watched it _____ television.
8. My house is the one _____ the red door.
9. These trains are very fast. They can travel _____ 200 miles an hour.
10. You can't get there _____ car. There's no road.
11. Can you give me some information _____ hotels in this town?
12. I was arrested _____ two policemen and taken to the police station.
13. The buses here are very good. They're almost always _____ time.
14. What would you like to drink _____ your meal?
15. We traveled from Paris to Moscow _____ train.
16. The museum has some paintings _____ Rembrandt.

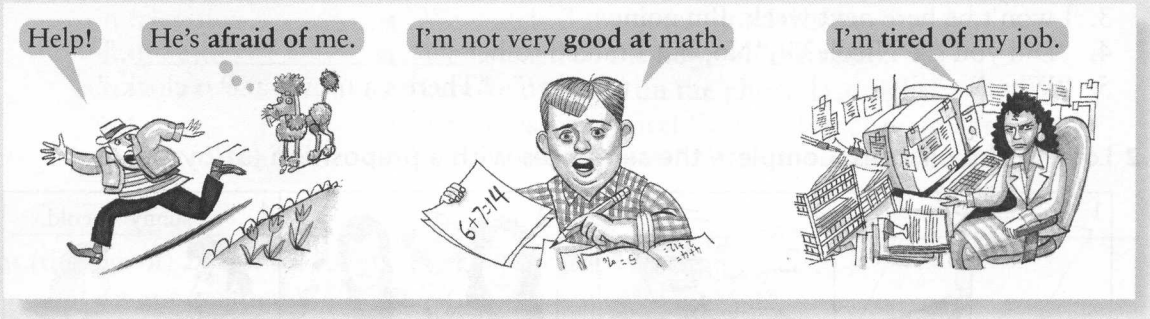
Additional Exercise 33 (page 258)

UNIT 107

Afraid of, good at, etc. (Adjective + Preposition)
At -ing, with -ing, etc. (Preposition + *-ing*)

A

afraid of / good at, etc. (*adjective + preposition*)



afraid of . . .	■ Are you **afraid of** dogs?
angry/mad at somebody **angry/mad about** something	■ Why are you **mad at** me? What did I do? ■ Are you **angry about** last night? (= something that happened last night)
different from . . . / **different than . . .**	■ Lynn is very **different from** her sister. *or* Lynn is very **different than** her sister.
full of . . .	■ The room was **full of** people.
good at . . . **bad at . . .**	■ Are you **good at** math? ■ Tina is very **bad at** writing letters.
interested in . . .	■ I'm not **interested in** sports.
married to . . .	■ Sue is **married to** a dentist. (= her husband is a dentist)
nice/kind of somebody **to . . .** **nice/kind to** somebody	■ It was **kind of** you to help us. Thank you very much. ■ David is very friendly. He's always very **nice to** me.
sorry about something **sorry for** somebody	■ I'm **sorry about** your accident. Was anyone hurt? ■ I feel **sorry for** them. They work hard, but they never have enough money.
tired of . . .	■ I'm **tired of** my job. I need a change.

B

Preposition + **-ing**

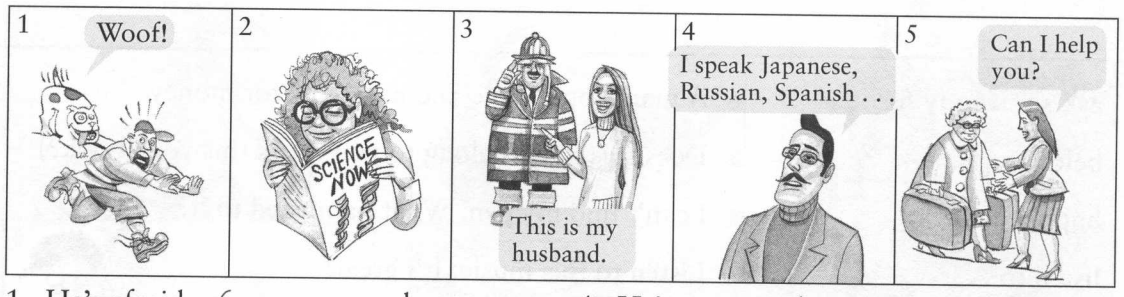
After a preposition (**at/with/for,** etc.), a verb ends in **-ing.**

I'm not very good **at**	**telling**	stories.
Are you tired **of**	**doing**	the same thing every day?
Thank you **for**	**helping**	me.
Mark is thinking **of**	**buying**	a new car.
Tom left **without**	**saying**	goodbye. (= he didn't say goodbye)
After	**doing**	the housework, they went out.

Before/after -ing **Unit 100** **Verb + Preposition** **Unit 108**

Exercises

107.1 Look at the pictures.Complete the sentences with a preposition (*of, in,* etc.).



1. He's afraid *of* _____ dogs.
2. She's interested _____ science.
3. She's married _____ a firefighter.
4. He's very good _____ languages.
5. "Can I help you?" "Thanks, that's very nice _____ you."

107.2 Write the correct preposition (*of/for/about,* etc.).

1. I'm not interested *in* _____ sports.
2. I'm not very good _____ sports.
3. I like Sarah. She's always very nice _____ me.
4. I'm sorry _____ your broken window. It was an accident.
5. He's very brave. He isn't afraid _____ anything.
6. It was very nice _____ Julia to let us stay in her apartment.
7. Life today is very different _____ life 50 years ago.
8. Are you interested _____ politics?
9. I feel sorry _____ her, but I can't help her.
10. Chris was angry _____ what happened.
11. These boxes are very heavy. They're full _____ books.
12. What's wrong? Are you mad _____ me?

107.3 Complete the sentences.

1. I'm not very *good at telling* _____ stories. (good / tell)
2. I wanted to go to the movies, but Paula wasn't _____ . (interested / go)
3. Sue isn't very _____ up in the morning. (good / get)
4. Let's go! I'm _____ . (tired / wait)
5. Sorry I'm late! _____ (thank you / wait)

107.4 Complete the sentences. Use *without -ing.*

1. (Tom left / he didn't say goodbye) *Tom left without saying goodbye.*
2. (Sue walked past me / she didn't speak) Sue walked _____ .
3. (don't do anything / ask me first) Don't _____ .
4. (I went out / I didn't lock the door) I _____ .

107.5 Write sentences about yourself. Use the words in parentheses ( ).

1. (interested) *I'm interested in sports.*
2. (afraid) I'm _____ .
3. (not very good) I'm not _____ .
4. (not interested) _____
5. (tired) _____

UNIT 108

Listen to . . . , look at . . . , etc. (Verb + Preposition)

A

ask somebody **for** . . .
- A man stopped me and **asked me for** money.

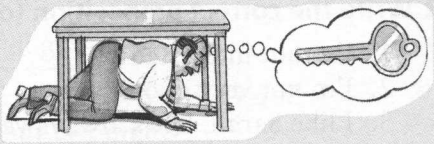
belong to . . .
- Does this book **belong to** you? (= Is this your book?)

happen to . . .
- I can't find my pen. What **happened to** it?

listen to . . .
- **Listen to** this music. It's great!

look at . . .
- She's **looking at** her watch.
- **Look at** these flowers! They're beautiful.
- Why are you **looking at** me like that?

look for . . .
- He lost his key.
  He's **looking for** it.
- I'm **looking for** Sarah.
  Have you seen her?



speak/talk to somebody **about** . . .
- Did you **talk to** Paul **about** the problem?
- *(on the phone)* Can I **speak to** Chris, please?

take care of . . .
- When Pat is at work, a friend of hers **takes care of** her children.
- Don't lose this book. **Take care of** it.

thank somebody **for** . . .
- **Thank** you very much **for** your help.

think about . . . *or* **think of** . . .
- He never **thinks about** (*or* **of**) other people.
- Mark is **thinking of** (*or* **about**) buying a new car.

wait for . . .
- **Wait for** me! I'm almost ready.

B

write and **call**

write (**to**) somebody
- I never get letters. Nobody **writes to** me. (*or* Nobody **writes** me.)

call somebody *(no preposition)*
- I have to **call** my parents. (*not* call to . . .)

C

depend

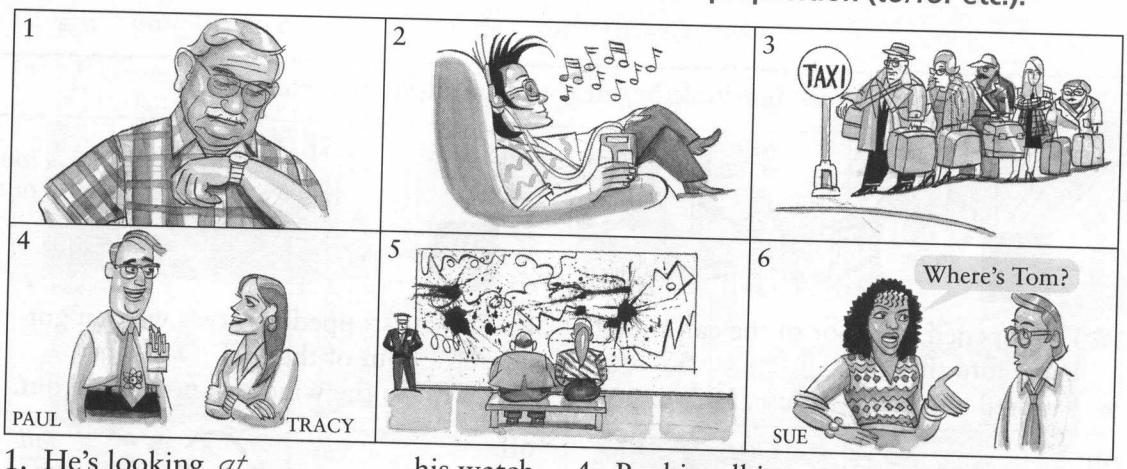
We say **depend on . . . :**
- *A:* Do you like to eat in restaurants?
  B: Sometimes. It **depends on** the restaurant. (*not* it depends of)

You can say **it depends what/where/how,** etc., with or without **on.**
- *A:* Do you want to go out with us?
  B: It **depends where** you're going. (*or* It **depends on where** you're going.)

Wait **Unit 55** **Preposition + -ing** **Unit 107**

Exercises

108.1 Look at the pictures. Complete the sentences with a preposition (*to/for* etc.).



1. He's looking *at* _____ his watch.
2. He's listening _____ the radio.
3. They're waiting _____ a taxi.
4. Paul is talking _____ Tracy.
5. They're looking _____ a picture.
6. Sue is looking _____ Tom.

108.2 Complete the sentences with a preposition (*to/for/about,* etc.) if necessary.

1. Thank you very much *for* _____ your help.
2. This isn't my umbrella. It belongs _____ a friend of mine.
3. Who's going to take care _____ your dog while you're out of town?
4. *(on the phone)* Can I speak _____ Mr. Davis, please?
5. *(on the phone)* Thank you _____ calling. Goodbye.
6. Excuse me, I'm looking _____ Hill Street. Can you tell me where it is?
7. We're thinking _____ going to Australia next year.
8. We asked the waiter _____ tea, but he brought us coffee.
9. "Do you like to read books?" "It depends _____ the book."
10. John was talking, but nobody was listening _____ what he was saying.
11. I want to take your picture. Please look _____ the camera and smile.
12. We waited _____ Karen until 2 o'clock, but she didn't come.
13. What happened _____ Mary last night? Why didn't she come to the party?
14. Don't forget to call _____ your mother tonight.
15. He's alone all day. He never talks _____ anybody.
16. "How much does it cost to stay at this hotel?" "It depends _____ the room."
17. Kathy is thinking _____ changing jobs.
18. I looked _____ the newspaper, but I didn't read it carefully.
19. When you're sick, you need somebody to take care _____ you.
20. Barry is looking _____ a job. He wants to work in a hotel.

108.3 Answer these questions with ***It depends . . . .***

1. Do you want to go out with us? *It depends where you're going.*
2. Do you like to eat in restaurants? *It depends on the restaurant.*
3. Do you enjoy watching TV? It depends _____.
4. Can you do something for me? It _____.
5. Are you leaving town this weekend? _____
6. Can you lend me some money? _____

UNIT 109 Go in, fall off, run away, etc. (Two-Word Verbs 1)

A *two-word verb* is a verb (**go/look/be**, etc.) + **in/out/up/down**, etc.

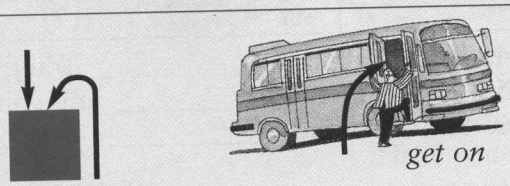
in

- Erin opened the door of the car and **got in.** (= **into** the car)
- I waited outside the house. I didn't **go in.**

out

- The car stopped and two women **got out.** (= **out of** the car)
- I went to the window and **looked out.**

on

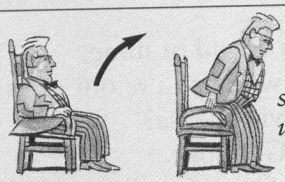


- The bus came, and I **got on.**

off

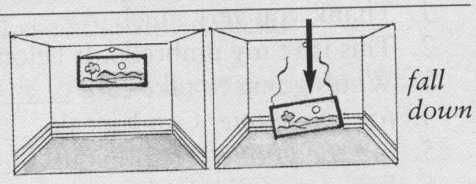
- Be careful! Don't **fall off.**

up



- He **stood up** and left the room.
- I usually **get up** early. (= get out of bed)
- We **looked up** at the stars.

down



- Would you like to **sit down?**
- The picture **fell down.**
- **Lie down** on the floor.

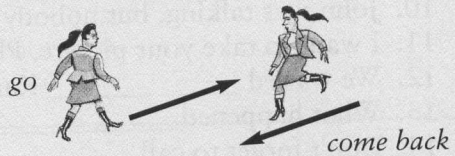
away or **off**

- The thief **ran away.** (*or* . . . **ran off**)
- Erin got into the car and **drove away.** (*or* . . . **drove off**)

be/go away (= in/to another place)

- Erin has **gone away** for a few days.

back

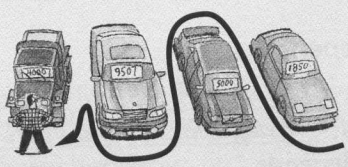


- We went out for dinner and then **went back** to our hotel.
- Go away and don't **come back!**

be back

- Erin is away. She'll **be back** on Monday.

around

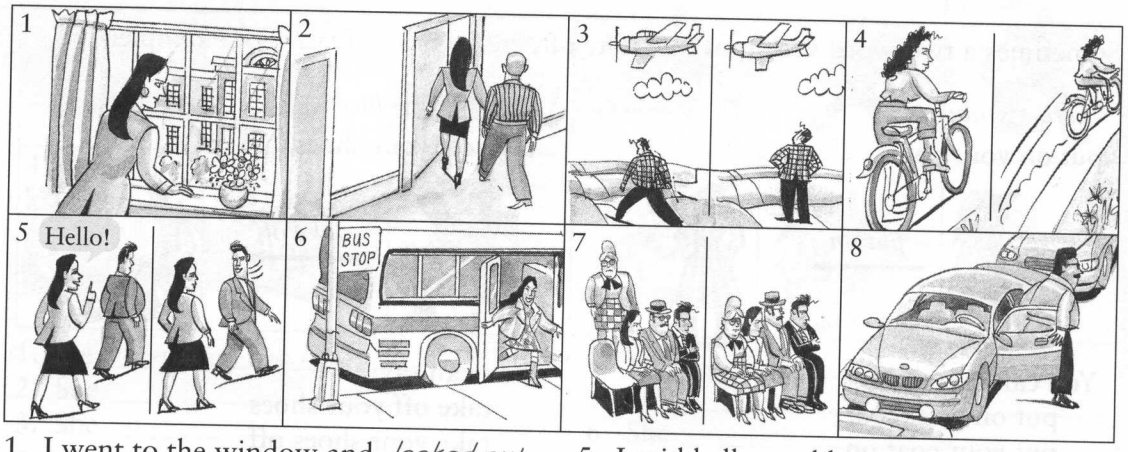


- I'm not sure what kind of car I want. I want to look **around** first.
- Somebody shouted my name, so I **turned around.**
- We went for a long walk. After six miles we **turned around** and went back.

Exercises

109.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use the verbs + *in/out/up*, etc.

got got looked ~~looked~~ rode sat turned went



1. I went to the window and *looked out* .
2. The door was open, so we _____ .
3. He heard a plane, so he _____ .
4. She got on her bike and _____ .
5. I said hello, and he _____ .
6. The bus stopped, and she _____ .
7. The seat was free, so she _____ .
8. A car stopped, and a man _____ .

109.2 Complete the sentences. Use *out/away/back*, etc.

1. "What happened to the picture on the wall?" "It fell *down* ."
2. Please don't walk _____ . Listen to me!
3. She heard a noise in back of her, so she turned _____ .
4. I'm going _____ now to do some shopping. I'll be _____ at 5 o'clock.
5. I'm really tired. I'm going to lie _____ on the sofa for a few minutes.
6. The Hans don't know the city very well. They need to look _____ before buying a house.
7. Jim is from Utah. He lives in Boston now, but he wants to go _____ to Utah.
8. We don't have a key to the house, so we can't get _____ .
9. I was very tired this morning. I couldn't get _____ .
10. "When are you going _____ ?" "On the fifth. I'm coming _____ on the tenth."

109.3 Complete the sentences. Choose from the boxes. If necessary, put the verb in the correct form. All these verbs (*wake up*, etc.) are in Appendix 6.

break	give	slow	take	work
get	hurry	speak	~~wake~~	

+

along	off	up
down	out	

1. I went to sleep at 10 o'clock and *woke up* at nine o'clock the next morning.
2. The train _____ and finally stopped.
3. I tried to find a job, but I _____ . It was impossible.
4. I like flying, but I'm always nervous when the plane _____ .
5. It's difficult to hear you. Can you _____ a little?
6. This car isn't very good. It has _____ many times.
7. Ben has gained weight because he doesn't _____ any more.
8. _____ , we have to leave. The movie starts in ten minutes.
9. Tony doesn't see his sister much. They don't _____ very well.

UNIT 110

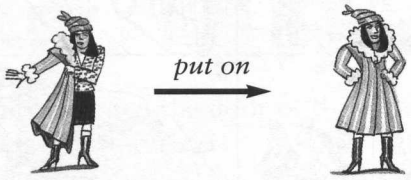
Put on your shoes and *put your shoes on* (Two-Word Verbs 2)

A

Sometimes a two-word verb (**put on / take off,** etc.) has an *object*. For example:

verb *object*

put on your coat



You can say:
put on your coat
put your coat **on**

verb *object*

take off your shoes

You can say:
take off your shoes
take your shoes **off**

But **it/them** *(pronouns)* always go before **on/off,** etc.
put **it on** (*not* put on it)
take **them off** (*not* take off them)

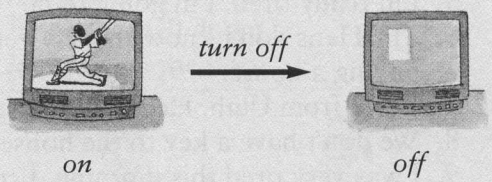
- It was cold, so I **put on** my coat. *or* . . . I **put** my coat **on.**
- Here's your coat. **Put it on.**
- I'm going to **take off** my shoes. *or* . . . **take** my shoes **off.**
- Your shoes are dirty. **Take them off.**

B

More two-word verbs + object

turn on / turn off (lights, machines, faucets, etc.)

- It was dark, so I **turned on** the light. *or* . . . I **turned** the light **on.**
- I don't want to watch this program. You can **turn it off.**

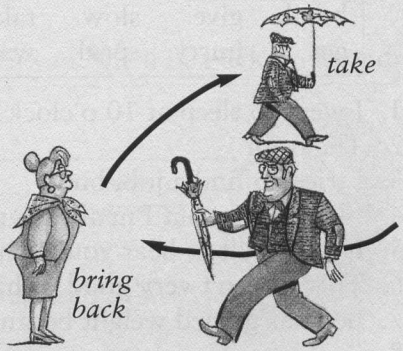


pick up / put down

- Those are my keys on the floor. Can you **pick them up** for me?
- I stopped reading and **put** my book **down.** *or* . . . **put down** my book.

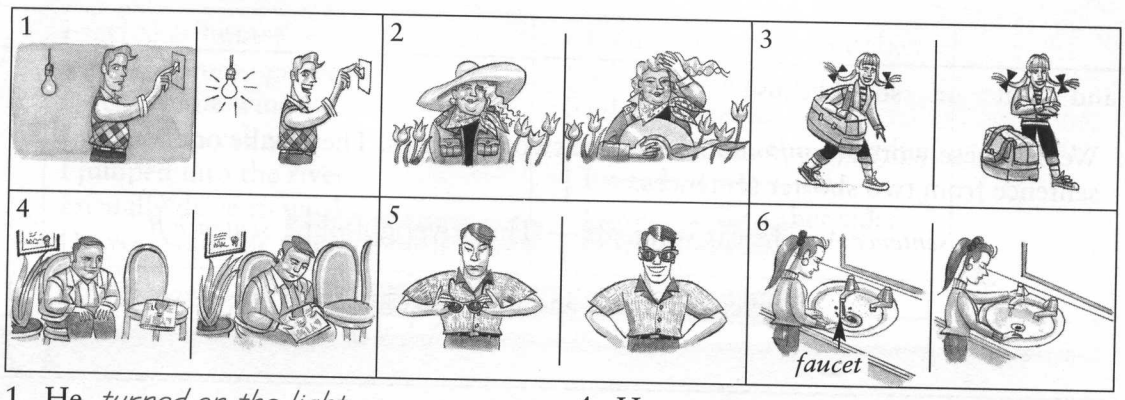
bring back / take back / give back / put back

- You can take my umbrella but please **bring it back.**
- I **took** my new sweater **back** to the store. It was too small.
- I have Diane's keys. I have to **give them back** to her.
- I read the letter and then **put it back** in the envelope.



Exercises

110.1 Look at the pictures. What did these people do?



1. He *turned on the light* .
2. She _____ .
3. She _____ .
4. He _____ .
5. He _____ .
6. She _____ .

110.2 You can write these sentences in three different ways. Complete the table.

1. I turned on the TV.	*I turned the TV on.*	*I turned it on.*
2. He put on his jacket.	He _____ .	He _____ .
3. I _____ .	I gave the keys back.	
4. She took off her hat.		
5. Put down your pens.		
6. _____	I turned the lights off.	

110.3 Complete the sentences. Use one of the verbs in the list + *it/them.*

bring pick take ~~turn~~ turn (+ on/off/up/back)

1. I wanted to watch something on television, so I *turned it on* .
2. My new lamp doesn't work. I'm going to _____ to the store.
3. Your gloves were on the floor, so I _____ and put them on the table.
4. When I finished working on the computer, I _____ .
5. Thank you for lending me these books. I won't forget to _____ .

110.4 Complete the sentences. Choose from the boxes. These verbs are in Appendix 7.

your cigarette some shoes	ten houses a glass	*or*	me it	them	+	around away	down on	out over	up

1. They tore *ten houses down* OR *down ten houses* to build the new road.
2. That music is very loud. Can you turn *it down* ?
3. I knocked _____ and broke it.
4. If you don't know a word, you can look _____ in a dictionary.
5. I want to keep these magazines. Please don't throw _____ .
6. Somebody gave me a form and told me to fill _____ .
7. I tried _____ at the store, but I didn't buy them.
8. I visited the school. One of the teachers showed _____ .
9. Mike loves skiing, but he had to give _____ when he hurt his leg.
10. You're not allowed to smoke here. Please put _____ .

UNIT 111

And, but, or, so, and *because*

A

and but or so because

We use these words *(conjunctions)* to join two sentences. They make one longer sentence from two shorter sentences:

sentence A The car stopped. — The driver got out. *sentence B*

The car stopped, **and** the driver got out.

B

and/but/or

sentence A		*sentence B*
We stayed at home	**and**	(we)* watched television.
My sister is married	**and**	(she)* lives in London.
He doesn't like her,	**and**	she doesn't like him.
I bought a newspaper,	**but**	I didn't read it.
It's a nice house,	**but**	it hasn't got a garage.
Do you want to go out,	**or**	are you too tired?

*We and **she** are not necessary here.

In lists, we use commas (,). We use **and** between the last two things.

- I got home, had something to eat, sat down to watch TV, **and** fell asleep.
- Amy is at work, Sue went shopping, **and** Chris is playing football.

C

so (the result of something)

sentence A		*sentence B*
It was very hot,	**so**	we opened the window.
They had some free time,	**so**	they went for a drive.
I don't like to travel,	**so**	I haven't been to many places.

D

because (the reason for something)

sentence A		*sentence B*
We opened the window	**because**	it was very hot.
They didn't go for a drive	**because**	they didn't have time.
Lisa is hungry	**because**	she didn't have breakfast.

Because is also possible at the beginning. We use a comma.

- **Because they didn't have time,** they didn't go for a drive.

E

In these examples there is more than one conjunction.

- It was late **and** I was tired, **so** I went to bed.
- I love New York, **but** I wouldn't like to live there **because** it's too big.

***When/while/before,* etc. Unit 112**

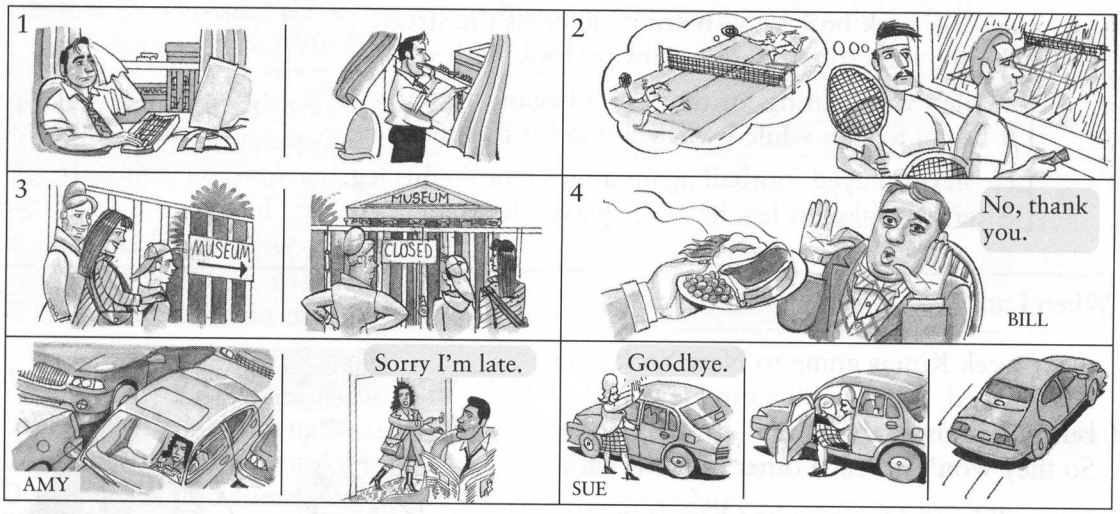
Exercises

111.1 Write sentences. Choose from the boxes and use *and/but/or.*

~~I stayed at home.~~	I didn't have your number.
~~I bought a newspaper.~~	Should I wait here?
I went to the window.	~~I didn't read it.~~
I wanted to call you.	I took the bus this morning.
I jumped into the river.	~~I watched television.~~
I usually drive to work.	I swam to the other side.
Do you want me to come with you?	I looked out.

1. *I stayed at home and watched television.*
2. *I bought a newspaper, but I didn't read it.*
3. I _____.
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____

111.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use *and/but/so/because.*



1. It was very hot, *so he opened the window*.
2. They didn't play tennis _____.
3. They went to the museum, _____.
4. Bill wasn't hungry, _____.
5. Amy was late _____.
6. Sue said _____.

111.3 Write sentences about what you did yesterday. Use the words in parentheses ( ).

1. (and) *Last night I stayed home and studied.*
2. (because) *I went to bed very early because I was tired.*
3. (but) _____
4. (and) _____
5. (so) _____
6. (because) _____

UNIT 112

When . . .

A

When I went out, it was raining.

This sentence has two parts:

when I went out + **it was raining**

The **when** part can be first or second.

- { **When I went out,** it was raining.
  { It was raining **when I went out.**

We use a comma (,) if the **when** part is first.

- { **When** you're tired, don't drive.
  { Don't drive **when** you're tired.
- { Joy was very happy **when** she passed the exam.
  { **When** Joy passed the exam, she was very happy.

We do the same in sentences with **before/while/after.**

- { Always look both ways **before** you cross the street.
  { **Before** you cross the street, always look both ways.
- { **While** I was waiting for the bus, it began to rain.
  { It began to rain **while** I was waiting for the bus.
- { He never played football again **after** he broke his leg.
  { **After** he broke his leg, he never played football again.

B

When I am . . . / When I go . . . , etc.

Next week Kim is going to New York. She has a friend, Lily, who lives in New York, but Lily is also going away – to Mexico. So they won't see each other in New York.

Lily **will be** in Mexico **when** Kim **is** in New York.

The time is *future* (next week), but we say: . . . when Kim **is** in New York. (*not* when Kim will be)

LILY KIM

We use the *present* (I **am** / I **go,** etc.) with a *future meaning* after **when.**

- **When I get** home tonight, I'm going to take a shower. (*not* When I will get home)
- I can't talk now. I'll talk to you later **when I have** more time.

We do the same after **before/while/after/until.**

- Please close the windows **before** you **go** out. (*not* before you will go)
- Julia is going to stay in our apartment **while** we **are** away. (*not* while we will be)
- I'll wait here **until** you **come** back. (*not* until you will come back)

Until **Unit 99** ***Before/while/after*** **Unit 100** ***If* and *when*** **Unit 113**

Exercises

112.1 Write sentences beginning with *when*. Choose from the boxes.

When +	+
~~I went out~~	I turned off the TV
I'm tired	I always go to the same place
I called her	there were no rooms
I go on vacation	~~it was raining~~
the program was over	there was no answer
I got to the hotel	I like to watch TV

1. *When I went out, it was raining.*
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____

112.2 Complete the sentences. Choose from the box.

somebody broke into the house	before they came here	when they heard the news
~~before they crossed the street~~	while they were away	they didn't believe me
they went to live in New Zealand		

1. They looked both ways *before they crossed the street*.
2. They were very surprised _____.
3. After they got married, _____.
4. The letter arrived _____.
5. Where did they live _____?
6. While they were asleep, _____.
7. When I told them the news, _____.

112.3 Which is right? Choose the correct form.

1. ~~I stay~~ / I'll stay here until you come / ~~you'll come~~ back. (*I'll stay* and *you come* are right.)
2. I'm going to bed when I finish / I'll finish my work.
3. We should do something before it's / it will be too late.
4. Julia is moving soon. I'm / I'll be very sad when she leaves / she'll leave.
5. Don't go out yet. Wait until the rain stops / will stop.
6. We come / We'll come and visit you when we're / we'll be in Toronto again.
7. When I come / I'll come to see you tomorrow, I bring / I'll bring your CDs.
8. I'm going to Quebec next week. I hope to see Sam while I'm / I'll be there.
9. "I need your address." "OK, I give / I'll give it to you before I go / I'll go."

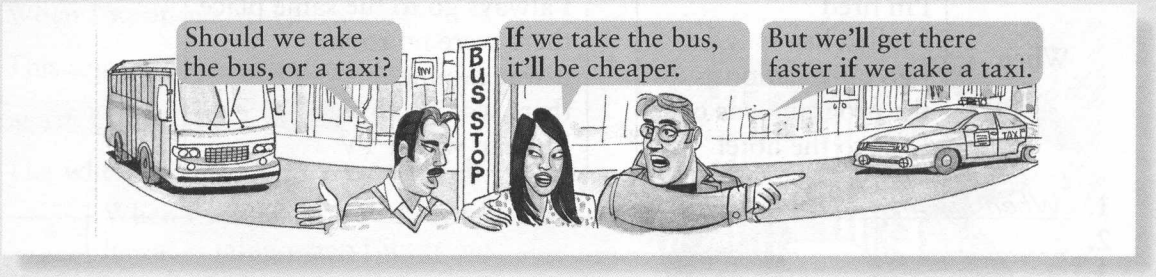
112.4 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences.

1. Can you close the window before *you go out*?
2. What are you going to do when _____?
3. When I have more time, _____.
4. I'll wait for you while _____.
5. When I start my new job, _____.
6. Will you be here when _____?

UNIT 113

If we go . . . , If you see . . . , etc.

A



If can be at the beginning of a sentence or in the middle.

If at the beginning

If we take the bus,	it will be cheaper.
If you don't hurry,	you'll miss the train.
If you're hungry,	have something to eat.
If the phone rings,	can you answer it, please?

if in the middle

It will be cheaper	if we take the bus.
You'll miss the train	if you don't hurry.
I'm going to the concert	if I can get a ticket.
Is it OK	if I use your phone?

In conversation, we often use the **if** part of the sentence alone.

- "Are you going to the concert?" "Yes, **if I can get a ticket.**"

B

if you see Amy tomorrow, etc.

After **if**, we use the present (*not* will). We say **if** you **see . . .** (*not* if you will see).

- **If** you **see** Amy tomorrow, can you ask her to call me?
- **If I'm** late tonight, don't wait for me. (*not* if I will be)
- What should we do **if** it **rains?** (*not* if it will rain)
- **If** I **don't feel** well tomorrow, I'll stay home.

C

if and **when**

if I go out = it is possible that I will go out, but I'm not sure

- *A:* Are you going out later?
  B: Maybe. **If I go out,** I'll close the windows.

when I go out = I'm going out (for sure)

- *A:* Are you going out later?
  B: Yes, I am. **When I go out,** I'll close the windows.
- **When** I get home tonight, I'm going to take a shower.
- **If** I'm late tomorrow, don't wait for me. (*not* When I'm late)
- We're going to play tennis **if** it doesn't rain. (*not* when it doesn't rain)

When **Unit 112** ***If I had / if we went . . .*** **, etc. Unit 114**

Exercises

113.1 Write sentences beginning with *If*. Choose from the boxes.

If +	+
~~you don't hurry~~	we can have lunch now
you pass the driving test	you can have them
you fail the driving test	I can lend you some
you don't want this magazine	you'll get your license
you want those pictures	~~you'll be late~~
you're busy now	I'll throw it away
you're hungry	we can talk later
you need money	you can take it again

1. *If you don't hurry, you'll be late.*
2. If you pass _____.
3. If _____.
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____

113.2 Which is right?

1. If I'm / ~~I'll be~~ late tonight, don't wait for me. (*I'm* is right.)
2. Will you write to me if I give / I'll give you my address?
3. If there is /will be a fire, the alarm will ring.
4. If I don't see you tomorrow morning, I call / I'll call you in the afternoon.
5. I'm / I'll be surprised if Mark and Julia get / will get married.
6. Do you go / Will you go to the party if they invite / they'll invite you?

113.3 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences.

1. I'm going to the concert if *I can get a ticket*.
2. If you don't hurry *you'll miss the train*.
3. I don't want to go swimming if _____.
4. If you go to bed early tonight, _____.
5. Turn the television off if _____.
6. Lisa won't pass her driving test if _____.
7. If I have time tomorrow, _____.
8. We can go to the beach tomorrow if _____.

113.4 Write *if* or *when*.

1. *If* I'm late tomorrow, don't wait for me.
2. I'm going shopping now. _____ I come back, we can have lunch.
3. I'm thinking of going to see Tim. _____ I go, will you come with me?
4. _____ you don't want to go out tonight, we can stay home.
5. Do you mind _____ I close the window?
6. John is still in high school. _____ he finishes, he wants to go to college.
7. Do you want to go on a picnic tomorrow _____ the weather is good?
8. We're going to Oslo tomorrow. We're going to look for a hotel _____ we get there. I don't know what we'll do _____ we don't find a room.

UNIT 114

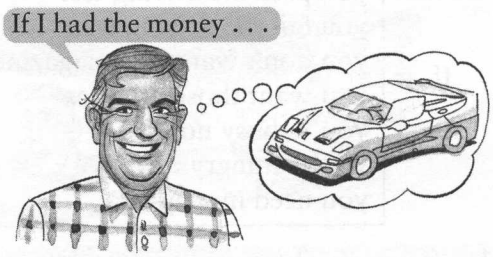
If I had . . . , if we went . . . , etc.

A

Dan likes fast cars, but he doesn't have one. He doesn't have enough money.

If he **had** the money, he **would buy** a fast car.

Usually **had** is *past*, but in this sentence **had** is *not* past. **If** he **had** the money = if he had the money *now* (but he doesn't have it).



If	I you it they, etc.	**had/knew/went** (etc.) . . . , **didn't have/know/go** (etc.) . . . , **could have/know/go** (etc.) . . . , **was/were** . . . ,	I you it they, etc.	**would(n't)** **could(n't)**	buy . . . be . . . have . . . go . . .

I'd / she**'d** / they**'d,** etc. = I **would** / she **would** / they **would,** etc.

- I don't know the answer. **If** I **knew** the answer, **I'd tell** you.
- It's raining, so we're not going out. **We'd get** wet **if** we **went** out.
- Ellie lives in a city. She **wouldn't be** happy **if** she **lived** in the country.
- **If** you **didn't have** a job, what **would** you **do?** (but you have a job)
- I'm sorry I can't help you. **I'd help** you **if** I **could.** (but I can't)
- **If** we **had** a car, we **could travel** more. (but we don't have a car)

B

if I were/was . . .

You can say **if** (I/he/she/it) **were** *or* **was** . . . .

- It's cold. **If** I **were** you, **I'd put** a coat on. (*or* If I **was** you . . .)
- It's not a good restaurant. I **wouldn't eat** there **if** I **were** you. (*or* . . . if I **was** you)
- **I'd be** happier if the weather **were** (*or* **was**) nicer.

C

Compare:

if I have / if it **is,** etc.

- I want to go and see Judy. **If** I **have** time, I **will go** today. (= maybe I'll have time, so maybe I'll go)
- I like that jacket. **I'll buy** it **if** it **isn't** too expensive. (= maybe it is not too expensive)
- **I'll help** you **if** I **can.** (= maybe I can help)

if I had / if it **was,** etc.

- I want to go and see Judy. **If** I **had** time, I **would go** today. (= I don't have time today, so I won't go)
- I like that jacket, but it's very expensive. **I'd buy** it **if** it **weren't** so expensive. (= it is expensive, so I'm not going to buy it)
- **I'd help** you **if** I **could,** but I can't.

Exercises

114.1 Complete the sentences.

1. I don't know the answer. If I *knew* the answer, I'd tell you.
2. I have a car. I couldn't travel much if I *didn't have* a car.
3. I don't want to go out. If I _____ to go out, I'd go.
4. We don't have a key. If we _____ a key, we could get into the house.
5. I'm not hungry. I would have something to eat if I _____ hungry.
6. Sue enjoys her work. She wouldn't do it if she _____ it.
7. You can't drive. If you _____ drive, I would lend you my car.
8. He speaks too fast. I could understand him better if he _____ more slowly.
9. I have a lot to do today. If I _____ so much to do, we could go out.

114.2 Write the verb in the correct form.

1. If *he had* the money, he would buy a fast car. (he / have)
2. If I wanted to learn Chinese, _____ to China. (I / go)
3. I haven't told Joy what happened. She'd be angry if _____. (she / know)
4. If _____ a map, I could show you where I live. (we / have)
5. What would you do if _____ a lot of money? (you / win)
6. It's not a very good hotel. _____ there if I were you. (I / not / stay)
7. If _____ closer to Miami, we would go there more often. (we / live)
8. I'm sorry you have to go. _____ nice if you had more time. (it / be)
9. I'm not going to take the job. I'd take it if _____ better. (the salary / be)
10. I don't understand cars. If my car broke down, _____ what to do. (I / not / know)
11. If you could change one thing in the world, what _____? (you / change)

114.3 Complete the sentences. Choose from the box and put the verb in the correct form.

we (have) a bigger house	~~it (be) a little cheaper~~	I (watch) it
we (buy) a bigger house	every day (be) the same	I (be) bored
we (have) some pictures on the wall	the air (be) cleaner	

1. I'd buy that jacket if *it were a little cheaper*.
2. If there was a good film on TV tonight, _____.
3. This room would be nicer if _____.
4. If there weren't so much traffic, _____.
5. Life would be boring if _____.
6. If I had nothing to do, _____.
7. We could invite all our friends to stay if _____.
8. If we had more money, _____.

114.4 Complete the sentences. Use your own ideas.

1. I'd go to the dentist if *I had a toothache*.
2. If I could go anywhere in the world, _____.
3. I wouldn't be very happy if _____.
4. I'd buy a house if _____.
5. If I saw an accident in the street, _____.
6. The world would be a better place if _____.

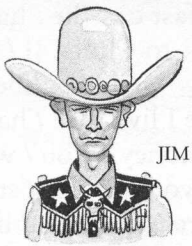
UNIT 115

A person who . . . and *a thing that/which . . .* (Relative Clauses 1)

A

I met a woman. **She** can speak six languages. *2 sentences*

I met a woman **who** can speak six languages. *1 sentence*



Jim was wearing a hat. **It** was too big for him. *2 sentences*

Jim was wearing a hat **that** was too big for him.
or
Jim was wearing a hat **which** was too big for him. } *1 sentence*

B

Who is for people (not things).

A thief is **a person**	**who** steals things.	
Do you know **anybody**	**who** can play the piano?	
The man	**who** called	didn't give his name.
The people	**who** work in the office	are very friendly.

C

That is for things or people.

An airplane is **a machine**	**that** flies.	
Amy lives in **a house**	**that** is 100 years old.	
The people	**that** work in the office	are very friendly.

You can use **that** for people, but **who** is more usual.

D

Which is for things (not people).

An airplane is **a machine**	**which** flies. (*not* a machine who . . .)
Amy lives in **a house**	**which** is 100 years old.

Do not use **which** for people.

- Do you know **the woman who** sang at the party? (*not* the woman which . . .)

***Who* and *which* in Questions** Units 46, 48 ***The people we met* (Relative Clauses 2)** Unit 116

Exercises

115.1 Choose from the boxes and write sentences: ***A . . . is a person who . . . .*** Use a dictionary if necessary.

~~a thief~~	a dentist
a butcher	a fool
a musician	a genius
a patient	a liar

doesn't tell the truth	is seeing a doctor
takes care of your teeth	~~steals things~~
is very intelligent	does stupid things
plays music	sells meat

1. *A thief is a person who steals things.*
2. A butcher is a person _____.
3. A musician _____.
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____

115.2 Make one sentence from two.

1. (A man phoned. He didn't give his name.)
   The man who phoned didn't give his name.
2. (A woman opened the door. She was wearing a yellow dress.)
   The woman _____ a yellow dress.
3. (Some students took the exam. Most of them passed.)
   Most of the students _____.
4. (A police officer stopped our car. He wasn't very friendly.)
   The _____.

115.3 Write *who* or *which*.

1. I met a woman *who* can speak six languages.
2. What's the name of the woman _____ lives next door?
3. What's the name of the river _____ flows through the town?
4. Where is the picture _____ was hanging on the wall?
5. Do you know anybody _____ wants to buy a car?
6. You always ask questions _____ are difficult to answer.
7. I have a friend _____ is very good at repairing cars.
8. I think everybody _____ went to the party enjoyed it a lot.
9. Why does he always wear clothes _____ are too small for him?

115.4 Right or wrong? Correct the mistakes.

1. A thief is a person which steals things. *a person who steals*
2. An airplane is a machine that flies. *OK*
3. A coffee maker is a machine who makes coffee. _____
4. Have you seen the money that was on the table? _____
5. I don't like people which never stop talking. _____
6. I know somebody that can help you. _____
7. I know somebody who works in that store. _____
8. Correct the sentences who are wrong. _____

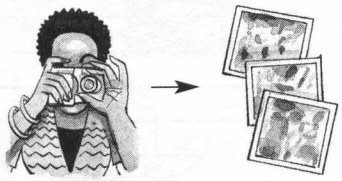
UNIT 116

The people we met and *the hotel you stayed at* (Relative Clauses 2)

A

The man is carrying a bag. } *2 sentences*
It's very heavy. }

The bag (that) he is carrying is very heavy. *1 sentence*



Kim took some pictures. } *2 sentences*
Did you see them? }

Did you see **the pictures (that) Kim took?** *1 sentence*

You can say:

- The bag **that** he is carrying . . . *or* The bag he is carrying . . . (with or without **that**)
- . . . the pictures **that** Kim took? *or* . . . the pictures Kim took?

You do not need **that/who/which** when it is the *object*.

subject	*verb*	*object*	
the man	was carrying	a bag	→ **the bag** (that) **the man was carrying**
Kim	took	some pictures	→ **the pictures** (that) **Kim took**
you	wanted	the book	→ **the book** (that) **you wanted**
we	met	some people	→ **the people** (who) **we met**

- Did you find **the book you wanted?** *or* . . . the book **that** you wanted?
- **The people we met** were very nice. *or* The people **who** we met . . .
- **Everything I said** was true. *or* Everything **that** I said . . .

Note that we say:

- The movie **we saw** was very good. (*not* The movie we saw it was . . .)

B

Sometimes there is a *preposition* (**to/in/at,** etc.) after the verb.

Erica **is talking to** a man. → Do you know **the man Erica is talking to?**
We **stayed at** a hotel. → **The hotel we stayed at** was near the station.
I **told** you **about** some books. → These are **the books I told you about.**
(*not* the books I told you about them)

You can say (a place) **where . . . .**

- **The hotel where** we stayed was near the station. (= The hotel we stayed **at . . .**)

C

You must use **that/who/which** when it is the *subject* (see Unit 115).

- I met a woman **who can speak** six languages. (**who** is the subject)
- Jim was wearing a hat **that was** too big for him. (**that** is the subject)

***A person who . . . , a thing that/which . . .* (Relative Clauses 1) Unit 115**

Exercises

116.1 Make one sentence from two.

1. (Kim took some picturess. Did you see them?)
   Did you see the pictures Kim took?
2. (You gave me a pen. I lost it.)
   I lost the _____ .
3. (Sue is wearing a jacket. I like it.)
   I like the _____ .
4. (I gave you some flowers. Where are they?)
   Where are the _____ ?
5. (He told us a story. I didn't believe it.)
   I _____ .
6. (You bought some oranges. How much were they?)
   How _____ ?

116.2 Make one sentence from two.

1. (I was carrying a bag. It was very heavy.)
   The bag I was carrying was very heavy.
2. (You cooked a meal. It was excellent.)
   The _____ .
3. (I'm wearing shoes. They aren't very comfortable.)
   The shoes _____ .
4. (We invited some people to dinner. They didn't come.)
   The _____ .

116.3 Complete the sentences. Use the information in the box.

I looked at a map	I was sitting on a chair	you were looking for some keys
they live in a house	we were waiting for a bus	Nicole is dancing with a man
~~you stayed at a hotel~~	you spoke to some people	

1. What's the name of *the hotel you stayed at* ?
2. Who are the people _____ ?
3. Did you find the _____ ?
4. The _____ is too small for them.
5. The _____ wasn't very clear.
6. I fell off _____ .
7. _____ was very late.
8. Who is _____ ?

116.4 Read the situations and complete the questions. Use *where*.

1. John stayed at a hotel. You ask him: Did you like *the hotel where you stayed* ?
2. Sue had dinner at a restaurant. You ask her:
   What's the name of the restaurant _____ ?
3. Sarah lives in a town. You ask her:
   Do you like _____ ?
4. Richard works in a factory. You ask him:
   How big is _____ ?

APPENDIX 2: List of Irregular Verbs

See Unit 25.

base form	*simple past*	*past participle*
be	was/were	been
beat	beat	beaten
become	became	become
begin	began	begun
bite	bit	bitten
blow	blew	blown
break	broke	broken
bring	brought	brought
build	built	built
buy	bought	bought
catch	caught	caught
choose	chose	chosen
come	came	come
cost	cost	cost
cut	cut	cut
do	did	done
draw	drew	drawn
drink	drank	drunk
drive	drove	driven
eat	ate	eaten
fall	fell	fallen
feel	felt	felt
fight	fought	fought
find	found	found
fly	flew	flown
forget	forgot	forgotten
get	got	gotten
give	gave	given
go	went	gone
grow	grew	grown
hang	hung	hung
have	had	had
hear	heard	heard
hide	hid	hidden
hit	hit	hit
hold	held	held
hurt	hurt	hurt
keep	kept	kept
know	knew	known
leave	left	left
lend	lent	lent
let	let	let

base form	*simple past*	*past participle*
lie	lay	lain
light	lit	lit
lose	lost	lost
make	made	made
mean	meant	meant
meet	met	met
pay	paid	paid
put	put	put
quit	quit	quit
read	read*	read*
ride	rode	ridden
ring	rang	rung
rise	rose	risen
run	ran	run
say	said	said
see	saw	seen
sell	sold	sold
send	sent	sent
shine	shone	shone
shoot	shot	shot
show	showed	shown/showed
shut	shut	shut
sing	sang	sung
sit	sat	sat
sleep	slept	slept
speak	spoke	spoken
spend	spent	spent
stand	stood	stood
steal	stole	stolen
swim	swam	swum
take	took	taken
teach	taught	taught
tear	tore	torn
tell	told	told
think	thought	thought
throw	threw	thrown
understand	understood	understood
wake	woke	woken
wear	wore	worn
win	won	won
write	wrote	written

**pronounced* [rɛd]

APPENDIX 3: Irregular Verbs in Groups

Simple past and *past participle* are the same.

1.

cost	→ **cost**	let	→ **let**
cut	→ **cut**	put	→ **put**
hit	→ **hit**	quit	→ **quit**
hurt	→ **hurt**	shut	→ **shut**

2.

lend	→ **lent**	lose	→ **lost**
send	→ **sent**	shoot	→ **shot**
spend	→ **spent**		
		light	→ **lit**
build	→ **built**	sit	→ **sat**
keep	→ **kept**	feel	→ **felt**
sleep	→ **slept**	leave	→ **left**
		meet	→ **met**
		dream	→ **dreamed** or **dreamt**
		mean	→ **meant**

3.

bring	→ **brought**
buy	→ **bought**
fight	→ **fought**
think	→ **thought**
catch	→ **caught**
teach	→ **taught**

4.

sell	→ **sold**
tell	→ **told**
find	→ **found**
have	→ **had**
hear	→ **heard**
hold	→ **held**
read	→ **read***
say	→ **said**

**pronounced* [rɛd]

pay	→ **paid**
make	→ **made**
stand	→ **stood**
understand	→ **understood**

Simple past and *past participle* are different.

1.

break	→ **broke**	**broken**
choose	→ **chose**	**chosen**
speak	→ **spoke**	**spoken**
steal	→ **stole**	**stolen**
wake	→ **woke**	**woken**

2.

drive	→ **drove**	**driven**
ride	→ **rode**	**ridden**
rise	→ **rose**	**risen**
write	→ **wrote**	**written**
beat	→ **beat**	**beaten**
bite	→ **bit**	**bitten**
hide	→ **hid**	**hidden**

3.

eat	→ **ate**	**eaten**
fall	→ **fell**	**fallen**
forget	→ **forgot**	**forgotten**
get	→ **got**	**gotten**
give	→ **gave**	**given**
see	→ **saw**	**seen**
take	→ **took**	**taken**

4.

blow	→ **blew**	**blown**
grow	→ **grew**	**grown**
know	→ **knew**	**known**
throw	→ **threw**	**thrown**
fly	→ **flew**	**flown**
draw	→ **drew**	**drawn**
show	→ **showed**	**shown**

5.

begin	→ **began**	**begun**
drink	→ **drank**	**drunk**
swim	→ **swam**	**swum**
ring	→ **rang**	**rung**
sing	→ **sang**	**sung**
run	→ **ran**	**run**

6.

come	→ **came**	**come**
become	→ **became**	**become**

APPENDIX 4: Short Forms (*he's/I'd/don't*, etc.)

4.1 In spoken English, we usually pronounce **I am** as one word. The short form (**I'm**) is a way of writing this.

I am → I'm	■ I'm feeling tired this morning.
it is → it's	■ "Do you like this jacket?" "Yes, it's very nice."
they have → they've	■ "Where are your friends?" "They've gone home."

When we write short forms, we use an *apostrophe* (').
I ~~a~~m → I'm he ~~i~~s → he's you ~~ha~~ve → you've she ~~wi~~ll → she'll

4.2 We use **'m / 's / 're / 've / 'd / 'll** with **I/he/she,** etc.

	I	*he*	*she*	*it*	*we*	*you*	*they*
am → 'm	I'm						
is → 's		he's	she's	it's			
are → 're					we're	you're	they're
have → 've	I've				we've	you've	they've
has → 's		he's	she's	it's			
had → 'd	I'd	he'd	she'd		we'd	you'd	they'd
will → 'll	I'll	he'll	she'll		we'll	you'll	they'll
would → 'd	I'd	he'd	she'd		we'd	you'd	they'd

- I've lost your address.
- We'll probably go out tonight.
- It's 10 o'clock. You're late again.

's = is or **has**
- She's going out tonight. (she's going = she **is** going)
- She's gone out. (she's gone = she **has** gone)

'd = would or **had**
- *A:* What would you like to eat?
  B: I'd like a salad, please. (I'd like = I **would** like)
- I told the police that I'd lost my passport. (I'd lost = I **had** lost)

Do not use **'m / 's / 're / 've / 'd / 'll** at the end of a sentence (see Unit 41).
- "Are you tired?" "Yes, I **am**." (*not* Yes, I'm)
- She isn't tired, but he **is**. (*not* he's)

4.3 We use short forms with **I/you/he/she,** etc., but you can use short forms (especially **'s**) with other words too.
- **Who's** your favorite singer? (= who **is**)
- **What's** the time? (= what **is**)
- **There's** a big tree in the yard. (= there **is**)
- **My sister's** working in London. (= my sister **is** working)
- **Paul's** gone out. (= Paul **has** gone out)
- **What color's** your car? (= What color **is** your car?)

4.4 Negative short forms (see Unit 44)

isn't	(= is not)	**don't**	(= do not)	**hasn't**	(= has not)
aren't	(= are not)	**doesn't**	(= does not)	**haven't**	(= have not)
wasn't	(= was not)	**didn't**	(= did not)	**hadn't**	(= had not)
weren't	(= were not)				
can't	(= cannot)	**won't**	(= will not)	**mustn't**	(= must not)
couldn't	(= could not)	**wouldn't**	(= would not)	**shouldn't**	(= should not)

- We went to her house but she **wasn't** at home.
- "Where's David?" "I **don't** know. I **haven't** seen him."
- You work all the time. You **shouldn't** work so hard.
- I **won't** be here tomorrow. (= I will not)

4.5 's (apostrophe + s) can mean different things.

1. **'s** = **is** or **has** (see section 4.2 of this appendix)
2. **let's** = let **us** (see Unit 37)
   - The weather is nice. **Let's** go out. (= Let **us** go out.)
3. Kate's camera (= her camera) / my brother's car (= his car) / the manager's office (= his/her office), etc. (see Unit 65)

Compare:

- **Kate's** camera was very expensive. (**Kate's** camera = **her** camera)
- **Kate's** a very good photographer. (**Kate's** = Kate **is**)
- **Kate's** got a new camera. (Kate's got = Kate **has** got)

APPENDIX 5: Spelling

5.1 Words + -s and -es (birds/watches, *etc.*)

noun + s (plural) (see Unit 67)

bird → birds mistake → mistakes hotel → hotels

verb + s (he/she/it -s) (see Unit 5)

think → thinks live → lives remember → remembers

But:

+ es after -s / -sh / -ch / -x

bus → buses pass → passes address → addresses
dish → dishes wash → washes finish → finishes
watch → watches teach → teaches sandwich → sandwiches
box → boxes

also

potato → potatoes tomato → tomatoes
do → does go → goes

-f / -fe → -ves

shelf → shelves knife → knives *but* roof → roofs

5.2 Words ending in -y (baby → babies / study → studied, *etc.*)

-y → -ies

study → studies (*not* studys) family → families (*not* familys)
story → stories city → cities baby → babies
try → tries marry → marries fly → flies

-y → -ied (see Unit 11)

study → studied (*not* studyed)
try → tried marry → married copy → copied

-y → -ier / -iest (see Units 88 and 91)

easy → easier/easiest (*not* easyer/easyest)
happy → happier/happiest lucky → luckier/luckiest
heavy → heavier/heaviest funny → funnier/funniest

-y → -ily (see Unit 87)

easy → easily (*not* easyly)
happy → happily lucky → luckily heavy → heavily

Y does not change to i if the ending is -ay / -ey / -oy / -uy.

holiday → holidays (*not* holidaies)
enjoy → enjoys/enjoyed stay → stays/stayed buy → buys key → keys

but

say → said pay → paid *(irregular verbs)*

5.3 -ing

Verbs that end in -e (make/write/drive, etc.) → -ing			
make → making	write → writing	come → coming	dance → dancing
Verbs that end in -ie → -ying			
lie → lying	die → dying	tie → tying	

5.4 stop → stopped, big → bigger, etc.

Vowels and consonants

Vowel letters: a e i o u
Consonant letters: b c d f g k l m n p r s t w y

Sometimes a word ends in a *vowel* + a *consonant,* for example, **stop, big, get.** Before **-ing / -ed / -er / -est,** the consonant at the end (**-p / -g / -t,** etc.) is "doubled" (**-pp- / -gg- / -tt-,** etc.). For example:

	V+C				
stop	ST O P	p → pp	stopping	stopped	V = *vowel*
run	R U N	n → nn	running		C = *consonant*
get	G E T	t → tt	getting		
swim	SW I M	m → mm	swimming		
big	B I G	g → gg	bigger	biggest	
hot	H O T	t → tt	hotter	hottest	
thin	TH I N	n → nn	thinner	thinnest	

The letters are not doubled:

(1) if the word ends in *two* consonant letters (C + C)

	C+C			
help	HE L P	helping	helped	
work	WO R K	working	worked	
fast	FA S T	faster	fastest	

(2) if the word ends in two vowel letters + a consonant letter (V + V + C)

	V+V+C			
need	N E E D	needing	needed	
wait	W A I T	waiting	waited	
cheap	CH E A P	cheaper	cheapest	

(3) in longer words (two syllables or more) if the last part of the word is *not* stressed

		stress		
happen	HAP-pen	→	happening/happened (*not* happenned)	
visit	VIS-it	→	visiting/visited	
remember	re-MEM-ber	→	remembering/remembered	
but prefer	pre-FER	*(stress at the end)*	→	preferring/preferred
begin	be-GIN	*(stress at the end)*	→	beginning

(4) if the word ends in -y or -w (At the end of words, y and w are not consonants.)
enjoy/enjoying/enjoyed snow/snowing/snowed few/fewer/fewest

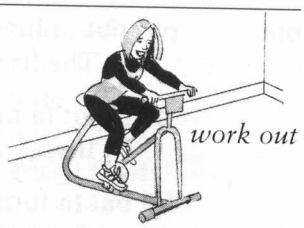
APPENDIX 6: Two-Word Verbs (*look out / take off*, etc.)

This is a list of some important two-word verbs (see Unit 109).

out

look out / watch out = be careful
- **Look out!** There's a car coming!

work out = exercise (to become stronger or more fit)
- Sarah **works out** at the gym two or three times a week.


work out

on

come on = be quick / hurry
- **Come on!** Everybody is waiting for you.

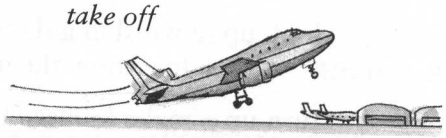
go on = continue
- I'm sorry I interrupted you. **Go on.** (= continue what you were saying)
- How long will my cold **go on,** Doctor?

keep on = continue (talking, etc.)
- I asked them to be quiet, but they **kept on** talking.

off

take off = leave the ground (for airplanes)
- The plane **took off** 20 minutes late but landed on time.

take off

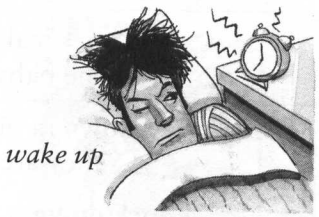


up

wake up = stop sleeping
- I often **wake up** in the middle of the night.

speak up = speak more loudly
- I can't hear you. Can you **speak up,** please?

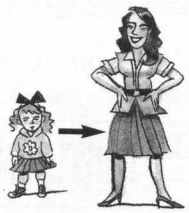
hurry up = do something more quickly
- **Hurry up!** We haven't got much time.


wake up

clean up = make neat or clean
- After the party, it took two hours to **clean up.**

grow up = become an adult
- What does your son want to do when he **grows up?**

give up = stop trying
- I know it's difficult, but don't **give up.**


1980 2002
grow up

down

slow down = go more slowly
- You're driving too fast. **Slow down!**

break down = stop working (for cars/machines, etc.)
- Sue was very late because her car **broke down.**

break down

along

get along = be together without problems
- Do you like living with Mike? Do you two **get along?**
- Sam doesn't visit his parents often. He doesn't **get along** with his father.

APPENDIX 7: Two-Word Verbs + Object (*put out* a fire / *try on* clothes, etc.)

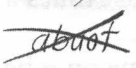
This is a list of some important two-word verbs + object (see Unit 110).

out

put out (a fire / a cigarette)
- The fire department arrived and **put the fire out.**

cross out (a mistake / a word, etc.)
- If you make a mistake, **cross it out.**

fill out (a form) = complete
- Can you **fill out this form,** please?



on

try on (clothes) = put on clothes to see if they fit you
- *(in a store)* Where can I **try** these pants **on?**

up

give up (something) = stop doing/having something
- Tom's doctor told him he had to **give up smoking.** (= stop smoking)
- Sheila **gave up her job** when her baby was born.

call up = call on the telephone
- Sue **called me up** last night. *or* Sue **called me** last night. (*without* up)

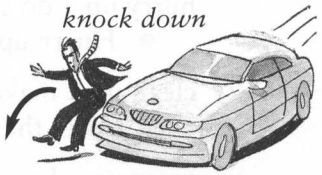
look up (a word in a dictionary, etc.)
- I didn't know the meaning of the word, so I **looked it up.**

turn up = make louder (TV, radio, music, etc.)
- Can you **turn the radio up?** I can't hear it.

wake up = make someone stop sleeping
- The baby just fell asleep. Try to be quiet so you don't **wake her up.**

down

tear down (a building) = demolish
- They are going to **tear down** the school and build a new one.



knock down = make (somebody) fall
- A man was **knocked down** by the car.

turn down = make quieter (TV, radio, music, etc.)
- The music is too loud. Can you **turn it down?**

back

pay somebody **back** (money that you borrowed)
- Thank you for lending me the money. I'll **pay you back** next week.

away

throw away (things you don't want)
- These apples are bad. Shall I **throw them away?**
- Don't **throw away that picture.** I want it.

put away = put something in the place where you usually keep it
- After they finished playing, the children **put their toys away.**

over

knock over (a cup / a glass, etc.)
- Be careful! Don't **knock your cup over.**

around

show (somebody) **around** = take somebody on a tour of a place
- We visited a factory last week. The manager **showed us around.**

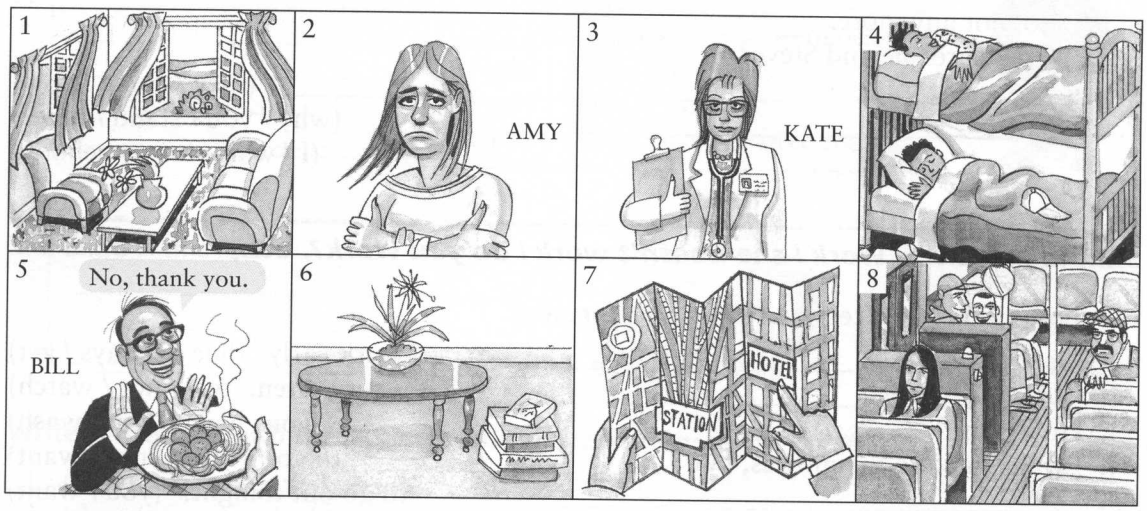
Additional Exercises

Exercises 1–2	*Am/is/are*	Units 1–2
Exercise 3	Present Continuous	Units 3–4
Exercise 4	Simple Present	Units 5–7
Exercises 5–7	*Am/is/are,* Simple Present, *have / have got*	Units 1–2, 5–7, 9
Exercises 8–9	Present Continuous and Simple Present	Units 3–8
Exercises 10–13	*Was/were* and Simple Past	Units 10–12
Exercise 14	Simple Past and Past Continuous	Units 11–14
Exercise 15	Present and Past	Units 3–14
Exercises 16–18	Present Perfect	Units 16–20
Exercises 19–22	Present Perfect and Simple Past	Units 16–21
Exercise 23	Present, Past, and Present Perfect	Units 3–21
Exercises 24–27	Passive	Units 22–23
Exercise 28	Future	Units 26–29
Exercise 29	Past, Present and Future	Units 3–21, 26–29
Exercise 30	*-ing* and *to . . .*	Units 52–56, 100, 107
Exercises 31–32	*A* and *the*	Units 66, 70–74
Exercise 33	Prepositions	Units 98–103, 106

Am/is/are

Units 1–2

1 Write sentences for the pictures. Use the words in the boxes + *is/isn't/are/aren't.*



~~The windows~~
~~Amy~~
Kate
The children
Bill
The books
The hotel
The bus

a doctor
asleep
crowded
~~happy~~
hungry
near the station
on the table
~~open~~

1. *The windows are open.*
2. *Amy isn't happy.*
3. Kate _____.
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____

2 Complete the sentences.

1. "Are you hungry?" "No, but *I'm* _____ thirsty."
2. "*How are* _____ your parents?" "They're fine."
3. "Is Lisa at home?" "No, _____ at work."
4. "_____ my keys?" "In the kitchen."
5. Where is John from? _____ American or Canadian?
6. _____ very hot today. The temperature is 38 degrees Celsius.
7. "Are you a teacher?" "No, _____ a student."
8. "_____ your umbrella?" "Green."
9. Where's your car? _____ in the parking lot?
10. "_____ tired?" "No, I'm fine."
11. "_____ these oranges?" "Seventy-five cents each."

Present Continuous (*I'm working / are you working?*, etc.) Units 3–4

3 Write sentences. Use the words in parentheses ( ).

1. *A:* Where are your parents?
   B: *They're watching TV.* (they / watch / TV)
2. *A:* Paula is going out.
   B: *Where's she going?* (where / she / go?)
3. *A:* Where's David?
   B: _____ (he / take / a bath)
4. *A:* _____ (the children / play?)
   B: No, they're asleep.
5. *A:* _____ (it / rain?)
   B: No, not any more.
6. *A:* Where are Sue and Steve?
   B: _____ (they / come / now)
7. *A:* _____ (why / you / stand / here?)
   B: _____ (I / wait / for somebody)

Simple Present (*I work / she doesn't work / do you work?*, etc.) Units 5–7

4 Complete the sentences. Use the simple present.

1. *Sue always gets* _____ to work early. (Sue / always / get)
2. *We don't watch* _____ TV very often. (we / not / watch)
3. How often *do you wash* _____ your hair? (you / wash)
4. I want to go to the movies, but _____ to go. (Chris / not / want)
5. _____ to go out tonight? (you / want)
6. _____ near here? (Amy / live)
7. _____ a lot of people. (Sarah / know)
8. I enjoy traveling, but _____ very much. (I / not / travel)
9. What time _____ in the morning? (you / usually / get up)
10. My parents are usually home in the evening.
    _____ very often. (they / not / go out)
11. _____ work at five o'clock. (Adam / always / leave)
12. *A:* What _____ ? (Kim / do)
    B: _____ in a hotel. (she / work)

5 Read the questions and Claire's answers. Write sentences about Claire.

Are you married?	No.
Do you live in Toronto?	Yes.
Are you a student?	Yes.
Do you have a car?	No.
Do you go out a lot?	Yes.
Do you have a lot of friends?	Yes.
Do you like Toronto?	No.
Do you like to dance?	Yes.
Are you interested in sports?	No.

CLAIRE

1. *She isn't married.*
2. *She lives in Toronto.*
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____

6 Complete the questions.

1. *What's your name* _____ ?
_____ married?
Where _____ ?
_____ any children?
How _____ ?

Brian.
Yes, I am.
On State Street.
Yes, a daughter.
She's three.

2. _____ ?
_____ ?
_____ your job?
_____ a car?
_____ to work?

I'm 29.
I work in a supermarket.
No, I hate it.
Yes, I do.
No, I usually take the bus.

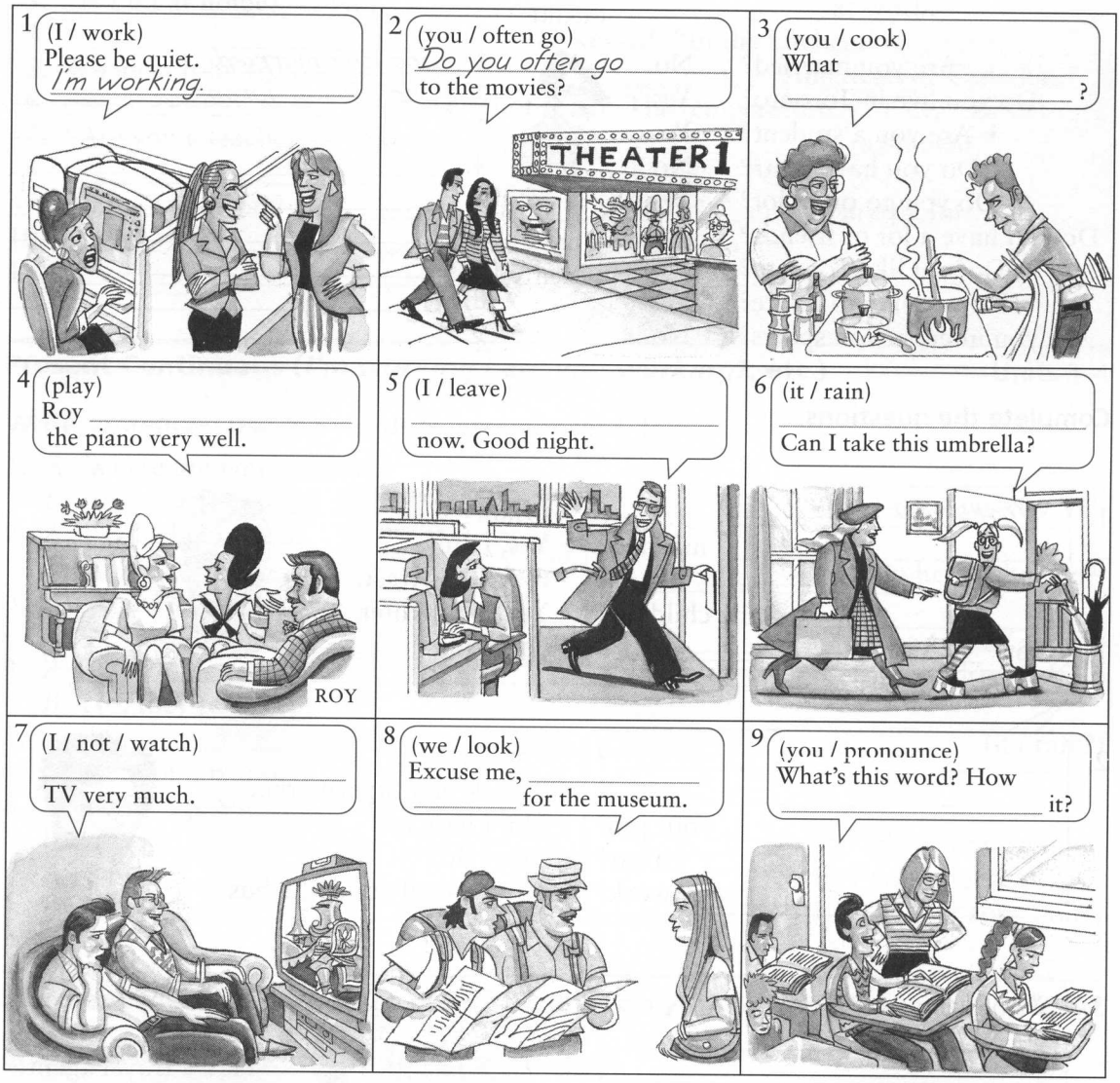
3. Who is this man?
_____ ?
_____ ?
_____ in New York?

That's my brother.
Alex.
He's a travel agent.
No, Los Angeles.

7 Write sentences with these words. All of the sentences are present.

1. (Sarah often / tennis) *Sarah often plays tennis.*
2. (they / a new car) *They have a new car.* OR *They've got a new car.*
3. (my shoes / dirty) *My shoes are dirty.*
4. (Sonia / 32 years old) Sonia _____ .
5. (he / six sisters) _____
6. (we often / TV at night) _____
7. (Amy never / a hat) _____
8. (my car / a flat tire) _____
9. (these flowers / beautiful) _____
10. (Mary / German very well) _____

8 Complete the sentences.



9 Which is right?

1. "~~Are you speaking~~ / Do you speak English?" "Yes, a little." (*Do you speak* is right.)
2. Sometimes we're going / we go away on weekends.
3. It's a nice day today. The sun is shining / shines.
4. *(You meet Amy in the street.)* Hello, Amy. Where are you going / do you go?
5. How often are you taking / do you take a vacation?
6. Emily is a writer. She's writing / She writes books for children.
7. I'm never reading / I never read newspapers.
8. "Where are Ed and Lee?" "They're watching / They watch TV in the living room."
9. Beth is in her office. She's talking / She talks to somebody.
10. What time are you usually having / do you usually have dinner?
11. John isn't home right now. He's visiting / He visits some friends.
12. "Would you like some tea?" "No, thank you. I'm not drinking / I don't drink tea."

10 Complete the sentences. Use only one word.

1. I got up early and *took* a shower.
2. Tom was tired last night, so he _____ to bed early.
3. I _____ this pen on the floor. Is it yours?
4. Kate got married when she _____ 23.
5. Beth is learning to drive. She _____ her first lesson yesterday.
6. "I've got a new job." "Yes, I know. David _____ me."
7. "Where did you buy that book?" "It was a present. Andy _____ it to me."
8. We _____ hungry, so we had something to eat.
9. "Did you enjoy the movie?" "Yes, I did. I _____ it was very good."
10. "Did Ed come to your party?" "No, I _____ him, but he didn't come."

11 Look at the questions and Joe's answers. Write about Joe when he was a child.

When you were a child . . .	
Were you tall?	No.
Did you like school?	Yes.
Were you good at sports?	Yes.
Did you play basketball?	Yes.
Did you work hard in school?	No.
Did you have a lot of friends?	Yes.
Did you have a bicycle?	No.
Were you a quiet child?	No.

JOE

1. *He wasn't tall.*
2. *He liked school.*
3. He _____.
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____

12 Complete the questions.

1. *Did you have* a nice vacation?
2. *Where did you go* ?
3. _____ there?
4. _____ Vancouver?
5. _____ ?
6. _____ good?
7. _____ back?

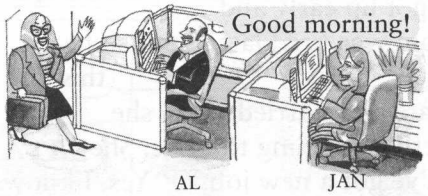
Yes, it was great, thanks.
To Vancouver.
Five days.
Yes, very much.
I have friends there. I stayed with them.
Yes, it was warm and sunny.
Yesterday.

13 Put the verb in the right form (positive, negative, or question).

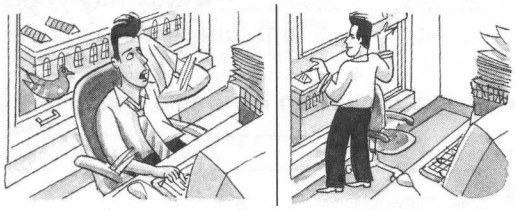
1. It was a good party. *I enjoyed* it. (I / enjoy)
2. "*Did you do* the dishes?" (you / do) "No, *I didn't have* time." (I / have)
3. "Did you call Alan?" "No, I'm sorry. _____" (I / forget)
4. I like your watch. Where _____ it? (you / get)
5. I saw Lucy at the party, but _____ to her. (I / speak)
6. "_____ a nice weekend?" (you / have) "Yes, I saw a friend of mine."
7. Paul was sick yesterday, so _____ to work. (he / go)
8. "Is Mary here?" "Yes, _____ here five minutes ago." (she / get)
9. Where _____ before he moved here? (Bob / live)
10. The restaurant wasn't expensive. _____ very much. (the meal / cost)

14 **Complete the sentences. Use the simple past or past continuous.**

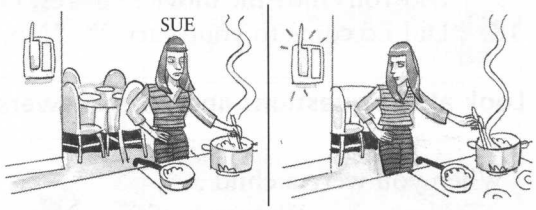
1. It *was raining* (rain) when we *went* (go) out.



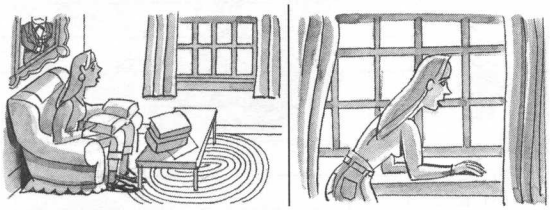
2. When I got to the office, Al and Jan _____ (work).



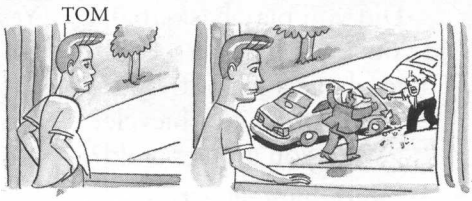
3. I _____ (open) the window because it was hot.



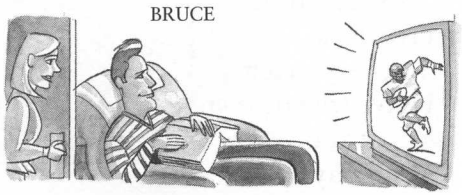
4. The phone _____ (ring) while Sue _____ (cook) dinner.



5. I _____ (hear) a noise, so I _____ (look) out the window.



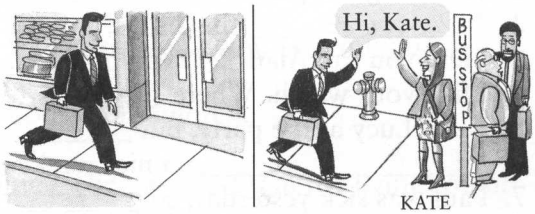
6. Tom _____ (look) out the window when the accident _____ (happen).



7. Bruce had a book in his hand, but he _____ (not / read) it. He _____ (watch) TV.

8. Erin bought a magazine, but she _____ (not / read) it. She didn't have time.

9. I _____ (finish) lunch, _____ (pay), and _____ (leave) the restaurant.



10. I _____ (see) Kate this morning. I _____ (walk) along the street, and she _____ (wait) for the bus.

Present and Past

Units 3–14

15 Complete the sentences. Use one of these forms.

the simple present (*I work*, etc.)	the present continuous (*I am working*, etc.)
the simple past (*I worked*, etc.)	the past continuous (*I was working*, etc.)

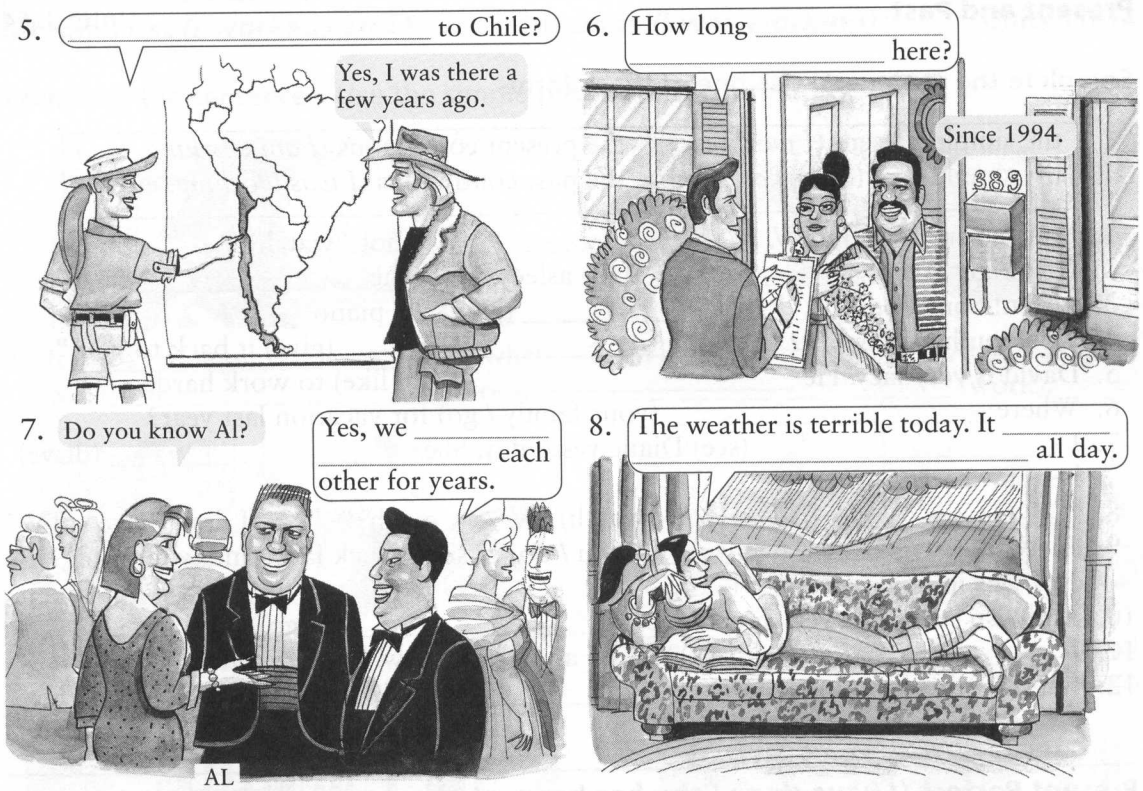
1. You can turn off the TV. I *'m not watching* (not / watch) it.
2. Last night Amy *fell* (fall) asleep while she *was reading* (read).
3. Listen! Somebody _____ (play) the piano.
4. "Do you have my key?" "No, I _____ (give) it back to you."
5. David is very lazy. He _____ (not / like) to work hard.
6. Where _____ (your family / go) for vacation last year?
7. I _____ (see) Diane yesterday. She _____ (drive) her new car.
8. "_____ (you / watch) TV very much?" "No, I don't have a TV."
9. *A:* What _____ (you / do) at six o'clock last Sunday morning?
   B: I was in bed asleep.
10. Andy isn't at home very much. He _____ (go) out a lot.
11. I _____ (try) to find a job right now. It's very hard.
12. I'm tired this morning. I _____ (not / sleep) very well last night.

Present Perfect (*I have done / she has been*, etc.)

Units 16–20

16 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use the present perfect.

1. Who's that man?
   I don't know. I *'ve never seen* _____ him before.
2. Is this a good book?
   I don't know. I _____ _____ it.
3. I'm looking for Julia. _____ _____ her?
   Yes, she was here a few minutes ago.
4. More coffee?
   No, thanks. I _____ _____ enough.



17 Complete the sentences (1, 2 or 3 words).

1. Mark and Liz are married. They *have been* _____ married for five years.
2. David has been watching TV *since* _____ five o'clock.
3. Mark is at work. He _____ at work since 8:30.
4. "Did you just arrive in Ottawa?" "No, I've been here _____ five days."
5. I've known Amy _____ we were in high school.
6. "My brother lives in Los Angeles." "Really? How long _____ there?"
7. Eric has had the same job _____ twenty years.
8. Some friends are staying with us. They _____ here since Monday.

18 Complete the sentences. Write about yourself.

1. I've never *ridden a horse* _____.
2. I've *been to Los Angeles* _____ many times.
3. I've _____.
   (once / twice / a few times / many times)
4. I haven't _____ yet.
5. I've never _____.
6. I've _____ since _____.
7. I've _____ for _____.

19 Present perfect or simple past? Complete the sentences (positive or negative).

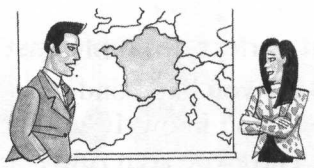
1. *A:* Do you like London?
   B: I don't know. I *haven't been* there.
2. *A:* Have you seen Amy?
   B: Yes, I *saw* her five minutes ago.
3. *A:* That's a nice sweater. Is it new?
   B: Yes, I _____ it last week.
4. *A:* Are you tired this morning?
   B: Yes, I _____ to bed late last night.
5. *A:* Is that new French movie good?
   B: Yes, really good. _____ it three times.
6. *A:* The weather isn't very nice today, is it?
   B: No, but it _____ nice yesterday.
7. *A:* Was Lisa at the party on Saturday?
   B: I don't think so. I _____ her there.
8. *A:* How long does it take to make pizza?
   B: I have no idea. I _____ pizza.
9. *A:* Is your son still in school?
   B: No, he _____ college two years ago.
10. *A:* Is Sylvia married?
    B: Yes, she _____ married for five years.
11. *A:* Have you heard of George Washington?
    B: Of course. He _____ the first President of the United States.

20 Write sentences with the words in parentheses ( ). Use the present perfect or the simple past.

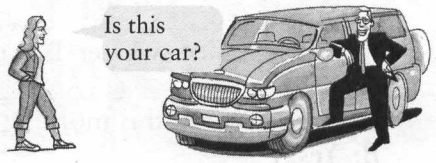
1. *A:* Have you been to Thailand?
   B: Yes, *I went there last year*. (I / go / there / last year)
2. *A:* Do you like London?
   B: I don't know. *I've never been there*. (I / never / there)
3. *A:* Where is Paul these days?
   B: He's living in Chicago. _____ (live / there / since last May)
4. *A:* Has Erin gone home?
   B: Yes, _____. (she / leave / at four o'clock)
5. *A:* New York is my favorite city.
   B: Is it? _____ (how many times / you / there?)
6. *A:* You look tired.
   B: Yes, _____ (I / tired / all day)
7. *A:* I can't find my address book. Have you seen it?
   B: _____ (it / on the table / last night)
8. *A:* Is that restaurant good?
   B: Yes, it is. _____ (eat / there / many times)
9. *A:* Paula and Sue are here.
   B: They are? _____ (what time / they / arrive?)

21 **Present perfect or simple past? Complete the sentences.**

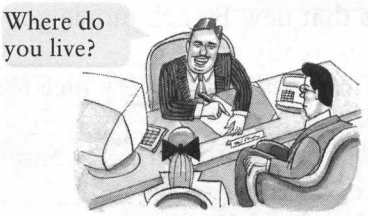
1. *A:* *Have you been* _____ to France?
   B: Yes, many times.
   A: When _____
   the last time?
   B: Two years ago.



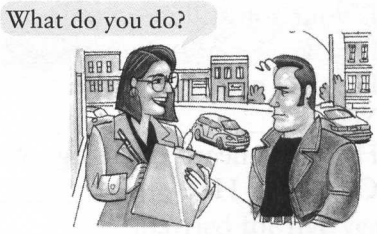
2. *A:* Is this your car?
   B: Yes, it is.
   A: How long _____ it?
   B: It's new. I _____ it yesterday.



3. *A:* Where do you live?
   B: On Maple Street.
   A: How long _____ there?
   B: Five years. Before that _____
   _____ on Mill Road.
   A: Really? How long _____
   _____ on Mill Road?
   B: About three years.



4. *A:* What do you do?
   B: I work in a store.
   A: How long _____ there?
   B: Almost two years.
   A: What _____
   before that?
   B: I _____ taxi driver.



22 **Write sentences about yourself.**

1. (yesterday morning) *I was late for work yesterday morning.*
2. (last night) _____
3. (yesterday afternoon) _____
4. (. . . days ago) _____
5. (last week) _____
6. (last year) _____

Present, Past, and Present Perfect **Units 3–21**

23 **Which is right?**

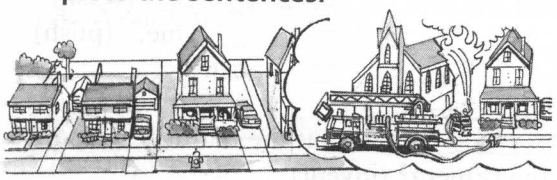
1. "____ ?" "No, she's on vacation."
   A. Does Sue work B. Is working Sue (C.) Is Sue working D. Does work Sue
2. "Where ____ ?" "In Dallas."
   A. lives your uncle B. does your uncle live C. your uncle lives
   D. does live your uncle
3. I speak Italian, but ____ French.
   A. I no speak B. I'm not speaking C. I doesn't speak D. I don't speak
4. "Where's Tom?" " ____ a shower right now."
   A. He's taking B. He take C. He takes D. He has taken

5. Why _____ angry with me yesterday?
   A. were you B. was you C. you were D. have you been
6. My favorite film is *Cleo's Dream.* _____ it four times.
   A. I'm seeing B. I see C. I seen D. I've seen
7. I _____ out last night. I was too tired.
   A. don't go B. didn't went C. didn't go D. haven't gone
8. Liz is from Chicago. She _____ there all her life.
   A. is living B. has lived C. lives D. lived
9. My friend _____ for me when I arrived.
   A. waited B. has waited C. was waiting D. has been waiting
10. "How long _____ English?" "Six months."
    A. do you learn B. are you learning C. you are learning
    D. have you been learning
11. Joel is Canadian, but he lives in Chile. He has been there _____ .
    A. for three years B. since three years C. three years ago D. during three years
12. "What time _____ ?" "About an hour ago."
    A. has Amy called B. Amy called C. did Amy call D. is Amy calling
13. What _____ when you saw her?
    A. did Sue wear B. was Sue wearing C. has Sue worn D. was wearing Sue
14. "Can you drive?" "No, _____ a car, but I want to learn."
    A. I never drive B. I'm never driving C. I've never driven D. I was never driving
15. I saw Ruth at the train station this morning, but she _____ me.
    A. didn't see B. don't see C. hasn't seen D. didn't saw

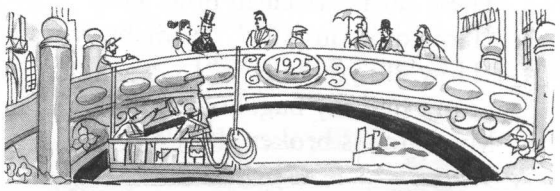
Passive

Units 22–23, Appendix 1

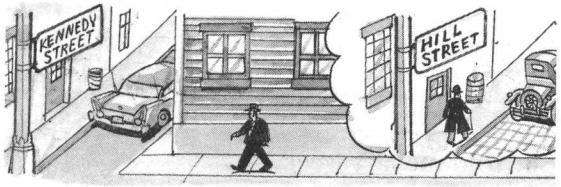
24 Complete the sentences.



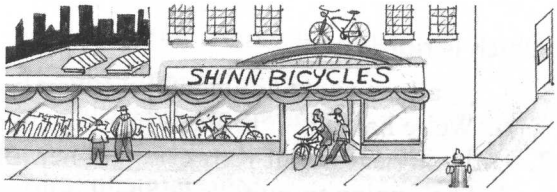
1. These houses *were built* _____ 20 years ago. Before that there was a church here, but the church _____ _____ (damage) in a fire and had to _____ (tear down).



2. This bridge _____ (build) in 1925. It _____ (use) by hundreds of people every day. At present the bridge _____ (paint).



3. This street _____ (call) Kennedy Street. It used to _____ _____ (call) Hill Street, but the name _____ (change) in 1964.



4. This is a bicycle factory. Bicycles _____ _____ (make) here since 1931. It is the oldest bicycle factory in the country. Thousands of bicycles _____ _____ (produce) here every year.

25 Complete the sentences.

1. We *were invited* to the party, but we didn't go. (invite)
2. The museum is very popular. Every year it _____ by thousands of people. (visit)
3. Many buildings _____ in the storm last week. (damage)
4. A new road is going to _____ next year. (build)
5. "Where's your jacket?" "It _____. It will be ready tomorrow." (clean)
6. She's famous now, but in a few years her name will _____. (forget)
7. "Are you happy with your washing machine?" "Not really. It _____ three times since we bought it." (repair)
8. Milk should _____ in the refrigerator. (keep)
9. _____ by a snake? (you / ever / bite)
10. My bag _____ from my car yesterday afternoon. (steal)

26 Write a new sentence with the same meaning.

1. Somebody has stolen my keys. *My keys have been stolen.*
2. Somebody stole my car last week. My car _____.
3. Somebody wants you on the phone. You _____.
4. Somebody has eaten the ice cream. The _____.
5. Somebody will repair the machine. The _____.
6. Somebody is watching us. We _____.
7. Somebody has to buy the food. The _____.

27 Active or passive? Complete the sentences.

1. They *are building* a new airport now. (build)
2. These shirts are clean now. They *have been washed* OR *were washed*. (wash)
3. "How did you fall?" "Somebody _____ me." (push)
4. "How did you fall?" "I _____." (push)
5. I can't find my bag. Somebody _____ it! (take)
6. My watch is broken. It _____ at the moment. (repair)
7. Who _____ the camera? (invent)
8. When _____? (the camera / invent)
9. The letter was for me, so why _____ it to you? (they / send)
10. The information will _____ to you as soon as possible. (send)

Future

Units 26–29

28 Which is right?

1. _____ a party next Sunday. I hope you can come.
   (A.) We're having B. We'll have
2. Did you hear about Karen? _____ her job. She told me last week.
   A. She's going to quit B. She'll quit
3. There's a program on TV that I want to watch. _____ in five minutes.
   A. It starts B. It's starting
4. The weather is nice now, but I think _____ later.
   A. it's raining B. it will rain

5. "What ____ next weekend?" "Nothing special. Why?"
   A. are you doing B. do you do
6. "When you see Amy, can you ask her to call me?" "OK, ____ her."
   A. I ask B. I'll ask
7. "What would you like to drink, tea or coffee?" "____ tea, please."
   A. I have B. I'll have
8. Don't take that newspaper away. ____ it.
   A. I'm going to read B. I'll read
9. Rachel is sick, so ____ to the party tomorrow night.
   A. she doesn't come B. she isn't coming
10. I want to meet Sarah at the station. What time ____ ?
    A. does her train arrive B. is her train arriving
11. "Will you be at home tomorrow night?" "No, ____ ."
    A. I'm going out B. I go out
12. "____ you at six tomorrow?" "Yes, fine."
    A. Do I call B. Shall I call

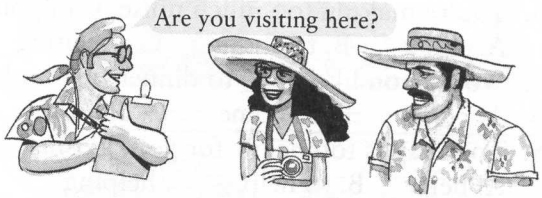
Past, Present, and Future

Units 3–21, 26–29

29 Complete the sentences.

1. *A:* *Did you go* _____ (you / go) out last night?
   B: No, _____ (I / stay) home.
   A: What _____ (you / do) ?
   B: _____ (I / watch) TV.
   A: _____ (you / go) out tomorrow night?
   B: Yes, _____ (I / go) to the movies.
   A: What movie _____ (you / see) ?
   B: _____ (I / not / know) .
   _____ (I / not / decide) yet.

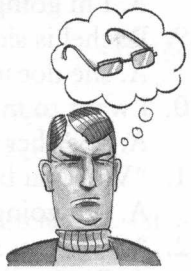
2. *A:* Are you visiting here?
   B: Yes, we are.
   A: How long _____
   _____ (you / be) here?
   B: _____
   (we / arrive) yesterday.
   A: And how long _____ (you / stay) ?
   B: Until the end of next week.
   A: And _____ (you / like) it here?
   B: Yes, _____ (we / have) a wonderful time.



3. *A:* Oh, _____ (I / just / remember) –
   _____ (Kim / call) while you were out.
   B: _____ (she / always / call) when I'm not here.
   _____ (she / leave) a message?
   A: No, but _____ (she / want) you to call her back as soon as possible.
   B: OK, _____ (I / call) her now.
   _____ (you / know) her number?
   A: It's in my address book. _____ (I / get) it for you.

4. *A:* _____ (I / go) out with Chris and Steve tonight.
_____ (you / want) to come with us?
B: Yes, where _____ (you / go)?
A: To the Italian restaurant on North Street.
_____ (you / ever / eat) there?
B: Yes, _____ (I / be) there two or three times. In fact I
_____ (go) there last night, but I'd love to go again!

5. *A:* _____ (I / lose) my glasses again.
_____ (you / see) them?
B: _____ (you / wear) them when
_____ (I / come) in.
A: Well, _____ (I / not / wear) them now, so where are they?
B: _____ (you / look) in the kitchen?
A: No. _____ (I / go) and look now.



-ing and *to* . . . Units 52–56, 100, 107

30 Which is right?

1. Don't forget _____ off the light when you leave.
A. turn (B.) to turn C. turning
2. It's late. I should _____ now.
A. go B. to go C. going
3. I'm sorry but I haven't got time _____ to you now.
A. for talking B. to talk C. talking
4. Bill is always in the kitchen. He enjoys _____ .
A. cook B. to cook C. cooking
5. We've decided _____ away for a few days.
A. go B. to go C. going
6. You're making too much noise. Can you please stop _____ ?
A. shout B. to shout C. shouting
7. Would you like _____ to dinner on Sunday?
A. come B. to come C. coming
8. That bag is too heavy for you. Let me _____ you.
A. help B. to help C. helping
9. There's a swimming pool near my house. I go _____ every day.
A. swim B. to swimming C. swimming
10. Did you use a dictionary _____ the letter?
A. to translate B. for translating C. for translate
11. I'd love _____ a car like yours.
A. have B. to have C. to having
12. Could you _____ me with this bag, please?
A. help B. to help C. helping
13. I don't mind _____ here, but I'd prefer to sit by the window.
A. sit B. to sit C. sitting
14. Do you want _____ you?
A. that I help B. me to help C. me helping

15. I always read the newspaper before _____ work.
    A. start B. to start C. starting
16. I wasn't feeling very well, but the medicine made me _____ better.
    A. feel B. to feel C. feeling
17. Shall I call the restaurant _____ a table?
    A. for reserve B. for reserving C. to reserve
18. Tom looked at me without _____ anything.
    A. say B. saying C. to say

A and *the*

Units 66, 70–74

31 **Complete the sentences.**

32 **Write *a/an* or *the* if necessary.**

1. Who is *the* best player on your team?
2. I don't watch — television very often.
3. "Is there *a* bank near here?" "Yes, at *the* end of this block."
4. I can't ride _____ horse.
5. _____ sky is very clear tonight.
6. Do you live here, or are you _____ tourist?
7. What did you have for _____ lunch?
8. Who was _____ first President of _____ United States?
9. "What time is it?" "I don't know. I don't have _____ watch."
10. I'm sorry but I've forgotten your name. I can never remember _____ names.
11. What time is _____ next train to Boston?
12. Kate never writes _____ letters. She prefers to call people.
13. "Where's Sue?" "She's in _____ yard."
14. Excuse me, I'm looking for _____ Majestic Hotel. Is it near here?
15. Gary was sick _____ last week, so he didn't go to _____ work.
16. Everest is _____ highest mountain in _____ world.
17. I usually listen to _____ radio while I'm having _____ breakfast.
18. I like _____ sports. My favorite sport is _____ basketball.
19. Julia is _____ doctor. Her husband is _____ art teacher.
20. My apartment is on _____ second floor. Turn left at _____ top of _____ stairs, and it's on _____ right.
21. After _____ dinner, we watched _____ television.
22. I've been to _____ northern Mexico, but not to _____ south.

Prepositions

Units 98–103, 106

33 **Write a preposition (*in/for/by,* etc.).**

1. Beth is studying math *in* college.
2. What is the longest river _____ Europe?
3. Is there anything _____ television tonight?
4. We arrived _____ the hotel after midnight.
5. "Where's Mike?" "He's _____ vacation."
6. Tom hasn't gotten up yet. He's still _____ bed.
7. Lisa is away. She's been away _____ Monday.
8. The next meeting is _____ April 15.
9. We traveled across Canada _____ train.
10. There's too much sugar _____ my coffee.
11. Kevin lived in Chicago _____ six months. He didn't like it very much.
12. Were there a lot of people _____ the party?
13. I don't know any of the people _____ this photograph.
14. The train was very slow. It stopped _____ every station.
15. I like this room. I like the pictures _____ the walls.
16. "Did you buy that picture?" "No, it was given to me _____ a friend of mine."
17. I'm going away _____ a few days. I'll be back _____ Thursday.
18. Lynn has gone _____ Italy. She's _____ Milan right now.
19. Amy quit school _____ sixteen and got a job _____ a bookstore.

Study Guide

If you are not sure which units you need to study, use this study guide.

You have to decide which alternative is right (A, B, C, etc.). **Sometimes more than one alternative is correct.**

If you don't know (or if you are not sure) which alternatives are correct, study the unit (or units) on the right. You will find the correct sentence in the unit.

The Answer Key to this study guide is on page 296.

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT	STUDY UNIT
Present	
1.1 _____ . Can you close the window, please? A. I cold B. I'm cold C. I have cold D. It has cold	1
1.2 Tom _____ in politics. A. isn't interested B. not interested C. doesn't interested D. don't interest	1
1.3 "_____ ?" "No, she's out." A. Is at home your mother B. Does your mother at home C. Is your mother at home D. Are your mother at home	2
1.4 "How much _____ ?" "Fifty cents." A. are these postcards B. is these postcards C. these postcards D. do these postcards	2
1.5 Look at Michiko! _____ her new hat. A. She wearing B. She has wearing C. She is wearing D. She's wearing	3, 24
1.6 You can turn off the television. _____ it. A. I'm not watch B. I'm not watching C. I not watching D. I don't watching	3, 24
1.7 "_____ today?" "No, he's at home." A. Is working Luis B. Is work Luis C. Is Luis work D. Is Luis working	4, 24
1.8 Look, there's Hannah! _____ ? A. Where she is going B. Where she go C. Where's she going D. Where she going	4, 24
1.9 The earth _____ around the sun. A. going B. go C. goes D. does go E. is go	5, 24
1.10 We _____ late on weekends. A. often sleep B. sleep often C. often sleeping D. are often sleep	5, 24, 95
1.11 We _____ television very often. A. not watch B. doesn't watch C. don't watch D. don't watching	6, 24
1.12 "_____ on Saturdays?" "No, not usually." A. Do you work B. Are you work C. Does you work D. Do you working	7, 24
1.13 I don't understand this sentence. What _____ ? A. mean this word B. means this word C. does mean this word D. does this word mean E. this word means	7, 24

1.14 Please be quiet. _____ . — 8, 24
A. I working B. I work C. I'm working D. I'm work

1.15 Tom _____ a shower every morning. — 8
A. takes B. taking C. is taking D. take

1.16 What _____ on weekends? — 7, 8, 24
A. do you usually B. are you usually doing C. are you usually do
D. do you usually do E. you do usually

1.17 Li Jing isn't feeling well. _____ a headache. — 9, 59
A. She have B. She have got C. She has D. She's got

1.18 Mr. and Mrs. Harris _____ any children. — 9, 59
A. don't have B. doesn't have C. no have D. haven't got

Past

2.1 The weather _____ last week. — 10
A. is nice B. was nice C. were nice D. nice E. had nice

2.2 Why _____ late this morning? — 10
A. you was B. did you C. was you D. you were E. were you

2.3 Terry _____ in a bank from 1987 to 1998. — 11, 24
A. work B. working C. works D. worked E. was work

2.4 Caroline _____ to the movies three times last week. — 11
A. go B. went C. goes D. got E. was

2.5 I _____ television yesterday. — 12, 24
A. didn't watch B. didn't watched C. wasn't watch D. don't watch
E. didn't watching

2.6 "How _____ ?" "I don't know. I didn't see it" — 12
A. happened the accident B. did happen the accident C. does the accident happen
D. did the accident happen E. the accident happened

2.7 What _____ at 11:30 yesterday? — 13
A. were you doing B. was you doing C. you were doing D. were you do
E. you was doing

2.8 Eric was reading a book when the phone _____ . — 14
A. ringing B. rang C. was ringing D. was ring

2.9 I saw Lucy and Steve this morning. They _____ at the bus stop. — 14
A. waiting B. waited C. were waiting D. was waiting E. were waited

2.10 Dave _____ in a factory. Now he works in a supermarket. — 15
A. working B. works C. worked D. use to work E. used to work

Present Perfect

3.1 My mother _____ by plane. — 16, 24
A. has never travel B. has never traveled C. is never traveled
D. has never been traveled E. have never traveled

3.2 _____ that woman before, but I can't remember where. 16, 24
A. I see B. I seen C. I've saw D. I've seen E. I've seeing

3.3 "How long _____ married?" "Since 1992." 17
A. you are B. you have been C. has you been D. are you
E. have you been

3.4 "Do you know Lynn?" "Yes, _____ her for a long time." 17
A. I knew B. I've known C. I know D. I am knowing

3.5 Richard has been in Canada _____. 18, 99
A. for six months B. since six months C. six months ago D. in six months

3.6 "When did Tom go out?" "_____." 18
A. For ten minutes B. Since ten minutes C. Ten minutes ago
D. In ten minutes

3.7 "Is Peter here?" "No, _____ home." 19, 21
A. he went B. he have gone C. he's went D. he's gone E. he go

3.8 "Are you hungry?" "No, _____ dinner." 20
A. I just had B. I just have C. I just having D. I've just had

3.9 We _____ a vacation last year. 21
A. don't take B. haven't taken C. hasn't taken D. didn't take
E. didn't took

3.10 Where _____ on Sunday afternoon? I couldn't find you. 21
A. you were B. you have been C. was you D. have you been E. were you

Passive

4.1 This house _____ 100 years ago. 22, 24
A. is built B. is building C. was building D. was built E. built

4.2 We _____ to the party last week. 22, 23
A. didn't invite B. didn't invited C. weren't invited D. wasn't invited
E. haven't been invited

4.3 "Where _____ born?" "In Los Angeles." 22
A. you are B. you were C. was you D. are you E. were you

4.4 I took the bus this morning because my car _____. 23
A. is being repaired B. is repairing C. has been repaired D. repaired

4.5 I can't find my keys. I think _____. 23
A. they've been stolen B. they are stolen C. they've stolen
D. they're being stolen

Verb Forms

5.1 It _____, so we went out. 24
A. wasn't rained B. wasn't rain C. didn't raining D. wasn't raining

5.2 Somebody _____ this window. 25
A. has broke B. has broken C. has breaked D. has break

Future

6.1 Andrew _____ tennis tomorrow. — 26
A. is playing B. play C. plays D. is play

6.2 _____ out tonight? — 26
A. Are you going B. Are you go C. Do you go D. Go you E. Do you going

6.3 What time _____ tonight? — 26
A. is the concert start B. does the concert start C. starts the concert
D. does the concert starting

6.4 What _____ to the party tonight? — 27
A. are you wearing B. are you going to wear C. do you wear
D. you are going to wear

6.5 I think Diana _____ her driver's test. — 28
A. passes B. will pass C. will be pass D. will passing

6.6 _____ to the movies on Saturday. Do you want to come with us? — 26, 28
A. We go B. We'll go C. We're going D. We will going

6.7 " _____ you tomorrow, OK?" "OK. Goodbye." — 29
A. I call B. I'll call C. I'm calling D. I calling

6.8 There's a good program on TV tonight. _____ it. — 27, 29
A. I watch B. I'll watch C. I'm going to watch D. I'll watching

6.9 It's a nice day. _____ for a walk? — 29
A. Do we go B. Shall we go C. Should we go

Modals, Imperatives, etc.

7.1 _____ to the movies tonight, but I'm not sure. — 30
A. I'll go B. I'm going C. I may go D. I might go

7.2 " _____ here?" "Sure." — 30, 31
A. Can I sit B. Do I sit C. May I sit D. Can I to sit

7.3 I'm having a party next week, but Scott and Angela _____ . — 31
A. can't come B. can't to come C. can't coming D. couldn't come

7.4 Before Shu Ling came to Canada, she _____ understand much English. — 31
A. can B. can't C. not D. couldn't E. doesn't

7.5 You worked ten hours today. You _____ tired. — 32
A. must B. can C. must be D. can be E. must to be

7.6 Carlos takes the bus everywhere. He _____ a car. — 32
A. must have B. must not have C. must not to have D. no have

7.7 They were in a dangerous situation. They _____ careful. — 32, 34
A. must to be B. must be C. have to be D. had to be E. had be

7.8 I _____ study tonight, but I think I'll go to the movies. — 33
A. must B. have to C. should D. ought to E. will

7.9 What time _____ go to the dentist tomorrow? — 34
A. you must B. you have to C. have you to D. do you have to

7.10 " _____ some coffee?" "No, thank you." 35
A. Are you liking B. You like C. Would you like D. Do you like

7.11 I don't really want to go out. _____ home. 36
A. I rather stay B. I'd rather stay C. I'd rather to stay D. I'd prefer to stay

7.12 Stay here. Please _____ . 37
A. don't go B. you no go C. you not to go D. go not

7.13 It's a nice day. _____ out. 37
A. Let's to go B. Let's go C. Let's to go D. We go

There and *it*

8.1 Excuse me, _____ a hotel near here? 38
A. has there B. is there C. there is D. is it

8.2 _____ a lot of accidents on this road. 38
A. Have B. It has C. There have D. They are E. There are

8.3 When I got home, I was hungry, but _____ anything to eat. 39
A. there wasn't B. there weren't C. it wasn't D. there hasn't been

8.4 _____ three miles from our house to the mall. 40
A. It's B. It has C. There is D. There are

8.5 _____ true that you're moving to Australia? 40
A. Is there B. Is it C. Is D. Are you

Auxiliary Verbs

9.1 I haven't seen the movie but my sister _____ . 41
A. does B. is C. has seen D. has E. hasn't

9.2 I don't like hot weather, but Megan _____ . 41
A. does B. doesn't C. do D. does like E. likes

9.3 "Nicole got married last week." " _____ ? Really?" 42
A. Got she B. She got C. She did D. She has

9.4 You haven't met my mother, _____ ? 42
A. haven't you B. have you C. did you D. you have E. you haven't

9.5 Bill doesn't watch TV. He doesn't read newspapers _____ . 43
A. too B. either C. neither D. never

9.6 "I'd like to go to Australia." " _____ ." 43
A. So do I B. So am I C. So would I D. Neither do I E. So I would

9.7 Sue _____ much on weekends. 44
A. don't B. doesn't C. don't do D. doesn't do

Questions

10.1 "When _____ ?" "I'm not sure. More than 100 years ago." 45
A. did the telephone invent B. was invented the telephone
C. was the telephone invented D. the telephone was invented

10.2 "I broke my finger last week." " How _____ that?" 45
A. did you B. you did C. you did do D. did you do

10.3 Why _____ me last night? I was waiting for you to call. 45
A. didn't you call B. you no call C. you don't call D. you didn't call

10.4 "Who _____ in this house?" "I don't know." 46
A. lives B. does live C. does lives D. living

10.5 What _____ when you told him the story? 46
A. said Paul B. did Paul say C. Paul said D. did Paul said

10.6 "Tom's father is in the hospital." "_____?" 47
A. In which hospital he is B. In which hospital he is in
C. Which hospital he is in D. Which hospital is he in

10.7 Did you have a good vacation? _____? 47
A. How was the weather like B. What was the weather like
C. What the weather was like D. Was the weather like

10.8 _____ taller – Bill or Sam? 48
A. Who is B. What is C. Which is D. Who has

10.9 There are four umbrellas here. _____ is yours? 48, 76
A. What B. Who C. Which D. How E. Which one

10.10 How long _____ to get from Washington to New York by plane? 49
A. is it B. does it need C. does it take D. it wants

10.11 I don't remember what _____ at the party. 50
A. Dawn was wearing B. was wearing Dawn C. was Dawn wearing

10.12 "Do you know _____?" "Yes, I think so." 50
A. if Jack is at home B. is Jack at home C. whether Jack is at home
D. that Jack is at home

Reported Speech

11.1 I saw Steve a week ago. He said _____ me but he didn't. 51
A. he call B. he call C. he'll call D. he's going to call E. he would call

11.2 "Why did Tim go to bed so early?" "He _____." 51
A. said he was tired B. said that he was tired C. said me he was tired
D. told me he was tired

***-ing* and *to* . . .**

12.1 You shouldn't _____ so hard. 52
A. working B. work C. to work D. worked

12.2 I _____ now. See you tomorrow. 52
A. must to go B. have go C. have to going D. have to go

12.3 Tina has decided _____ her house. 53
A. sell B. to sell C. selling D. to selling

12.4 I don't mind _____ early. 53
A. get up B. to get up C. getting up D. to getting up

12.5 Do you like _____ early? 53
A. get up B. to get up C. getting up D. to getting up

12.6 Do you want _____ you some money? 54
A. me lend B. me lending C. me to lend D. that I lend

12.7 He's very funny. He makes _____. 54
A. me laugh B. me laughing C. me to laugh D. that I laugh

12.8 Kelly went to the store _____ a newspaper. 55
A. for buy B. for to buy C. for buying D. to buy E. buy

Go, get, do, make, and *have*

13.1 It's a nice day. Let's go _____. 56
A. for a swim B. on a swim C. to swimming D. swimming

13.2 I'm sorry your mother is sick. I hope she _____ better soon. 57
A. has B. makes C. gets D. goes

13.3 Kate _____ the car and drove away. 57
A. went into B. went in C. got in D. got into

13.4 "Shall I open the window?" "No, it's OK. I'll _____ it. 58
A. do B. make C. have

13.5 I'm sorry, I _____ a mistake. 58
A. did B. made C. got D. had

13.6 "_____ a nice weekend?" "Yes, thanks. It was very nice!" 59
A. Have you B. Had you C. Do you have D. Did you have

Pronouns and Possessives

14.1 I don't want this book. You can have _____. 60, 63
A. it B. them C. her D. him

14.2 Sue and Kevin are going to the movies. Do you want to go with _____? 60, 63
A. her B. they C. them D. him

14.3 I saw Mr. and Mrs. Lee with _____ daughter. 61, 63
A. her B. his C. they D. their

14.4 Hawaii is famous for _____ beaches. 61
A. his B. its C. it's D. their

14.5 I didn't have an umbrella, so Mary gave me _____. 62, 63
A. her B. hers C. her umbrella D. she's

14.6 I went to the movies with a friend of _____. 62,63
A. mine B. my C. me D. I

14.7 We had a good vacation. We enjoyed _____. 64
A. us B. our C. ours D. ourselves

14.8 Kim and Amy are good friends. They know _____ well. 64
A. each other B. them C. themselves D. theirselves

14.9 Have you met _____ ? — 65
A. the wife of Mr. Suzuki B. Mr. Suzuki wife C. the wife Mr. Suzuki
D. Mr. Suzuki's wife E. the Mr. Suzuki's wife

14.10 Have you seen _____ ? — 65
A. the car of my parents B. my parent's car C. my parents' car
D. my parents car

A and *the*

15.1 I'm going to buy _____ . — 66, 68
A. hat and umbrella B. a hat and a umbrella C. a hat and an umbrella
D. an hat and an umbrella

15.2 "What do you do?" "_____ ." — 66
A. I dentist B. I'm a dentist C. I'm dentist D. I do dentist

15.3 I'm going shopping. I need _____ . — 67
A. some new jeans B. a new jeans C. a new pair of jeans D. a new pair jeans

15.4 I like the people here. _____ very friendly. — 67
A. She is B. They are C. They is D. It is

15.5 I'm very thirsty. I need _____ . — 68, 69
A. some water B. a water C. a glass of water

15.6 I need _____ about hotels in Mexico City. — 69
A. some information B. some informations C. an information

15.7 We enjoyed our vacation. _____ was very nice. — 70, 71
A. Hotel B. A hotel C. An hotel D. The hotel

15.8 The table is in _____ . — 71
A. middle of room B. middle of the room C. the middle of the room
D. the middle of room

15.9 What did you have for _____ ? — 71
A. the breakfast B. breakfast C. a breakfast

15.10 I finish _____ at five o'clock every day. — 71
A. the work B. work C. a work

15.11 I never go to _____ , but I go to the movies a lot. — 72
A. the theater B. theater C. a theater

15.12 We don't eat _____ very often. — 73
A. the meat B. meat C. a meat D. some meat

15.13 _____ is in New York. — 74
A. The Times Square B. Times Square

15.14 My friends are staying at _____ . — 74
A. the Milton Hotel B. Milton Hotel

Determiners and Pronouns

16.1 "I'm going on vacation next week." "Oh, _____ nice." — 75
A. it's B. this is C. that's

16.2 "Is there a bank near here?" "Yes, there's _____ on the corner." 76
A. some B. it C. one D. a one

16.3 This cup is dirty. Can I have _____ ? 76
A. clean one B. a clean one C. clean D. a clean

16.4 There's _____ in the fridge. 77
A. a milk B. some milk C. any milk

16.5 "Where's your luggage?" "I don't have _____ ." 77
A. one B. some C. any

16.6 Karen and Steve _____ . 78, 79
A. have no children B. don't have no children C. don't have any children
D. have any children

16.7 "How much money do you have?" "_____ ." 78
A. No B. No one C. Any D. None

16.8 There's _____ in the room. It's empty. 79, 80
A. anybody B. nobody C. anyone D. no one

16.9 "What did you say?" "_____ ." 79, 80
A. Nothing B. Nobody C. Anything D. Not anything

16.10 I'm hungry. I want _____ . 80
A. something for eat B. something to eat C. something for eating

16.11 "How often do you read a newspaper?" "_____ ." 81
A. All day B. All days C. Every days D. Every day

16.12 _____ friends. 81
A. Everybody need B. Everybody needs C. Everyone need D. Everyone needs

16.13 _____ children like to play. 81
A. Most B. The most C. Most of D. The most of

16.14 I like _____ those pictures. 83
A. both B. both of C. either D. either of

16.15 I haven't read _____ these books. 83
A. neither B. neither of C. either D. either of

16.16 Do you have _____ friends? 84
A. a lot of B. much C. many D. much of E. many of

16.17 We like films, so we go to the movies _____ . 84
A. a lot of B. much C. many D. a lot

16.18 There were _____ people in the theatre. It was almost empty. 85
A. a little B. few C. little D. a few of

16.19 They have _____ money, but they're not rich. 85
A. a little B. a few C. few D. little E. little of

Adjectives and Adverbs

17.1 Do you speak any _____ ? 86
A. foreign languages B. languages foreign C. languages foreigns

17.2 He ate his dinner very _____. 87
A. quick B. quicker C. quickly

17.3 You speak English very _____. 87
A. good B. fluent C. well D. slow

17.4 Helen wants a _____. 88
A. more big car B. car more big C. car bigger D. bigger car

17.5 "Do you feel better today?" "No, I feel _____." 88
A. good B. worse C. more bad D. more worse

17.6 Athens is older _____ Rome. 89
A. as B. than C. that D. of

17.7 I can run faster _____. 89
A. than him B. that he can C. than he can D. as he can E. as he

17.8 Tennis isn't _____ soccer. 90
A. popular as B. popular than C. so popular that D. as popular as

17.9 The weather today is the same _____ yesterday. 90
A. as B. that C. than D. like

17.10 The Best West is _____ in town. 91
A. the more expensive motel B. the most expensive motel
C. the motel most expensive D. the motel the more expensive

17.11 The movie is very bad. I think it's the _____ movie I've ever seen. 91
A. worse B. baddest C. most bad D. worst E. more worse

17.12 Why don't you buy a car? You have _____. 92
A. enough money B. money enough C. enough of money

17.13 Is your English _____ a conversation? 92
A. enough good to have B. good enough for have C. enough good for
D. good enough to have

17.14 I'm _____ out. 93
A. too tired for go B. too much tired for going C. too tired to go
D. too much tired to go

Word Order

18.1 Sue is interested in the news. She _____. 94
A. reads every day the newspaper B. reads the newspaper every day
C. every day reads the newspaper

18.2 "Do you ever take the bus to work?" "No, _____." 95
A. I go to work always by car B. I go always to work by car
C. I always go to work by car D. always I go to work by car

18.3 I'm very healthy. _____. 95
A. I am sick never B. I am never sick C. I never am sick D. Never I am sick

18.4 "Where's Diane?" "She _____." 96
A. isn't here yet B. isn't here already C. isn't here still

18.5 I locked the door and I gave _____ . 97
A. Liz the keys B. to Liz the keys C. the keys to Liz D. the keys Liz

Prepositions

19.1 Goodbye! See you _____ . 98
A. Friday B. at Friday C. in Friday D. on Friday

19.2 Hurry! The train leaves _____ five minutes. 98
A. at B. on C. from D. after E. in

19.3 "How long will you be away?" "_____ Monday." 99
A. On B. To C. Until D. Till E. Since

19.4 We played tennis yesterday. We played _____ two hours. 100
A. in B. for C. since D. during

19.5 I always have breakfast before _____ to work. 100
A. I go B. go C. to go D. going

19.6 Write your name _____ the top of the page. 101
A. at B. on C. in D. to

19.7 There are a lot of apples _____ those trees. 101
A. at B. on C. in D. to

19.8 What's the largest city _____ the world? 102
A. at B. on C. in D. of

19.9 The office is _____ the first floor. 102
A. at B. on C. in D. to

19.10 I want to go _____ Mexico next year. 103
A. at B. on C. in D. to

19.11 I'm staying _____ tonight. 103
A. home B. at home C. to home D. in home

19.12 What time did you arrive _____ the hotel? 103
A. at B. on C. in D. to

19.13 "Where is Dennis in this picture?" "He's _____ Bob." 104
A. at front of B. in the front of C. in front of D. in front from

19.14 I climbed _____ the wall and into the yard. 105
A. on B. through C. across D. over E. above

19.15 Tracy isn't at work this week. She's _____ vacation. 105
A. on B. in C. for D. to E. at

19.16 Do you like traveling _____ ? 106
A. with train B. with the train C. in train D. on train E. by train

19.17 Tina is very bad _____ writing letters. 107
A. on B. with C. at D. in E. for

19.18 Tom left without _____ goodbye. 107
A. say B. saying C. to say D. that he said

19.19 I never get letters. Nobody writes _____ . 108
A. for me B. to me C. at me D. me

19.20 "Do you like to eat in restaurants?" "It depends _____ the restaurant." 108
A. in B. at C. of D. on E. over

Two-Word Verbs

20.1 The car stopped and two women got _____ . 109
A. off B. down C. out D. out of

20.2 It was cold, so I _____ . 110
A. put on my coat B. put my coat on C. put me my coat D. put my coat

20.3 I have Diane's keys. I have to _____ to her. 110
A. give back they B. give them back C. give back them D. give it back

Conjunctions and Clauses

21.1 I can't talk to you now. I'll talk to you later when _____ more time. 112
A. I have B. I had C. I'll have D. I'm going to have

21.2 _____ late tomorrow, don't wait for me. 113
A. If I'm B. If I'll be C. When I'm D. When I'll be

21.3 I don't know the answer. If I _____ the answer, I'd tell you. 114
A. know B. would know C. have known D. knew

21.4 I like this jacket. _____ it if it weren't so expensive. 114
A. I buy B. I'll buy C. I bought D. I'd bought E. I'd buy

21.5 Amy lives in a house _____ is 100 years old. 115
A. who B. that C. which D. what

21.6 The people _____ work in the office are very friendly. 115
A. who B. that C. which D. what

21.7 Did you find the book _____ ? 116
A. who you wanted B. that you wanted C. what you wanted D. you wanted

21.8 I met _____ can speak six languages. 116
A. a woman who B. a woman which C. a woman D. a woman she

Answer Key to Additional Exercises

1

3. Kate is a doctor.
4. The children are asleep.
5. Bill isn't hungry.
6. The books aren't (are not) on the table.
7. The hotel is near the station.
8. The bus isn't crowded.

2

3. she's (she is)
4. Where are
5. Is he
6. It's (It is)
7. I'm (I am) *or* I'm not (I am not). I'm (I am)
8. What color is
9. Is it
10. Are you
11. How much are

3

3. He's taking (He is taking) a bath
4. Are the children playing?
5. Is it raining?
6. They're coming (They are coming) now.
7. Why are you standing here? I'm waiting (I am waiting) for somebody.

4

4. Chris doesn't want (does not want)
5. Do you want
6. Does Amy live
7. Sarah knows
8. I don't travel (do not travel)
9. do you usually get up
10. They don't go out (do not go out)
11. Adam always leaves
12. does Kim do; She works

5

3. She's (She is) a student.
4. She doesn't have (does not have) a car.
5. She goes out a lot.
6. She has a lot of friends.
7. She doesn't like (does not like) Toronto.
8. She likes to dance.
9. She isn't / 's not (She is not) interested in sports.

6

1. Are you; do you live; Do you have; old is she
2. How old are you; What do you do; Do you like; Do you have; Do you drive
3. What's (What is) his name; What does he do; Does he live

7

4. is 32 years old
5. He has six sisters.
6. We often watch TV at night.
7. Amy never wears a hat.
8. My car has a flat tire. *or* My car's got (car has got) a flat tire.
9. These flowers are beautiful.
10. Mary speaks German very well.

8

3. are you cooking
4. plays
5. I'm leaving (I am leaving)
6. It's raining (It is raining).
7. I don't watch (do not watch)
8. we're looking (we are looking)
9. do you pronounce

9

2. we go
3. is shining
4. are you going
5. do you take
6. She writes
7. I never read
8. They're watching
9. She's talking
10. do you usually have
11. He's visiting
12. I don't drink

10

2. went
3. found
4. was
5. had/took
6. told
7. gave
8. were
9. thought
10. invited/asked

11

3. was good at sports
4. He played basketball.
5. He didn't work (did not work) hard in school.
6. He had a lot of friends.
7. He didn't have (did not have) a bicycle.
8. He wasn't (was not) a quiet child.

12

3. How long were you
4. Did you like
5. Where did you stay
6. Was the weather
7. When did you get

13

3. I forgot.
4. did you get
5. I didn't speak (did not speak)
6. Did you have
7. he didn't go (did not go)
8. she got
9. did Bob live
10. The meal didn't cost (did not cost)

14

2. were working
3. opened
4. rang; was cooking
5. heard; looked
6. was looking; happened
7. wasn't reading (was not reading); was watching
8. didn't read (did not read)
9. finished; paid; left
10. saw; was walking; was waiting

15

3. is playing
4. gave
5. doesn't like (does not like)
6. did your family go
7. saw; was driving
8. Do you watch
9. were you doing
10. goes
11. 'm trying (am trying)
12. didn't sleep (did not sleep)

16

2. haven't read (have not read) *or* didn't read (did not read) *or* 've never read (have never read)
3. Have you seen *or* Did you see
4. 've had (have had)
5. Have you [ever] been *or* Did you [ever] go

6. have you lived
7. 've known (have known)
8. 's been raining (has been raining) *or* 's rained (has rained)

17

3. has been
4. for
5. since
6. has he lived
7. for
8. 've been (have been)

18

Sample sentences:
3. played golf a few times
4. had dinner
5. been to Australia
6. lived here; I was born
7. worked here; three years

19

3. bought/got
4. went
5. I've seen (I have seen)
6. was
7. didn't see (did not see)
8. 've never made (have never made)
9. finished / graduated from
10. 's been (has been)
11. was

20

3. He's lived (He has lived) there since last May.
4. she left at four o'clock
5. How many times have you been there?
6. I've been/felt (I have been/felt) tired all day
7. It was on the table last night.
8. I've eaten (I have eaten) there many times. *or* We've (We have) . . .
9. What time did they arrive?

21

1. was
2. have you had/owned; bought/got
3. have you lived; I lived/was *or* we lived/were; did you live *or* were you
4. have you worked/been; did you do; was

22

Sample sentences:
2. I didn't go out (did not go out) last night.
3. I was at work yesterday afternoon.
4. I went to a party a few days ago.
5. It was my birthday last week.
6. I went to Europe last year.

23

2. B
3. D
4. A
5. A
6. D
7. C
8. B
9. C
10. D
11. A
12. C
13. B
14. C
15. A

24

1. was damaged; be torn down
2. was built; is used; is being painted
3. is called; be called; was changed
4. have been made; are produced

25

2. is visited
3. were damaged
4. be built
5. 's being cleaned (is being cleaned)
6. be forgotten
7. 's been repaired (has been repaired) *or* 's had to be repaired (has had to be repaired)
8. be kept
9. Have you ever been bitten
10. was stolen

26

2. was stolen last week
3. 're wanted (are wanted) on the phone
4. ice cream has been eaten
5. machine will be repaired
6. 're being watched (are being watched)
7. food has to be bought

27

3. pushed
4. was pushed
5. took *or* 's taken (has taken)
6. 's being repaired (is being repaired)
7. invented
8. was the camera invented
9. did they send
10. be sent

28

2. A
3. A*
4. B
5. A
6. B
7. B
8. A
9. B
10. A*
11. A
12. B

* The present continuous (B) is also possible, but it is less common.

29

1. I stayed; did you do; I watched; Are you going out; I'm going (I am going); are you seeing *or* are you going to see; I don't know (do not know); I haven't decided (have not decided)
2. have you been; We arrived; are you staying *or* are you going to stay; do you like; we're having (we are having)
3. I just remembered; Kim called; She always calls *or* She's always calling (She is always calling); Did she leave; she wants *or* she wanted; I'll call (I will call), Do you know; I'll get (I will get)
4. I'm going (I am going); Do you want; are you going; Have you ever eaten; 've been (have been); went
5. I lost *or* I've lost (I have lost); Have you seen; You were wearing, I came in; I'm not wearing (I am not wearing); Have you looked; I'll go (I will go)

30

2. A
3. B
4. C
5. B
6. C
7. B
8. A
9. C
10. A
11. B
12. A
13. C
14. B
15. C
16. A
17. C
18. B

31

2. a car
3. the refrigerator/ fridge
4. a teacher
5. school
6. the movies
7. a taxi
8. the piano
9. computers
10. the same

32

4. a
5. The
6. a
7. —
8. the; the
9. a
10. —
11. the
12. —
13. the
14. the
15. —; —
16. the; the
17. the; —
18. —; —
19. a; an
20. the; the; the; the
21. —; —
22. —; the

33

2. in
3. on
4. at
5. on
6. in
7. since
8. on
9. by
10. in
11. for
12. at
13. in
14. at
15. on
16. by
17. for; on
18. to; in
19. at; in

Answer Key to Study Guide

Present

1.1 B
1.2 A
1.3 C
1.4 A
1.5 C/D
1.6 B
1.7 D
1.8 C
1.9 C
1.10 A
1.11 C
1.12 A
1.13 D
1.14 C
1.15 A
1.16 D
1.17 C/D
1.18 A/D

Past

2.1 B
2.2 E
2.3 D
2.4 B
2.5 A
2.6 D
2.7 A
2.8 B
2.9 C
2.10 C/E

Present Perfect

3.1 B
3.2 D
3.3 E
3.4 B
3.5 A
3.6 C
3.7 A/D
3.8 A/D
3.9 D
3.10 E

Passive

4.1 D
4.2 C
4.3 E
4.4 A
4.5 A

Verb Forms

5.1 D
5.2 B

Future

6.1 A
6.2 A
6.3 B
6.4 A/B
6.5 B
6.6 C
6.7 B
6.8 C
6.9 B/C

Modals, Imperatives, etc.

7.1 C/D
7.2 A/C
7.3 A
7.4 D
7.5 C
7.6 B
7.7 D
7.8 C/D
7.9 D
7.10 C
7.11 B/D
7.12 A
7.13 B

There and *it*

8.1 B
8.2 E
8.3 A
8.4 A
8.5 B

Auxiliary Verbs

9.1 D
9.2 A
9.3 C
9.4 B
9.5 B
9.6 C
9.7 D

Questions

10.1 C
10.2 D
10.3 A
10.4 A
10.5 B
10.6 D
10.7 B
10.8 A
10.9 C/E
10.10 C
10.11 A
10.12 A/C

Reported Speech

11.1 E
11.2 A/B/D

-ing and *to . . .*

12.1 B
12.2 D
12.3 B
12.4 C
12.5 B/C
12.6 C
12.7 A
12.8 D

Go, get, do, make, and *have*

13.1 A/D
13.2 C
13.3 C/D
13.4 A
13.5 B
13.6 D

Pronouns and Possessives

14.1 A
14.2 C
14.3 D
14.4 B
14.5 B/C
14.6 A
14.7 D
14.8 A
14.9 D
14.10 C

A and *the*

15.1 C
15.2 B
15.3 A/C
15.4 B
15.5 A/C
15.6 A
15.7 D
15.8 C
15.9 B
15.10 B
15.11 A
15.12 B
15.13 B
15.14 A

Determiners and Pronouns

16.1 C
16.2 C
16.3 B
16.4 B
16.5 C
16.6 A/C
16.7 D
16.8 B/D
16.9 A
16.10 B
16.11 D
16.12 B/D
16.13 A
16.14 A/B
16.15 D
16.16 A/C
16.17 D
16.18 B
16.19 A

Adjectives and Adverbs

17.1 A
17.2 C
17.3 C
17.4 D
17.5 B
17.6 B
17.7 A/C
17.8 D
17.9 A
17.10 B
17.11 D
17.12 A
17.13 D
17.14 C

Word Order

18.1 B
18.2 C
18.3 B
18.4 A
18.5 A/C

Prepositions

19.1 A/D
19.2 E
19.3 C/D
19.4 B
19.5 A/D
19.6 A
19.7 B
19.8 C
19.9 B
19.10 D
19.11 A/B
19.12 A
19.13 C
19.14 D
19.15 A
19.16 E
19.17 C
19.18 B
19.19 B/D
19.20 D

Two-Word Verbs

20.1 C
20.2 A/B
20.3 B

Conjunctions and Clauses

21.1 A
21.2 A
21.3 D
21.4 E
21.5 B/C
21.6 A/B
21.7 B/D
21.8 A